

سلسلة التجمع التعليمي

القناة الرئيسية: T.me/BAK111

بوت الملفات العلمي @Ob\_Am2020bot



للتواصل

T.me/BAK117\_BOT



# English For Starters

The Third Secondary Class  
Scientific and Literary Sections

2021

Prepared By  
**Khaled Ghazale**

☎ 0968501062  
f /khaled.ghazale.1



إعداد الماستر :

خالد غزالة



**دمشق: الحلبوني - مكتبة الحسام**  
**دمشق: العفيف - مكتبة هديل**  
**اللاذقية: مشروع شريتح - مكتبة الأمل**  
**ريف دمشق: قدسيا - مكتبة البراعم**  
**ريف دمشق: دير علي - ريمانتيل**  
**حمص: كرم الشامي: مكتبة اكسترا**  
**حمّاة: شارع العلمين - مكتبة يزن**  
**حلب: الفرقان - مكتبة خطوة بخطوة**  
**اللاذقية: ساحة خطاب - مكتبة البتول**  
**السويداء: المحوري - معهد بلقيس للغات**  
**طرطوس: مشتي الحلو -**  
**مكتبة مشتي الحلو الجامعية**  
**صافيتا: ساحة الدريكيش - مكتبة الأوائل**  
**الحسكة: القامشلي - مكتبة هانزا**  
**الحسكة: معبدة - مكتبة الأمين**  
**الحسكة: المالكية - مكتبة هدايا**



بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ وَأَفْضَلِ الصَّلَاةِ  
وَأَتَمِّ التَّسْلِيمِ عَلَى الصَّادِقِ الْوَعْدِ الْأَمِينِ  
أَمَّا بَعْدُ:

لَوْ كَانَ الْعَمْرُ يَهْدِي لَمَا بَخَلْتُ بِهِ عَلَيْكُمَا،  
وَلَوْ كَانَ الْقَلْبُ كِتَابًا لَكُنْتُمْ فِي أَوَّلِ سَطُورِ الْحُبِّ  
فَكُلْ كَلِمَاتِ الْحُبِّ وَالثَّنَاءِ تَقِفْ عَاجِزَةً أَمَامَ  
جَهْدِكُمُ الْجَبَّارَةَ

إِلَى مَنْ أَسْعَلَ لِي أَوَّلَ شَمْعَةَ  
إِلَى عَبْقِ طِفْلَوَاتِي وَدَفْءِ حَيَاتِي وَأَرِيحِ شَبَابِي  
إِلَى مَلْجَأِي وَمَلَاذِي، إِلَى مَنْ تَحْمَلُ كُلَّ لَحْظَةٍ  
أَلَمٍ فِي حَيَاتِي فَأَمْسَتْ لِحْظَاتِ فَرْحٍ،  
إِلَى مَنْ عَلَّمَنِي أَنْ أَصَوِّغَ الْحَرْفَ وَأَنْطِقَهُ  
إِلَى أَبِي سِنْدِي، إِلَى أُمِّي حَبِيبَتِي الَّتِي  
شَارَكْتَنِي هَمِّي وَحَزْنِي  
إِلَى مَنْ ذَرَفَتْ الدَّمْعُوعَ مِنْ أَجْلِي  
إِلَى مَنْ سَقَتْنِي الْحُبَّ فِي صَغْرِي حَتَّى ارْتَوَتْ  
مِنْهُ عُرُوقُ جَسَدِي

أَهْدِيكُمْ عَمَلِي وَبِكُلِّ تَوَاضِعٍ  
أَسْأَلُ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى أَنْ يَكُونَ نُورًا وَثَوَابًا  
بِصَحِيفَةِ أَعْمَالِكُمْ  
حَفِظْكُمْ اللَّهُ وَأَطَالَ بِعَمْرِكُمْ  
يَا شَمْسًا أُسْتَضِيءُ بِهَا ..





## مراجعة عامة

- **Sentence الجملة**: عندما نكتب جملة في اللغة الإنكليزية يجب أن تستوفي شرطين:
- من حيث القواعد: يجب أن تحتوي على فاعل أولاً وفعل ثانياً فعل + فاعل
- من حيث المعنى: يجب أن تعطي معنى مكتمل قبل ( full stop ) النقطة
- I am . → ( لم تعطي معنى مكتمل ) → I am a student. → ( معنى مكتمل )
- - للفاعل ثلاثة أنواع : - اسم علم ( عمر - حسام - راما - حلب - سوريا )
- - اسم مركب ( criminal law - Hani and his friends - my car..... )
- - ضمير شخصي ( I - you - we - they..... )
- **Personal Pronouns الضمائر الشخصية**: كلمة ضمير تعني بديل الاسم أي انه نستخدم الضمائر الشخصية لكي لانكرر الاسم
- لاكثر من مرة ولنربط الجمل اكثر مع بعضها:
- احمد ← هو - راما ← هي - احمد وراما وحسام ← هم - انا واحمد ← نحن - قطة ← انها / انه - قطة ← هم
- يوجد نوعين من الضمائر: 1- **ضمائر الفاعل**: تأتي قبل الفعل وتدل على من قام بالفعل
- 2- **ضمائر المفعول به**: تأتي بعد الفعل او حرف الجر وتدل على من وقع عليه الفعل

Subject Pronouns	ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns	ضمائر المفعول به
I	انا	me	فعل / حرف جر
You	انت / انتي / انتم	you	فعل / حرف جر
We	نحن	us	فعل / حرف جر
They	هم	them	فعل / حرف جر
He	هو	him	فعل / حرف جر
She	هي	her	فعل / حرف جر
It	انه / انها لغير العاقل	it	فعل / حرف جر

- **الصفات الملكية**: تستخدم لنسب الاسم لصاحبه أي من يملكه ودائما يأتي بعدها اسم وهو الفاعل وليست الصفة الملكية
- **الضمائر الملكية**: تستخدم لنسب الاسم لصاحبه أي من يملكه ولا يأتي بعدها اسم وتحل محل الصفة الملكية والاسم معا

Possessive Adjectives	الصفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns	الضمائر الملكية
I	اسم my	mine	لي
You	اسم your	yours	لك - لك - لكم
We	اسم our	ours	لنا
They	اسم their	theirs	لهم
He	اسم his	his	له
She	اسم her	hers	لها
It	اسم its	its	له - لها
	سيارتي my car	→	→ mine
	قلمك your pen	→	→ yours
	صفنا our class	→	→ ours
	بيتهم their house	→	→ theirs
	دراجته his bike	→	→ his
	كتابها her book	→	→ hers
	ذيها its tail	→	→ its

### Fill in the gaps with the correct subject or object pronouns:

1. Jack called Lana and told her that he wanted to visit ( she – her ).
2. Mum cooks us delicious food. Yesterday ( she – her ) made us a very tasty meal.
3. Some people say that we should protect environment because ( it – its ) is very important.



4. Peter and George are studying together at university. ( **They - Them** ) also live at the same home.
5. Some animals are endangered. We should protect ( **they - them** ).
6. Mr. Jones likes me too much and I like ( **he - him** ) too.
7. My grandpa built this big house. ( **It - Its** ) has ten rooms and three bathrooms.
8. Our history teacher is very good. ( **She - Her** ) always does her best and we like her too much.
9. Water is very important in our lives. We all need ( **it - its** ).
10. Omar lent me his camera last week and I gave it back to ( **he - him** ) yesterday.
11. I always visit granny and give ( **she - her** ) flowers.
12. Yesterday you got at me and I did not say anything to ( **you - your** ).
13. I fell and broke my leg while ( **I - me** ) was playing football.
14. My friend, Hussam, often helps ( **I - me** ) with my math homework because he is good at math.
15. Salem and Maya are in love. ( **They - Them** ) want to marry soon.
16. I called Omar and told ( **he - him** ) what happened with me.
17. Aya and Noora are my best friends. I really like ( **they - them** ).
18. Salwa and I are friends. ( **We - Us** ) like each other.
19. We asked our teacher to give ( **we - us** ) an example.
20. I lost my pens. I can't find ( **it - them** ) anywhere.

**الحلول**

- 1.her 2.She 3.it 4.They 5.Them 6.him 7.It 8.She 9.it 10.him 11.her 12.you 13.I 14.me 15.They 16.him 17.them  
18.We 19.us 20.them

**Choose the correct answer:**

1. 2. (My, Mine) bag is the red one. The blue one is (her, hers).
3. This big classroom is (our, ours).
4. He likes his dictionary, and they like (their, theirs).
5. (Their, Theirs) pieces of paper are under the desk.
6. Can you give me (your, yours) pens, please?
7. 8. (Her, Hers) desk is over there, next to (our, ours).
9. His computer is better than (my, mine).
10. I like Tala and I like (her, hers) mum.

**الحلول**

- 1.My 2.hers 3.ours 4.theirs 5.Their 6.your 7.Her 8.ours 9.mine 10.her

**Choose the correct answer:**

1. I told Nader everything about (you, your).
2. This hat is (my, mine).
3. This hat is (my, mine) hat.
4. (Their, Theirs, They, Them) school is 3 km from here.
5. (Their, Theirs, They, Them) can speak 3 languages.
6. Would (your, you) like to go with (our, us, we) ?
7. There is a new restaurant near (my, mine, I, me) home and (my, I, me) will go there soon.
8. (My, Mine, I, Me) lost my wallet last week and I could not find (it, its) anywhere.
9. Samar and her sister visited Ali yesterday but (him, he, his) was not at home.
10. (He, His, Him) promised to help (my, me, I).
11. (Her, Hers, She) relatives from the UK are coming to visit (her, hers, she).
12. I am looking for my little brother. Have you seen (he, his, him)?
13. I like this chocolate. I want another box of (it, its).
14. Sarah likes John and he likes (she, her, hers), too.
15. (Their, Theirs, They, Them) house was big and modern unlike (our, ours, we, us).

**الحلول**

- 1.you 2. mine 3. my 4.Their 5.They 6.you - us 7. my - I 8.I - it 9.he 10.He - me 11.Her - her 12.him 13.it 14.her  
15.Their - ours



● **أداة التنكير ( an - a )** : تستخدم مع الاسم المفرد النكرة المعدود ويقابلها في اللغة العربية ( التنوين )

- الاسم النكرة: هو اسم غير معروف وغير محدد وغير معين أي لا على التعيين ويوجد مثله الكثير أي انه واحد من آلاف الأسماء:  
a pen ( قلماً لا على التعيين ) أحياناً يفصل بين ( an - a ) صفة ← a blue pen
- نضع ( an ) اذا بدأ الاسم او الصفة التي تفصل بينهما بإحدى الحروف الصوتية ( a - e - i - o - u )  
an apple                      an interesting story
- لا نستخدم أداة التنكير ( an - a ) مع الاسم الجمع النكرة  
pens
- لا نستخدم أداة التنكير ( an - a ) مع الاسم الغير معدود النكرة  
water

● **أداة التعريف ( the )** : تستخدم مع الاسم المفرد او الجمع او الغير معدود المحدد والمعرف

- الاسم المعرفة: هو اسم معروف ومحدد و معين أي نقصده هو بالذات بكلامنا ويقابلها في اللغة العربية ( ال التعريف )  
the pen → the pens                      -                      the water

( a - an )		( the )	
اسم مفرد نكرة	a pen	اسم مفرد معرف	the pen
اسم جمع نكرة	pens	اسم جمع معرف	the pens
اسم غير معدود نكرة	water	اسم غير معدود معرف	the money

خلاصة:

- ينكر الاسم اذا ذكر لأول مره : I bought a car.
- يُعرّف الاسم اذا ذكر مرة ثانية : I bought a car. The car was new.
- يُعرّف الاسم اذا كان لا يوجد غيره : the space - the sun - the moon
- تستخدم ( the ) مع اسم البلدان المركبه ( the USA ) - أسماء الأنهار - البحار - المحيطات - سلاسل الجبال والجزر
- تستخدم ( the ) مع صفات التفضيل ( the ( most - best - smallest - )
- تستخدم ( the ) مع الجهات الاربعه ( the ( east - west - north - south )
- تحل الكلمات التالية بدلا من ( the - a - an ) :  
( my - his ..... - some - many - few - all - this - that .... one - two ..... )
- لا نستخدم ( the ) مع الاسم الجمع اذا كنا نتكلم بشكل عام : People eat to survive.
- نستخدم ( the ) مع الاسم المفرد اذا كنا نتكلم عنه بشكل عام كنوع او آلة : The computer is a good invention.

**Fill in the gaps using the articles ( a , an , the or nothing )**

1. She bought..... new drum and started practicing.
2. I like to play..... drums.
3. .... elephant which we saw in the zoo was very big.
4. Many..... animals around the world are endangered.
5. I have..... computer and I use it very much.
6. Can you give me..... pen which is on your desk?
7. Where is..... camera that I have given to you?
8. I have to write his phone number but I need..... pen first.
9. Sarah is my..... best friend.
10. .... computer is the most important invention in the twentieth century.
11. When you are in trouble, you can turn to..... friend. He may help you.
12. Doried Lahaam is..... actor. He is from Syria.
13. Olaa is..... good girl.
14. I saw..... accident this morning. .... car crashed into..... tree.  
..... driver of the car wasn't hurt, but..... car was badly damaged.
15. Sometimes..... girls are troublesome.
16. I lost my mobile phone but dad brought me..... new one.
17. .... cars produce a lot of gases which damage our environment.
18. Most..... students study hard before exams.
19. Yesterday I watched..... interesting film.



20. There are two cars parked outside: ..... blue one and ..... grey one. .... blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who ..... owner of ..... grey one is.
21. I watched ..... film that you told me about.
22. This is ..... man who took my wallet.
23. Last week I met ..... strange man on my way home.
24. My friends live in ..... old house in ..... small village. There is ..... beautiful garden behind ..... house.
25. We went to Lama's wedding and we gave her ..... presents.
26. This morning I bought ..... newspaper and ..... magazine. .... newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put ..... magazine.
27. Oh no! I think all ..... people in my class are stupid!
28. Could you close ..... door behind you, please?

## الحلول

- 1.a 2.the 3.The 4.x 5.a 6.the 7.the 8.a 9.x 10.The 11.a 12.an 13.a 14.an - a - a - the - the 15.x 16.a 17.x 18.x 19.an 20.a - a - the - the - the 21.the 22.the 23.a 24.an - a - a - the 25.x 26.a - a - The - the 27.x 28.the

## أسماء الإشارة :

مفرد قريب هذه / هذا This	مفرد بعيد ذلك / تلك That
جمع قريب هؤلاء These	جمع بعيد اولئك Those

this / that → is → اسم غير معدود / اسم مفرد

This is a pen. / That is water.

these / those → are → اسم جمع

These are pens. / Those are men.

## Choose the correct answer:

- I like (**this, these**) music.
- Tell me about (**that, those**) new friend of you.
- We could earn more money during (**that, those**) long winter evenings.
- Wow! What are all of (**this, these**) things?
- (**This, These**) man in old jeans is strange.
- (**That, Those**) are the people who won the race.
- (**That, These**) is my friend, Ali.
- (**This, These**) lady can speak three languages.
- (**That, These**) students are the best.
- Give me (**this, those**) ball and let us play.
- (**That, These**) is my son over there.
- How much are (**this, these**) glasses, please?
- Do you have more of (**this, these**) chocolate?
- (**This, Those**) clouds are terrible.
- Many girls smoke cigarettes nowadays. (**This, These**) is very common in my city.
- (**This, These**) kind of animals is endangered. We should protect them.
- (**That, Those**) is the man who took my wallet.
- I couldn't understand (**that, these**) rule. I am sorry.
- (**This, These**) is my house. Is it good?
- Money, properties, friends and good health are necessary things. All of (**those, that**) things make people happy.

## الحلول

- 1.this 2.that 3.those 4.these 5.This 6.Those 7.That 8.This 9.These 10.this 11.That 12.these 13.this 14.Those 15.This 16.This 17.That 18.that 19.This 20.those



## • Prepositions حروف الجر:

- نستخدم حرف الجر ( in ) مع :

1. القرن ( century ) in 16<sup>th</sup> century
2. العقد ( عشرة أعوام ) in 1990s
3. العام in 2012
4. فصول العام ( Spring / Summer / Autumn / Winter ) in
5. الأشهر ( January / February / March / April / May / June / July / August / September / October / November / December ) in
6. أجزاء النهار ( morning / afternoon / evening ) in the

- نستخدم حرف الجر ( on ) مع :

1. أيام الأسبوع ( Sunday – Monday - ..... ) on
2. تاريخ ( date ) : ( 23 . 6 . 2005 / 6<sup>th</sup> October ) on
3. عطل on holidays
4. الشاطئ on the beach
5. الساحل on the coast
6. الموقع on the site
7. الضفة on the bank
8. مزرعه on a farm

- نستخدم حرف الجر ( at ) مع :

1. الوقت ( 6 o'clock / pm / am ..... ) at
2. نهاية الأسبوع at the weekend
3. الليل at night
4. العمر at the age
5. الأعياد ( Eid Al Fitr / Ramadan ..... ) at

- مع الكلمات التالية : good / bad at ( home / school / work / the end / the moment )

- نستخدم ( From ..... to ..... ) مع :

1. مكانان : مكان to مكان from ( from Aleppo to Hama )
2. زمانان : زمان to زمان from ( from 1990 to 2014 )

- نستخدم ( by ) مع وسائط النقل : ( bus / train / plane / taxi / car / bike / ..... ) by ماعدا on foot

- بقية الاحرف لا يوجد لها قاعدة بل يجب حفظها غيبا :

يؤمن في - مليء ب - يموت من - يعتني ب - يبحث عن - ينظر الى - مختلف عن

believe in - full of - die from - look after - look for - look at - different from

على التافاز - مهتم ب - مصنوع من - خائف من - يصل الى مكان / بلد

on TV - interested in - made of / from - afraid / scared of - in ( بلد ) / at ( مكان ) arrive

ينجح في - يوافق / لا يوافق على ( شيء ما ) - يوافق / لا يوافق مع ( شخص ما ) - يفكر / يعتقد حول

succeed in - ( شيء ما ) agree / disagree on - ( شخص ما ) agree / disagree with - think about / of

ينتظر لاجل - يعتمد على - يقرر على - مسؤول عن - يقلق بشأن - يساعد ب - يعاني من

wait for - depend on - decide on - responsible for - worry about - help with - suffer from

متأكد حول - يعتني ب - مولع ب - يمنع من - يبقى في - قادرا على - مشهور لاجل - واعيال

sure about - care for - keen on - prevent from - stay at - able to - famous for - aware of

في الراس - في محكمة - على الملعب - على الشاطئ - مقتنع ب - متأقلم ل / مناسب ل

in a head - ( محكمة ) in court - ( ملعب ) on court - on the beach - satisfied with - suited / adapted to

السبب من - على تنوع - عشوائيا - في بضع ثواني - غاضب من - يتخلص من

the cause of - on a variety - at random - in a few seconds - angry with - dispose of ( 2013 )



**Fill in the correct preposition :**

1. Oranges are a different colour..... lemons.
2. Plants and animals are dependent..... a regular supply of water. ( 2012 دورة )
3. The Syrian people are aware..... the need to protect their wildlife.
4. Many people are interested..... the future of endangered animals.
5. Layla is very bad..... French. she can't say a word in French.
6. Child prodigies are children who demonstrate talents..... a very young age.
7. Child prodigies can do complicated calculations..... their heads..... just a few seconds.
8. The numbers have been selected..... random.
9. The musician, Mozart, could play new pieces of music..... a variety of instruments.
10. When he died..... 1791, some people said that overwork was the cause of his death.
11. Greenhouse gasses keep the heat of the sun in and prevent our planet..... freezing.
12. Many areas of land which are now..... the coast will be flooded.
13. Some people are not aware..... the difference between a fruit and a vegetable.
14. I am really interested..... the history of my family.
15. Apples and bananas are dependent for their survival..... greenhouse gasses.
16. Modern Damascus is built..... the site of many ancient civilisations.
17. Damascus is famous..... its historical monuments.
18. Are you good..... maths?
19. Dmeir is famous..... its watering system.
20. He is able..... walk on his hands.
21. Omar Khayyam lived..... 1048 to 1133.
22. He showed a musical ability..... a very early age.
23. He learnt to play complicated music..... the piano.
24. I woke up..... 6 o'clock yesterday.
25. .... the age of seven, my brother, Amar, played football for a local club.
26. English people arrived in America..... the sixteenth century.
27. Why are you looking..... me like that? What's the matter?
28. I like going on trips..... the summers.
29. The exam is..... the third of June.
30. I saw Amanda..... two o'clock yesterday.
31. My uncle is coming..... the 25th October.
32. My uncle is coming..... October.
33. I am looking..... my school bag. Have you seen it?
34. My twain sister looks exactly like me, but we are very different..... the rest of our sisters.
35. We came to Aleppo for the first time..... 1990 and settled down in it.
36. I have an appointment with Jack..... Monday..... 3 p.m .
37. We had a big party..... the end of Ramadan.
38. Living..... a big city like Washington has its disadvantages.
39. We always go to Lattakia..... Al Fitre Eids.
40. I am waiting..... a new baby this month.

**الحلول**

- 1.from 2.on 3.of 4.in 5.at 6.at 7.in - in 8.at 9.on 10.in 11.from 12.on 13.of 14.in 15.on 16.on  
17.for 18.at 19.for 20.to 21.from 22.at 23.on 24.at 25.At 26.in 27.at 28.in 29.on 30.at 31.on 32.in 33.for 34.from  
35.in 36.on - at 37.at 38.in 39.at 40.for

**Conjunctions حروف العطف:**

- 1- ( and ) الواو: تربط بين كلمات وجمل متوافقة ( توافقية )
- 2- ( but ) لكن: تربط بين كلمات وجمل متعكسة ( تعاكسية )
- 3- ( or ) او: تستخدم للاختيار والتخيير
- 4- ( because ) لان: تعطي سبب يأتي بعدها جملة ( فعل + فاعل )
- 5- ( because of ) بسبب: يأتي بعدها اسم



**Complete the following sentences by filling in the gaps with ( and , but , or , because ) :**

1. Secretaries used to spend most of their time typing letters.....reports.
2. Irish people emigrated.....so many were dying of starvation.
3. Chinese grammar is not too difficult.....the pronunciation is hard for me.
4. Grass.....sugar cane are two of the materials that can be used to make paper.
5. He had to pay a fine.....he was driving without insurance.
6. Many nests are made from grass, twigs.....feathers.
7. Do you want to go home.....do you want to stay here ?
8. The Arabian Gulf countries transformed into modern and wealthy states, funded by oil.....other precious natural resources.
9. ....of the increase in the Earth's temperature, the ice at the north and south poles is melting.
10. He said everything was okay,.....that was a story he made up to stop me from worrying.
11. I like eating chocolate.....sweets after food.
12. Tom is usually very happy,.....today he is sad.
13. Peter stayed at home.....of rain.
14. They do not like writing.....reading English texts.
15. Sarah has studied well for her exam.....she has failed.
16. Do you want to go out with me.....to stay in and watch TV.
17. I wake up early every day.....go to school.
18. The airhostess gave us the tickets.....wished us a good flight.
19. We did not go to the party.....they did not invite us.
20. Noor lost her purse.....she was very sad.

**الحلول**

- 1.and 2.because 3.but 4.and 5.because 6.or 7.or 8.and 9.Because 10.but 11.and / or 12.but 13.because 14.and 15.but  
16.or 17.and 18.and 19.because 20.and

- **( `s ) الملكية :** تقع بين اسمين لتدل على ان الاسم الذي **بعد** ( `s ) الملكية هو ملك او تابع للاسم الذي قبل ( `s ) الملكية student`s book ( كتاب الطالب ) وغالبا تُستخدم مع الأشخاص و الحيوانات والفاعل الاسم الذي بعد ( s ) في حال الجمع نحذف ( `s ) الملكية ونبقي فاصلة علوية تدل عليها منع لالتقاء ( `s ) الملكية و ( s ) الجمع students` book ( كتاب الطلاب )

- **( of ) التبعية :** تقع بين اسمين لتدل على ان الاسم الذي **قبل** ( of ) التبعية هو ملك او تابع للاسم الذي بعد ( of ) التبعية the teacher **of** the school ( معلم المدرسة ) وغالبا تُستخدم مع الأشياء والفاعل الاسم الذي قبل ( of )

- **Reflexives Pronouns الضمائر الانعكاسية :** تستخدم الضمائر الانعكاسية لتدل على ان الشخص نفسه قد قام بالعمل وتأتي هذه الضمائر غالبا في آخر الجملة

الضمائر الشخصية	الضمائر الانعكاسية	المعنى
I	Myself	بنفسي
You	Yourself	بنفسك
We	Ourselves	بأنفسنا
They	Themselves	بأنفسهم
You	Yourselves	بأنفسكم
He	Himself	بنفسه
She	Herself	بنفسها
It	Itself	بنفسه/ بنفسها لغير العاقل

- انا أقص شعري بنفسي I cut my hair myself.
- نحن قطعنا أشجار الحديقة بأنفسنا We cut down the trees ourselves.
- هو يدهن بيته بنفسه He paints his house himself.



### ● قواعد إضافة الأحرف:

1- عند إضافة ( ed / ing ) لفعل منتهي بحرف ساكن واحد قبله صوتي واحد فإننا نضعف الساكن:  
swim → swimming / stop → stopped

2- عند إضافة ( ing ) لفعل منتهي بحرف ( e ) فإننا نحذفه:  
come → coming

3- عند إضافة ( ly - ed - s ) لفعل أو صفة منتهية بحرف ( y ) أو اسم وقبله حرف ساكن فإننا نقبلب ( y ) الى ( i ) ونضيف ( ly - ed - es ):  
study → studied / studies - story → stories - happy → happily

4- عند إضافة ( s ) لفعل أو اسم منتهي بإحدى الحروف التالية ( ch - sh - o - x - s - z ) فإننا نضيف ( es ) بدلا من ( s ):  
teach → teaches - fox → foxes - do → does - finish → finishes - miss → misses

5- عند إضافة ( ed ) لفعل منتهي بحرف ( e ) فإننا فقط نضيف ( d ):  
live → lived - like → liked

6- لجمع الاسم نضع ( s ) الجمع في آخر الاسم: book → books ولكن يوجد جمع شاذ مثل:  
أقدام → قدم - ناس → شخص - أطفال → طفل - نساء → امرأة - رجال → رجل  
man → men - woman → women - child → children - person → people - foot → feet

انصاف → نصف - زوجات → زوجة - فئران → فأره - اسنان → سن  
tooth → teeth - mouse → mice - f → ves - wife → wives - half → halves

● **صفات ( ing ):** تدل على من قام بالفعل وتسمى صفات الفاعل: ( صفة فاعل → ing + فعل )  
امثلة: مُتعب tire + ing → tiring - مُمل bore + ing → boring - مُثير excite + ing → exciting

● **صفات ( ed ):** تدل على من وقع عليه الفعل وتسمى صفات المفعول به: ( صفة مفعول به → ed + فعل )  
امثلة: مُتعب tire + ed → tired - مائل / ضجران bore + ed → bored - مستمتع / مثار excite + ed → excited

● **اقسام الكلمة:** للكلمة اقسام منها ( اسم - فعل - صفة - ظرف - حروف عطف - حروف جر - ..... )  
لمعرفة نوع الكلمة هناك إضافات تضاف تساعد على معرفة نوع الكلمة

- من إضافات الاسم: ( tion - sion - ness - ment - ism - nce - ity - dom - hood - ..... )

- من إضافات الصفة: ( ous - ive - al - ible - able - ful - less - nt - ic ..... )

- إضافة الظرف: لتحويل الصفة إلى ظرف نضيف ( ly بشكل ) لتصبح ظرف quick → quickly

- الصفة تصف الاسم ← I am quick.

- الظرف يصف الفعل ← I came here quickly.

- شواذ: good → well - fast → fast - hard → hard

● **The Verb الفعل:** ينقسم الفعل في اللغة الإنكليزية إلى:

- أفعال مساعدة فرعية ( Modal Verbs )

- أفعال مساعدة رئيسية ( Auxiliary Verbs )

- أفعال رئيسية ( Main Verbs )

1- أفعال مساعدة فرعية ( Modal Verbs ):

( can - could - must - shall - should - may - might - will - would - ..... )



لا تأتي هذه الأفعال في الجملة لوحدها كفعل رئيسي بل تأتي مع الأفعال الرئيسية لتدل على إمكانية أو مستقبل في حال الإثبات ولتشكيل السؤال أو النفي ودائماً تأتي الأفعال الرئيسية بعدها بالمصدر:

I **can** swim. → سؤال → **Can** you swim? → نفي → I **can't** swim.

2- أفعال مساعدة رئيسية ( Auxiliary Verbs ) :

( am - is - are - was - were - do - does - did - have - has - had )

هذه الأفعال قوية أي تأخذ مهمتين: - مهمة فعل رئيسي أي تأتي لوحدها كفعل رئيسي

I **am** a teacher. - I **do** my homework. - I **have** had a car. - I **had** a headache.

- أو كفعل مساعد لتشكيل السؤال والنفي

**Are** you a teacher? - **Do** you **do** your homework? - **Have** you **had** a car? - **Did** you **have** a headache?

I **am not** a teacher. - I **don't do** my homework. - I **haven't had** a car. - I **didn't have** a headache.

3- أفعال رئيسية ( Main Verbs ): كل الأفعال في اللغة الإنكليزية هي أفعال رئيسية ما عدا الأفعال المساعدة الفرعية و الرئيسية ( play - listen - read - ... ) وهي أفعال ضعيفة لا تستطيع تشكيل السؤال والنفي لوحدها بل تحتاج إلى أفعال مساعدة

اما فرعية او رئيسية : I **play** tennis. → Do you **play** tennis? → I **don't play** tennis.

او لتشكيل زمن معين: I **am playing** tennis. - I **have played** tennis. - I **will play** tennis.

### • Verb To Be فعل الكون:

Personal Pronouns الضمائر الشخصية	Verb To Be فعل الكون		
	Present حاضر	Past ماضى	Past Participle اسم المفعول
I	am	was	been
You / We / They	are	were	
He / She / It	is	was	

### • Verb To Have فعل الملك:

Personal Pronouns الضمائر الشخصية	Verb To Have فعل الملك		
	Present حاضر	Past ماضى	Past Participle اسم المفعول
I	have	had	had
You / We / They			
He / She / It			

### • Question Words كلمات السؤال:

What* ماذا / ما	How كيف
When متى	How many* ( اسم جمع ) كم عدد
Where اين	How much* ( اسم غير معدود ) كم الكمية
Why لماذا	How long كم المدة
Which* اي	How old كم العمر
Who من ( فاعل )	How far كم المسافة / البعد
Whom من ( مفعول به )	How fast كم السرعة
Whose* لمن	How often كم مرة / كم عدد المرات
What color ما لون	What kind of* ما نوع

\*يأتي اسم تمييز بعد كلمات السؤال ذات (\* ) - نترجم ( What ) ( ما ) إذا أتى بعدها اسم



• **Short Answer الجواب القصير:** يأتي دائما إما ( Yes ) أو ( No ) ودائما نجواب بنفس الفعل المساعد الذي سُئِل في السؤال:

not. + فعل مساعد + فاعل, No - فعل مساعد + فاعل, Yes

Is she clever?	→ Yes, she is.	- No, She isn't.	أمثلة:
Are you happy?	→ Yes, I am.	- No, I am not.	
Do you play tennis?	→ Yes, I do.	- No, I don't.	
Did he finish his homework?	→ Yes, he did.	- No, he didn't.	
Have they played tennis?	→ Yes, they have.	- No, they haven't.	
Can you go with me to the zoo?	→ Yes, I can.	- No, I can't.	

• **Present Simple الحاضر البسيط:** يعبر عن نشاط يحدث بشكل متكرر إعتيادي ( عادة - روتين ) - حقائق علمية - حالات مستقرة ثابتة.

- **الإشارة:** ظروف التكرار ( ابدأ never - أحيانا sometimes - غالبا often - عادة usually - دائما always )  
 نادرا seldom - كل each - نادرا rarely - عموما generally - في الحقيقة in fact - كل every  
 - **Affirmative الإثبات:**

**I / You / We / They + V1 + C.**

مثال: I play tennis every day.

**He / She / It + Vs + C.**

( s ) تدعى ( s ) المفرد الغائب او الشخص الثالث  
 مثال: He plays tennis every day

**Question السؤال:**

**Do + ( I / you / we / they ) + V1 + C ?**

مثال: Do you play tennis?

**Does + ( he / she / it ) + V1 + C.**

مثال: Does he play tennis?

**Negative النفي:**

**I / You / We / They + don't + V1 + C.**

مثال: I don't play tennis every day.

**He / She / It + doesn't + V1 + C.**

مثال: He doesn't play tennis every day

- يأتي الفعل الأساسي بالمصدر بعد ( Do - Does - don't - doesn't )

- في حال السؤال يتحول كلا مما يلي إلى:

I → أنت ضمير فاعل  
 We → انتم ضمير فاعل  
 my → مفرد صفة ملكية  
 our → جمع صفة ملكية

me → مفرد ضمير مفعول به  
 us → جمع ضمير مفعول به

I am → مفرد  
 We are → جمع  
 I was → مفرد  
 We were → جمع



**Put the verbs between brackets in the correct form:**

- 1) He sometimes.....(tell) the truth.
- 2) Jack.....(not want) to retire when he is 40.
- 3) We never.....(come) to class late.
- 4) Lena often.....(help) all people.
- 5) Every week Samer and I.....(go out) together.
- 6) She.....(not be) my sister.
- 7) They.....(not eat) at restaurants every day.
- 8) Every time I see them, they.....(be) angry and nervous.
- 9) Hussain.....(not know) what to do.
- 10) .....your teachers.....(give) you a lot of homework usually?

**الحلول**

- 1.tells 2.doesn't want 3.come 4.helps 5.go out 6.isn't 7.don't eat 8.are 9.doesn't know 10.Do / give

- **Past simple الماضي البسيط:** يعبر عن نشاط حدث وانتهى في الماضي في وقت محدد أي انه مؤرخ بزمن دقيق  
 - **دلالة:** (عام + in) - (تاريخ + on) - (مضى ago) - (last ( year / week /..... ) الماضي - yesterday البارحة

**السؤال Question**

**Did + الضمانر + V1 + دلالة + C ?**

- امثلة: فعل نظامي  
 Did you play tennis yesterday?  
 فعل شاذ  
 Did your brother go to school last year?

**الإثبات Affirmative**

**+ دلالة + C.**  
 + كل الضمانر { (ed) فعل نظامي  
 (V2 التصريف الثاني) فعل شاذ }

- امثلة: فعل نظامي  
 I played tennis yesterday.  
 فعل شاذ  
 My brother went to school last year.

**النفى Negative**

- يأتي الفعل الأساسي بالمصدر (V1) بعد (did - didn't)  
 أي بحذف (ed) للفعل النظامي (played ← play)  
 و بإرجاع الفعل الشاذ للتصريف الأول (went ← go)

**+ دلالة + V1 + didn't + كل الضمانر**

- امثلة: فعل نظامي  
 I didn't play tennis yesterday.  
 فعل شاذ  
 My brother didn't go to school last year.

- ملاحظة: يمكن ان يأتي فعلا بزمان الماضي البسيط حدثا أو وقعا بنفس الوقت

**Put the verbs between brackets in the correct form:**

- 1) Waseem.....(buy) food for his family yesterday.
- 2) I.....(do) my homework at 8 o'clock last night.
- 3) We.....(have) a great time in Lattakia last year.
- 4) In 1975 they.....(leave) England on an airplane. ( 2013 حوارة )
- 5) What.....you.....(do) yesterday?
- 6) We.....(be) late because we missed the bus.
- 7) Hiba .....( not come) to school yesterday because she was sick.
- 8) I did not hear the phone when it.....(ring).
- 9) Osama.....(not be) hungry because he ate a lot an hour ago.
- 10) The teacher was late so we.....(have to) wait 15 minutes.

**الحلول**

- 1.bought 2.did 3.had 4.left 5.did / do 6.were 7.didn't come 8.rang 9.wasn't 10.had to



- **Present Continuous الحاضر المستمر**: يعبر عن نشاط يحدث اثناء التكلم او ضمن الفترة الراهن  
- دلالة: this..... هذا today- اليوم - at the moment - في هذه اللحظة - now الآن - nowadays هذه الأيام

**Question السؤال :**

Am	I	+ ( V1) ing + C ?
Are	you / we / they	
Is	he / she / it	

- مثال: Are you playing tennis now?

**Affirmative الإثبات :**

I	am	+ ( V1) ing + C.
You / We / They	are	
He / She / It	is	

- مثال: I am playing tennis now.

- **Negative النفي**: نفس ترتيب جملة الإثبات فقط نضع ( not ) امام فعل الكون

- مثال: I am not playing tennis now.

**Put the verbs between brackets in the correct tense:**

- 1) Look ! That man.....(try) to open the door of your car.
- 2) Can you hear those people? What.....they.....(talk) about?
- 3) I must go now. It.....(get) late.
- 4) 'Hurry up ! It's time to leave.' 'Ok, I.....(come)'.
- 5) Hurry up ! Everybody.....(wait) for you.
- 6) '.....(you / listen) to the radio ?' 'No, you can turn it off.'
- 7) Rachel is in Damascus at the moment. She.....(stay) at the Sheraton Hotel.
- 8) Ali: Can you drive?  
Batul: I.....(learn). My father.....(teach) me.
- 9) Sarah.....(look) for a place to live.
- 10) I.....(think) about what happened.

**الحلول**

- 1.is trying    2.are / they talking    3.is getting    4.am coming    5.is waiting    6.Are / listening    7.is staying    8.am learning  
9.is looking    10.am thinking

- **Past Continuous الماضي المستمر**: يعبر عن نشاط كان يحدث في الماضي ضمن فترة زمنية مطولة واستغرق فترة من الزمن



وكان في حالة استمرار في الماضي

- دلالة: ( When / While / As )

- **Affirmative الإثبات**: نفس شكل الحاضر المستمر ولكن يتحول: were ← are / was ← is - am

- مثال: I was playing tennis yesterday.

- **Question السؤال**: نفس شكل الحاضر المستمر في حال السؤال أي نبدل بين فعل الكون و الفاعل

- مثال: Were you playing tennis yesterday?

- **Negative النفي**: نفس شكل الحاضر المستمر في حال النفي فقط نضع ( not ) امام فعل الكون

- مثال: I was not / wasn't playing tennis yesterday.

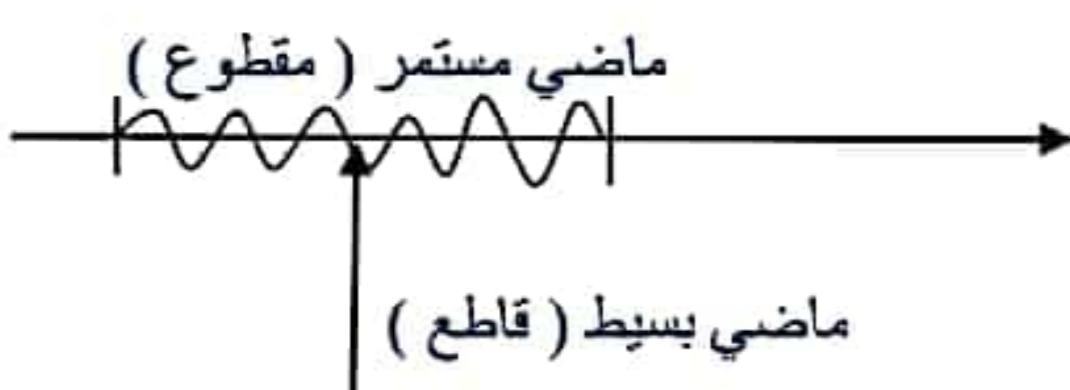
- ملاحظات هامة: يقطع الماضي البسيط الماضي المستمر مع الدلالات التالية:

ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط + When

ماضي بسيط + When + ماضي مستمر

ماضي بسيط + ماضي مستمر + As / While

ماضي مستمر + As / While + ماضي بسيط





- امثلة:  
 When it **rained**, I **was waiting** the bus.  
 I **was waiting** the bus **when it rained**.  
**As / While** I **was waiting** the bus, it **rained**.  
 It **rained as / while** I **was waiting** the bus.

- ملاحظة: يمكن ان يأتي فعلا بزمان الماضي المستمر كانا مستمرين في الماضي بنفس الوقت

**Put the verbs between brackets in the correct form:**

- 1) The cook.....(**cry**) while he was cutting onions.
- 2) The telephone rang as I.....(**have**) a shower.
- 3) When she was laughing, he.....(**cry**).
- 4) She.....(**stand**) in this place when the accident happened.
- 5) Osama.....(**not feel**) okay when we visited him yesterday.
- 6) While I.....(**study**) hard, she was playing and wasting her time.
- 7) Amjad.....(**go**) to his work when he suddenly found a golden ring.
- 8) I.....(**do**) my homework at 8 o'clock last night when Norah called me.
- 9) As we.....(**have**) a great time in Lattakia last year, you were staying at your home.

**الحلول**

- 1.was crying    2.was having    3.was crying    4.was standing    5.were / doing    6.wasn't feeling    7.was studying  
 8.was going    9.was doing    10.were having

**الشرطيات**

- **First Condition** الشرطية الاولى: تستخدم في الحالات ممكنة التحقق في الحاضر او المستقبل

فعل الشرط	جواب الشرط
<b>If + ( جملة حاضر بسيط )</b>	<b>S + will + V1 ( مصدر )</b>

If he **studies** hard , he **will pass** the exam.

- **Second Condition** الشرطية الثانية : تستخدم في الحالات المتخيلة والمستحيلة الحدوث في المستقبل

فعل الشرط	جواب الشرط
<b>If + ( جملة ماضي بسيط )</b>	<b>S + would + V1 ( مصدر )</b>

If he **studied** hard , he **would pass** the exam.

- **Third Condition** الشرطية الثالثة : تستخدم للندم على حالات في الماضي مستحيلة التحقق

فعل الشرط	جواب الشرط
<b>If + ( جملة ماضي تام )</b>	<b>S + would + have+ V3</b>

If he **had studied** hard , he **would have passed** the exam.

- ملاحظة: يمكن التبديل بين طرفي الشرطية مع حذف الفاصلة :

He will pass the exam if he studies hard. ← → If he studies hard , he will pass the exam.



## relative clauses الضمانر الوصلية

ملاحظة: ضمانر الوصل تستخدم كالتالي :

( **who** + فعل + شخص ) الذي للأشخاص يأتي بعدها فعل

This is the man **who took** my wallet.

( **whom** + فعل + فاعل + شخص ) الذي للأشخاص ( مفعول به ) يأتي بعدها فاعل

This is the man **whom I took** his wallet.

( **which** + فعل / فاعل + شيء ) الذي للأشياء يأتي بعدها فعل او فاعل

I watched the film **which was** exciting. - I watched the film **which you gave** me.

( **whose** + اسم + فعل ) الذي له يأتي بعدها اسم ثم فعل

The woman , **whose purse was stolen**, went to the police station.

( **where** + فعل + فاعل + مكان ) حيث يأتي بعدها فاعل ثم فعل

He is now a PhD student in India **where he is doing** high level research

( **when** + فعل + فاعل + زمان ) عندما يأتي بعدها فاعل ثم فعل

I knew him **when I was** a child.

( **that** + فعل / فاعل + شخص / شيء ) الذي للأشخاص وللأشياء يأتي بعدها فعل او فاعل

This is the man **that took** my wallet. - I watched the film **that was** exciting.

This is the man **that I took** his wallet. - I watched the film **that you gave** me.

## صناعة السؤال Making Question

? تتمة + فعل رئيسي + فاعل + فعل مساعد + ( كلمة سؤال )

- 1- نترجم الجملة بشكل صحيح
- 2- نحدد زمن الجملة من خلال شكل الفعل او من الدلائل الموجودة في الجملة
- 3- نحذف المعلومة الهامة من الجملة
- 4- نضع كلمة السؤال المناسبة للمعلومة المحذوفة
- 5- نضع الفعل المساعد المناسب لزمن الجملة
- 6- نضع الفاعل
- 7- نضع الفعل الرئيسي بالتناسب مع الفعل المساعد
- 8- نكمل الجملة ما عدا المعلومة المحذوفة ونضع ( ? ) في آخر الجملة



زمن الجملة	الفعل المساعد	شكل الفعل الرئيسي
الحاضر البسيط	Do / Does	مصدر ( V1 )
الماضي البسيط	Did	مصدر ( V1 )
الحاضر المستمر	Am / Is / Are	V1 + ing
الماضي المستمر	Was / Were	V1 + ing
الحاضر التام	Have / Has	P.P ( V3 )
الحاضر التام المستمر	Have / Has	been + V1 + ing
الماضي التام	Had	P P ( V3 )
المستقبل البسيط	Will / Can / would / Should...	مصدر ( V1 )

1- للسؤال عن شيء نستخدم ( What ماذا ) :

My father gave me a present. → **What** did your father give you?

2- للسؤال عن زمان نستخدم ( When متى ) :

I go to London every year. → **When** do you go to London?

3- للسؤال عن مكان نستخدم ( Where أين ) :

I go to London every year. → **Where** do you go to every year?

4- للسؤال عن كيفية او حال نستخدم ( How كيف ) وذلك مع ( بواسطة by / ظرف ly / صفة ) :

I go to work by bus. → **How** do you go to work?

The footballers played badly. → **How** did the footballers play?

5- للسؤال عن سبب نستخدم ( Why لماذا ) وذلك مع ( لأن because / لكي in order to / لأجل for ) :

People eat and drink in order to survive. → **Why** do people eat and drink?

People eat and drink to survive. → **Why** do people eat and drink?

I slept early because I was tired. → **Why** did you sleep early?

I am waiting for my friend. → **Why** are you waiting?

6- للسؤال عن الفعل نستخدم ( What ) والفعل الرئيسي ( do ) ونصرفه حسب زمن الجملة اي ( do / doing / done )

I was studying when you phoned me. → **What** were you **doing** when I phoned you?

7- للسؤال عن شخص نستخدم ( Who من ) :

I am waiting for my friend. → **Who** are you waiting for?

8- للسؤال عن كمية نستخدم ( اسم غير معدود + How much كم الكمية ) حتى مع المال money :

This jacket costs 3000 SP. → **How much** ( money ) does this jacket cost?

I drink two liters of water a day. → **How much water** do you drink a day?

9- للسؤال عن اسم جمع معدود نستخدم ( اسم جمع معدود + How many كم العدد ) :

I have read five stories so far. → **How many stories** have you read?

I drink two liters of water a day. → **How many liters** of water do you drink a day?

10- للسؤال عن اسم نستخدم ( اسم + Which أي ) :

I like travelling to Britain. → **Which country** do you like travelling to?

11- للسؤال عن العمر نستخدم ( How old كم العمر ) :

My father is 50 years old. → **How old** is your father?



**-12** للسؤال عن اللون نستخدم ( اسم + **What color of** ما اللون من + اسم ):

I want the **blue** pen. → **What color of pen** do you want?

**-13** للسؤال عن نوع او صفة نستخدم ( اسم + **What kind of** ما النوع من + اسم ):

I prefer watching **adventure** films. → **What kind of films** do you prefer watching?

**-14** للسؤال عن عدد المرات نستخدم ( **How often** كم مرة / **How many times** كم عدد المرات ) مع :

( **once / twice / three times / ..... / several / many ..... times** )

I do sport **four times** a week. → **How often / How many times** do you do sport a week?

**-15** للسؤال عن ملكية نستخدم ( اسم + **Whose** لمن ) مع الصفات الملكية او الضمائر الملكية او ( s ) الملكية :

**Our** house is very big. → **Whose house** is very big?

That book is **mine**. → **Whose book** is that?

Omar`s car is expensive. → **Whose car** is expensive?

**-16** للسؤال عن مسافة نستخدم ( **How far** كم المسافة ):

It takes **five kilometers** to the city center. → **How far** does it take to the city center?

**-17** للسؤال عن كمية الوقت نستخدم ( **How much time** كم كمية الوقت ):

It took **an hour** to the city center. → **How much time** did it take to the city center?

**-18** للسؤال عن الوقت نستخدم ( **What time** ):

I went home **at seven o`clock**. → **What time** did you go home?

**-19** للسؤال عن الصفات الخارجية نستخدم التالي ( **What do / does + فاعل + look like?** ):

My friend is **tall and handsome**. → **What does your friend look like?**

**-20** للسؤال عن الصفات الداخلية نستخدم التالي ( **What is / are + فاعل + like?** ):

My friend is **clever and friendly**. → **What is your friend like?**

**-21** للسؤال عن الطقس نستخدم التالي ( **What is / was the weather like?** ):

It is **very cold** in Canada. → **What is / was the weather like** in Canada?

**-22** للسؤال عن طول مدة نستخدم ( **How long** كم طول المدة ) مع ( **since / for / all** ) في زمن الحاضر التام والتام المستمر

I have been studying **for three hours**. → **How long** have you been studying?

**-23** عندما يبدأ الجواب بـ ( **Yes / No** ) فإننا لا نحتاج كلمة سؤال ولا نحذف شيء من الجملة فقط نحذف ( **Yes / No** ) ونبدأ بالفعل المساعد

**Yes**, I was very happy. → Were you very happy?

**Yes**, computer crimes have increased recently. → Have computer crimes increased recently?

**-24** للسؤال عن الفاعل الذي في اول الجملة أي قبل الفعل بشرط ان يكون الفاعل اسم ظاهر وليس ضمير شخصي فإننا هذه لا نحتاج لفعل

مساعد بل فقط نحذف الفاعل ونضع اما ( **Who** ) إذا كان الفاعل شخص ونعامله كالضمير ( **he** ) أو نضع ( **What** ) إذا كان الفاعل شيء ونعامله كالضمير ( **it** ) ونضع ( ? ) في آخر الجملة:

( شخص ) **The police** arrested the criminal. → **Who** arrested the criminal?

( شخص ) **My friends** are coming to visit me. → **Who** is coming to visit you?

( شيء ) **Too many cars** lead to pollution. → **What** leads to pollution?



**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

<p>(1) A: .....?</p> <p>B: My school was opened in 1975.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: I have been in this school for five years.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: I go there by bus.</p> <p>A: Where is the school located ?</p> <p>B: .....?</p>	<p>7) A: .....?</p> <p>B : My house is located in Lattakia.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: It is about five miles from the sea.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: It is quiet and comfortable.</p> <p>A: What does it look like?</p> <p>B: .....</p>
<p>(2) A: .....?</p> <p>B: I got to Apamea two days ago.</p> <p>A: Where are you staying?</p> <p>B: .....</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: It is scorching hot.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: I could see enormous and high walls.</p>	<p>8) A: .....?</p> <p>B: My house has two storeys.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: It overlooks a beautiful garden.</p> <p>A: What is it planted with?</p> <p>B: .....</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>A: The walls are white.</p>
<p>(3) A: .....?</p> <p>B: Yes, I have travelled abroad.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: I went to Cairo.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: To visit my cousins.</p> <p>A: How long did you stay there?</p> <p>B: .....</p>	<p>9) A: .....?</p> <p>B: I go to bed at nine o'clock.</p> <p>A: How much sleep do you get each night?</p> <p>B: .....</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: I feel alert and rested in the morning.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: Yes, I get enough sleep.</p>
<p>(4) A: .....?</p> <p>B: The sand gazelle weighs 20 kilogrammes.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: It is almost 100 km per hour.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: It has a white head and a sand-coloured body.</p> <p>A: Which animal do you prefer ? Why ?</p> <p>B: .....</p>	<p>10) A: .....?</p> <p>B: Alberto and Maria have been married for eighty years.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: They eat soup or corn for every meal.</p> <p>A: .....?</p> <p>B: They have a healthy lifestyle.</p> <p>A: How can you keep healthy?</p> <p>B: .....</p>



(5) A: .....? B: I arrived in England in 2001. A: .....? B: I'm a teacher. A: .....? B: I felt sad when I left my country. A: Who do you live with? B: .....	11) A: .....? B: Mount Everest is 8,848 m high. A: .....? B: Hillary was the first to reach its summit. A: .....? B: That was in 1953. A: Would you like to be a mountain climber? Why? B: .....
6) A: .....? B: I left the village to work in the city. A: .....? B: I was at the age of twenty. A: .....? B: I miss the peace and quiet in the country. A: What is the city life? B: .....	12) A: .....? B: I've been playing chess for ten years. A: .....? B: I started doing that when I was in primary school. A: .....? B: I've played two tournaments so far. A: Why do you like chess? B: .....

### الحلول

- 1) A. When was your school opened? A. How long have you been in this school? A. How do you go there? B. It is located near the park.
- 2) A. When did you get to Apamea? A. I'm staying in a hotel. A. What is the weather like? B. What could you see?
- 3) A. Have you travelled abroad? A. Where did you go? A. Why did you go to Cairo ( there) ? B. I stayed there for two weeks.
- 4) A. How much does the sand gazelle weigh? A. How fast is it? A. What does it look like? B. I prefer the tiger because it is beautiful.
- 5) A. When did you arrive in England? A. What do you do? A. How did you feel when you left your country? B. I live with my family.
- 6) A. Why did you leave the village? A. How old were you? A. What do you miss in the country. B. It is interesting.
- 7) A. Where is your house located? A. How far is it from the sea? A. What is it like? B. It is big and white.
- 8) A. How many storeys does your house have? A. What does it overlook? B. It is planted with flowers. A. What colour are the walls?
- 9) A. What time( When) do you go to bed? B. I get eight hours. A. How do you feel in the morning? A. Do you get enough sleep.
- 10) A. How long have Alberto and Maria been married? A. What do they eat? A. What kind of lifestyle do they have?  
B. By eating healthy food and doing exercise.
- 11) A. How high is Mount Everest? A. Who was the first to reach its summit? A. When was that? B. No, because it is dangerous.
- 12) A. How long have you been playing chess? A. When did you start doing that? A. How many tournaments have you played so far?  
B. Because it is interesting

### إكمال الجمل

في اكمال الجمل يجب ان يكون هناك فاعل أولا وفعل ثانيا وتنتمه شخصيه وذات معنى منطقي مرتبط بشبه الجمله المعطاة لتسهيل اختيار الزمن يمكن الالتزام بالقاعدة العامة التالية:

- عندما تكون شبه الجملة المعطاة بالماضي فإننا نكمل بالماضي ( ماضي بسيط / ماضي مستمر / ماضي تام )
- عندما تكون شبه الجملة المعطاة بالحاضر فإننا نكمل بالحاضر ( حاضر بسيط / حاضر مستمر / حاضر تام )
- فقط يلتقي الحاضر مع الماضي مع كلمة ( since ) : ماضي بسيط + since + حاضر تام / تام مستمر

### Complete the following sentences using clauses:

- I'm not good at maths, so ..... I need help.
- I'm really tired, but ..... I can't sleep.
- I'm really tired this morning, so ..... I can't go swimming.
- I'm really tired because ..... I've been working hard recently



## Missing Words كلمات الذاكرة

في الامتحان هناك فراغات يطلب ملء كل منها بكلمة واحدة ذات وظيفة لغوية و قواعدية مثل ( ضمائر الفاعل - ضمائر المفعول به - الصفات الملكية - أداة التنكير - أداة التعريف - احرف الجر - احرف العطف - فعل الكون - فعل الملك - فعل مساعد - ضمائر الوصل - جزء من زمن معين - جزء من مصطلح - جزء من فعل تركيب )

Ahmad and I have just got home from a two-day visit to Apamea. It was only a short visit but I will remember it forever. Apamea is an ancient site on the bank of the Orontes River. There are extensive ruins which tourists can walk around and where they can learn about many different civilisations.

## Derivation

### الاشتقاقات ( كافة الوحدات )

عنف	violence	→	عنيف	violent	دمار	destruction	→	يدمر	destroy
فوضى	chaos	→	فوضوي	chaotic	موهبة	talent	→	موهوب	talented
قانون	law	→	قانوني	legal	اكمل	completion	→	يكمل	complete
براءة	innocence	→	بريء	innocent	بناء	builder	→	يبني	build
ذنب	guilt	→	مذنب	guilty	غير كفي	inefficiency	→	غير كفي	inefficient
يكسب	earn	→	مكاسب	earnings	يوم	day	→	يومي	daily
اقتصاد	economy	→	اقتصادي	economic	بشكل دائم	permanent	→	بشكل دائم	permanently
يعمل	act	→	نشاط	activity	تطور	develop	→	تطور	development
اغلبية	majority	→	رئيسي	major	ذهول	amazement	→	مذهل	amazing
كارثة	disaster	→	كارثي	disastrous	يجذب	appeal	→	جذاب	appealing
عدوى	infection	→	يعدي	infect	ذهول	astonishment	→	مذهل	astonished
الطبيعة	nature	→	طبيعي	natural	رياضيات	mathematics	→	رياضياتي	mathematical
تهديد	threat	→	يهدد	threaten	موسيقى	music	→	موسيقى	musical
تنوع	variety	→	يتنوع	vary	شعبية	popularity	→	شعبي	popular
السلام	peace	→	مسالم	peaceful	مهارة	skill	→	ماهر	skilled
مذكر	reminder	→	يذكر	remind	علم الآثار	archaeology	→	عالم آثار	archaeologist
اثارة	excitement	→	يثير	excite	تاريخ	history	→	تاريخي	historical / historic

يتم اختيار الكلمة بعد ربطها بكلمه او كلمات في الجملة

– امثله:

Many people believe that the worst crimes are murder and other ( **violent** – violence ) **acts**.

There would be a ( chaos – **chaotic** ) **situation** in society if there were no ( law – **legal** ) **system**



( violent ) acts	أفعال عنيفه	a ( chaotic ) situation	حاله فوضويه
( legal ) systems	انظمه قانونيه	( chaotic ) scenes	مظاهر فوضويه
he was ( innocent )	كان بريئا	he was not ( guilty )	لم يكن مذنبا
very ( guilty )	مذنب جدا	weekly ( earnings )	أجور اسبوعيه
Average ( earnings )	متوسط الأجور	are ( destroying )	تدمر
the ( destruction )	الدمار	( disastrous ) potato crops	محاصيل بطاطا كارثيه
a ( disastrous ) effect	تأثير كارثي	a ( disastrous ) year	عام كارثي
The ( majority )	الاكثرية	volcanic ( activity )	نشاط بركاني
( economic ) success	نجاح اقتصادي	the ( development )	التطور
( daily ) newspaper	جريدة يومية	( permanent ) work	عمل دائم
( infections ) spread	انتشرت الامراض	( natural ) beauty	جمال طبيعي
can seriously ( threaten )	يمكن ان يهدد بشكل كبير	wide ( variety )	تنوع كبير
( peaceful ) village	قرية هادئه	lasting ( reminder )	مذكر دائم
the ( excitement )	الاثاره	The ( construction )	البناء
the ( destruction )	الدمار	terrible ( destruction )	دمار فظيع
( historic ) buildings	ابنيه تاريخيه	( historical ) sites	مواقع تاريخيه
( historical ) interest	اهميه تاريخيه	( historical ) events	احداث تاريخيه
the ( completion )	إتمام	the ( builders ) worked	البنائون يعملون
the ( buildings ) damaged	الابنيه دمرت	because of ( inefficiency )	بسبب عدم الكفاءه
be an ( archaeologist )	أكون عالم اثار	( archaeologists ) are working	علماء اثار يعملون
( able ) student	طالبه قديره	amazing ( ability )	قدره مذهله
his ( ability )	قدرته	was ( able )	كانت قادره
has been ( amazing )	كان مذهلا	very ( appealing )	جذاب جدا
in ( astonishment )	في ذهول	was ( astonished )	كان مذهلا
good at ( mathematics )	جيد في الرياضيات	( mathematical ) brains	ادمغه رياضيه
( mathematical ) genius	عبقري حسابي	( musical ) ability	قدره موسيقيه
kinds of ( music )	أنواع الموسيقى	in ( popularity )	في الشعبيه
its ( popularity )	شعبيتها	( skilful ) teacher	مدرس ماهر
more ( skilful )	ماهر اكثر	( skilful ) drivers	سائقون مهرة
very ( skilful )	ماهرة جدا	very ( talented )	موهوب جدا
a ( talent )	موهبه	( talented ) pupil	تلميذة ماهره



# المنهاج

## Unit 1

Students` Book ( Unit 1 )			
Recycling	تكرير - إعادة تصنيع	Relating to	متعلق بـ
Resources	مصادر	The law	القانون
Reduce	يقلل	Practice / carry out	يمارس - ينفذ
pollution	تلوث	Think / thought	يعتقد - اعتقد
Court	محكمة - ملعب	Action	عمل - فعل
Govern	يحكم	Everyone	كل شخص
Guilty	مذنب	The first	الأول
Innocent	بريء	Make / made	يصنع - صنع
Jury	هيئة محلفون - الحكام	Most	معظم
Legal	قانوني	Societies	مجتمعات
Principle	مبدأ - قاعدة	Hear	يسمع
Property	ملكية - عقار	Types	أنواع
Prove	يثبت - يبرهن	Criminal law	قانون الجرائم (الجنايات)
Ruler	مسطرة - حاكم	Civil law	القانون المدني
Abroad	خارج البلد	Criminals	مجرمون
Deteriorate	يتدهور - ينهار	Send / sent	يرسل - ارسل
Emigrate	يهاجر	Prison	السجن
Famine	مجاعة	Typical	نموذجي
Industry	صناعة	Punishment	عقوبة
Modernization	التحديث - الحداثة	Less	اقل
Refugee	لاجئ	Serious	خطير - جدي
Starvation	مجاعة	Define	يعرف - عرف
Success	نجاح	Special	خاص
Composted	سمد - مزج	Individual	فرد
Incineration	حرق - صهر	Rules	قواعد - احكام
Landfill	موقع دفن النفايات	Sure	متأكد
Material	مادة	Obey	يطيع
Precious	ثمينة	Government	حكومة
Recycle	يعيد تكرير	Police	الشرطة
Rubbish	نفاية	Judges	قضاة
Waste	نفايات - تذيير	Members	أعضاء - افراد
Enforce	يفرض	Public	شعبي - عام
Responsible for	مسؤول عن	Jurie	هيئة محلفين
Something	شيء ما	Deal with	يتعامل مع
Valuable	غالي - قيم	Murder	قتل - مقتل
Crime	جريمة	Theft	سرقة
Group	مجموعة	Discuss	يناقش
People	الناس	Questions	أسئلة
Belong to	تعود ملكيته لـ	The main	الرئيسي
Someone	شخص ما	Purpose	هدف
Decide	يقرر	Sending	إرسال
Rule / belief	قاعدة - معتقد	Country	بلد
Control	يحكم - يسيطر	Wrong	خطأ



Show	يظهر	Code	شيفرة - رمز
job	عمل / وظيفة	Washing	غسل
True	صحيح	Type	نوع
Protect	يحمي	Punish	يعاقب
Agree with	يتفق مع	Spend - spent	يقضى - ينفق
Without	بدون	Typing	كتابة
Chaos	فوضى	Letters	رسائل
Behave	يتصرف	Reports	تقارير
Correct	صحيح	Like best	يفضل
Definitions	تعريف	Area	منطقة
The list	القائمة	Games	العب
Below	في الأسفل	Tennis	كرة المضرب
Repeated	متكررة	Modern	حديث- عصري
Words	الكلمات	Land	ارض
Each	كل	Building	بناء
Student	طالب	Club	نادي
Society	مجتمع - جمعية	Organization	منظمة
Important	هام	The same	نفس
Ruler	حاكم - مسطرة	Interest	الاهتمام
Famous for	مشهور لاجل	Use	يستخدم
Egyptian	مصري	Machine	آلة
Maths	رياضيات	Place	مكان
Homework	وظيفة	Trials	محاكمات
Borrow	يستأجر	Take place- happen	يحدث
Property	ملكية - عقار	In charge of	مسؤول عن
Taking	أخذ	Such as	مثل
Price	سعر- ثمن	King	ملك
City	مدينة	Straight	مباشرة - مستقيمة
Increased	ازداد	Piece	قطعة
Dramatically	بشكل مفاجئ	Wood	خشب
Court	محكمة - ملعب	Plastic	بلاستيك
The final	النهائية	Draw	يرسم
Championship	البطولة	Lines	خطوط
Players	اللاعبين	Kind / sort	نوع
Men	رجال	Money	مال
Appear	يظهر	Illegal	غير قانوني
Tomorrow	غدا	Mean	بخيل - يعني
Accused of	متهم ب	Case	قضية - حالة - حقيقية
dangerous	خطير	Note	ملاحظة- يلاحظ - نقود ورقية
Driving	القيادة	Spring	ربيع - نبع - نابض
Fine	جيد جدا - غرامة	Row	نسق - شجار - يجذف
Believe	يعتقد - يؤمن	Complete	كامل- يكمل
Examples	امثلة	Sentences	جمل
Pay - paid	يدفع - دفع	Adjectives	صفات
Insurance	ضمان	Derived form	مشتق من
Give	يعطي	The nouns	الأسماء
Secretaries	سكرتيرات	Brackets	الاقواس
Used to	اعتاد ان	Need	تحتاج - حاجة



Many	كثير	Dictionary	قاموس
		Give	يعطي
The worst	الأسوأ	Motivate	يحفز
Crime	جريمة	Related to	متصل بـ
Murder	قتل - مقتل	Changing	تغير
Acts	اعمال - تصرفات	Quickly	بسرعة
Violent	عنيف	Using	استخدام
Violence	عنف	Commit	يرتكب
Situations	حالات	Like	مثل
Chaos	فوضى	Identity	هوية
Chaotic	فوضوي	Easier	اسهل
Law	قانون	Fraud	احتيال
Lawless	ضد القانون - متمرّد	Issue	قضية
Systems	أنظمة	Hard	قاسي - صعب
Leave - left	يغادر - غادر	Fight	يحارب - يقاتل
Free	حر - مجاني	Offence	إساءة
Innocence	براءة	Difficult	صعب
Innocent	بريء	Solve	يحل
Guilt	ذنب	Traditional	تقليدي
Guilty	مذنب	Invisible	غير مرئي
Country	بلد	Actions	اعمال
Developed	طور	May	ربما
Own	خاص	Prosecute	يقاضي
Hundreds	مئات	Successfully	بشكل ناجح
Thousands	الآلاف	Nothing	لا شيء
Years	سنوات	Stolen	مسروق
Broke the law	خالف القانون	Physically	ماديا - ملموس
Reading	قراءة	Damaged	متضرر
Book	كتاب	Recent	حديث
History	تاريخ	Number	عدد
Law-making	وضع القانون	Access	وصول
Anyone	أي شخص	Account	حسابات
Committed to	ملتزم بـ	Bank	مصرفية
Record	يسجل - يدون	Grown	نما - كبر
Cheating	غش	Business	عمل تجاري
Severely	بقسوة	Attract	يجذب
Essays	مقالات	Tiny	صغير جدا
Sergeant	رائد	Order	يطلب
Interview	مقابلة	Goods	بضائع
Detectives	محققون	Paying	دفع
So far	حتى الآن	Break into	ينتدّم
Family	عائلة	Move	ينتقل / يتحرك
Recently	مؤخرا	Viruses	فيروسات
Revise	يراجع - ينقح	Affect	يؤثر
Science	علوم	Details	تفاصيل
Exam	امتحان	Discover	يكتشف
Plan	خطة - يخطط	Lying	كذب
Pass on	يمرر	Cheating	غش
Confidential	سرية	Get	يحصل على



Meeting	مقابلة	Banned	ممنوع
Conversations	محادثات	Program	برنامج
Allow	يسمح	Damages	اضرار
Persuade	يقنع	Ensuring	ضمان
Worthless	عديم القيمة	Traffic	المرور
Solve	يحل	Speed	سرعة
Stealing	سرقة	Limits	حدود
Personal	شخصي	Motorist	سائق دراجة
Residential	سكنية - مأهولة	Fast	سريع - بسرعة
		Areas	مناطق

### Activity Book ( Unit 1 )

convention	اتفاقية	Gender	جنس
Protect	يحمي	Nationality	جنسية
Injured	مصابون	Views	وجهات نظر
Soldiers	جنود	Sick	مريض
Civilians	مدنيون	Prejudice	تحيز - تحامل
Treat	يعامل	Victims	ضحايا
Well	بشئ جيد	Forbidden	ممنوع
With respect	باحترام	Harshly	بقسوة
Treaty	معاهدة	Army	جيش
Due to	ووفقا ل - تبعا ل	Formal	رسمي
Significantly	بشكل هام	Attitude	موقف - سلوك
Update	يحدثها	Signed	وقعت
Follow	يتبع	Paid	دفع (مال)
agreement	اتفاقية	Subject	موضوع
Important	هام	Investigation	تحري - تحقيق
Neutral	حيادية	Signify	يعني
Care for	تعتني بـ	Squash	لعبة السكواتش
Wounded	الجرحي	Container	وعاء - حاوية
The Red Crescent	الهِلال الأحمر	Unkind	غير لطيف
Provide	يزود	Not generous	غير كريم - بخيل
Aid	مساعدة	Quality	نوعية
Peacetimes	أوقات السلم	Held	أقيم - عقد
Ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	Carried	حمل
Symbol	رمز	Documents	وثائق
Street	شارع	Leather	جلدية
Attack	يهاجم	Illustration	توضيح
Allowed to	يسمح له	Come out of	يخرج - يطلع من
Fight	يحارب - يقاتل	Library	مكتبة
Hurt	يؤذي	Research	بحث
Ignore	يتجاهل	Come off	يخرج من
Prisoners	سجناء	Pitch	ملعب كرة قدم
Receive	يتلقى	Meal	وجبة
Medical	طبية	Celebrate	يحتفل
Nurses	ممرضات	Graduation	تخرج
Involved in	المتورطين - المشتركين في	Interview	يجري مقابلة
Conflict	صراع	Health	الصحة
Religion	الدين - الديانة	Suffer From	يعاني من



Instrument	أداة	Periods	فترات
Come back	يعود	Headaches	صداع - آلام رأس
Activities	نشاطات	Properly	بشكل لائق
Demand	طلب	Doubt	يشك - شك
Purchase	يشترى - شراء	Scheme	مشروع
Sorts	أنواع	Stay	يبقى
Embraced	اعتنقت	Leisure	فراغ
Consider	يعتبر	Impossible	مستحيل
Advantages	محاسن	Possible	ممکن
Disadvantages	مساوئ	Dangers	مخاطر
Unsociable	غير اجتماعي	Useful	مفيد
Communicate	يتواصل	Benefitted	استفاد
Normally	بشكل عادي	associated	مرتبط - مشارك
Point of view	وجهة نظر	Launched	اطلق

### New crimes

#### Read the following text then do the tasks below:

The law related to computer crime is changing very quickly. Modern criminals are using computers to help them commit crimes like identity theft and to make it easier to commit old crimes like theft or fraud. One issue that makes it hard to fight computer crime is that this type of offence is often more difficult to solve than traditional crimes because the criminals are invisible and their actions may be hard to prove. Another issue is that it is quite difficult to prosecute a computer criminal successfully because usually nothing is actually stolen or physically damaged.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. What do modern criminals use computers for?
2. What examples of old and new crimes does the writer give?
3. Why is it hard to discover computer criminals?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

4. to do something wrong or illegal
5. the crime of lying or cheating to get money
6. that cannot be seen

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:

7. Solving traditional crimes is more difficult than solving computer crimes.
8. It is impossible to prosecute computer criminals successfully because they damage computers.

#### الاجوبه

1. To help them commit crimes like identity theft and to make it easier to commit old crimes like theft or fraud.
2. old crimes: theft - fraud , new crimes: identity theft. 3. Because they are invisible and their actions may be hard to prove. 4. commit 5. fraud 6. invisible 7. more less 8. impossible - quite difficult. ~~they damage computers~~ usually nothing is actually stolen or physically damaged..

.....

In recent years computer crime has increased as the number of people using the Internet to buy things or to access their bank accounts has grown. This new type of business has attracted techno-criminals who order goods without paying, or break into the computer systems of businesses and move money to their own account or send viruses **which** can seriously damage computers and the information **they** contain. These viruses can affect millions of people worldwide. Criminals can use the Internet to plan crimes and pass on confidential information more easily than meetings or telephone conversations. Computers allow criminals access to millions of people whom they may persuade to pay for something worthless.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. Why is computer crime on the increase?
2. How can viruses affect computers?
3. How can computer criminals cheat to get money?
4. What do the underlined words **which**, **they** refer to?



**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. made someone interested in something
6. bad programs which damage computers
7. having no value or importance

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. Less and less people are committing computer crimes.
9. Computer criminals use telephone conversations to pass on worthless information more easily.

**الاجوبه**

1. Because the number of people using the Internet to buy things or to access their bank accounts has grown.
2. They can seriously damage computers and the information they contain. 3. They break into computer systems of businesses and move money to their own account and they may persuade people to pay for something worthless. 4. which : viruses - they : computers
5. attracted 6. viruses 7. worthless 8. ~~Less and less~~ More and more 9. ~~telephone conversations~~ the Internet - ~~worthless~~ confidential

**International rules of law**

The Geneva Convention is a set of international laws that protect injured soldiers and civilians during war. The law makes sure that every person is treated well and with respect. The first treaty was written in 1864 but it is often changed due to different types of war. It was significantly updated in 1949 after World War Two. Syria is one of 200 countries in the world that agrees to follow the laws of the Geneva Convention. The agreement is important because during war a country might need help from neutral organisations to care for the wounded. The Red Crescent is one of the organisations that provides aid during times of war. It also helps injured people during peacetime, and you may have seen ambulances with the Red Crescent symbol in the street. Countries who follow the laws of the Geneva Convention must not attack civilians, and they are not allowed to fight someone who is already hurt. It is illegal to ignore these rules, and a country found guilty of committing war crimes will be tried in a court of law and can be severely punished. All soldiers, civilians and prisoners may receive medical help from doctors and nurses. **They** can be taken to a hospital without being attacked. Food can also be given to people involved in a conflict. Under the Geneva Convention it does not matter what religion, gender or nationality a person is or what his political views are; if someone is sick he must be treated without prejudice.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. How does the Geneva Convention help the victims of war?
2. What is the Red Crescent?
3. What is forbidden under the rules of the Geneva Convention?
4. When can a country be tried and punished?
5. Which things should be ignored if there is a sick person?
6. What does **They** refer to ?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

7. a formal agreement
8. to pay no attention to
9. the place where trials are held

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

10. Around three hundred countries including Syria have signed the Geneva Convention.
11. The Red Crescent provides aid during times of war only.

**الاجوبه**

1. It protects injured soldiers and civilians. 2. It is one of the organisations that provides aid during times of war. It also helps injured people during peacetime. 3. To attack civilians and fight someone already hurt. 4. When it is guilty of committing war crimes. 5. religion, gender , nationality and political views. 6. soldiers, civilians and prisoners. 7. treaty 8. ignore 9. court ( of law) 10. ~~three~~ two 11. ~~only~~ and peace.

Today, more and more people in Syria are using computers for activities at home, at school or at work. Such is the demand that the government launched a scheme to allow Syrians to purchase them more easily. Many people are using computers for all sorts of things – writing letters, searching the Internet or just playing games. It is a great thing that Syria has embraced modern technology so successfully, but in this essay I am going to consider two disadvantages of computers. In my opinion, the main disadvantage is that people may spend so much time on their computers that they see less of their friends and family. Children who spend too long playing computer



games may become unsociable and forget how to communicate normally with other people. Another result of people spending too much time at their computers is that their health suffers. Sitting for long periods of time can hurt your eyes, cause headaches, or damage your hands and arms. In some cases this means that people cannot do their jobs properly. There is no doubt that computers are here to stay. Some jobs and many leisure activities would be impossible without them, but we should be aware of the possible dangers of spending too much time at our computers.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What do people use computers for?
2. Why did the government start a computer scheme?
3. How does using computers for long periods affect children?
4. Name some physical problems caused by using computers for long periods?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. the need and desire that people have for particular goods
6. particular lengths of time
7. knowing or realising

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. Computers are used at home only.
9. It is impossible to use computers for leisure activities.

**الاجوبه**

1 for activities at home, at school or at work. 2. To allow Syrians to purchase computers more easily. 3. They may become unsociable and forget about how to communicate normally with other people. 4. They hurt the eyes, cause headaches or damage your hands and arms. 5. demand 6. periods 7. aware 8. ~~only~~, at school or at work. 9. ~~impossible~~ possible

**Present Perfect الحاضر التام:** يعبر عن نشاط حدث في الماضي القريب للحاضر في وقت غير محدد او معروف وانتهى للتو

وظهرت نتائجه في الحاضر أي انه ترك أثر أو نتيجة لوقت التكلم (ماضي مرتبط بالحاضر)

- دلالاته: - الإثبات: **for** لمدة - **since** منذ - **lately** مؤخراً - **recently** مسبقاً - **already** مؤخراً - **just** للتو

**so far** حتى الآن - مرات **many / several .....times**

- **السؤال:** **ever** سبق وان (تأتي قبل اسم المفعول) - **yet** بعد / لستى (في آخر جملة السؤال)

- **النفي:** **never** ابدأ - **yet** بعد / لستى (في آخر جملة النفي)

(جملة ماضي بسيط / زمن دقيق) + **since** منذ (تحدد بداية الحدث)

(مدة زمنية) + **for** لمدة (تحدد طول مدة الحدث)

- ملاحظة: تقع كل الدلائل في آخر الجملة ما عدا ( **just - never - already** ) فإنها تأتي بعد ( **have / has** )

**Question السؤال:**

<b>Have</b>	<b>I / you / we / they</b>	<b>P.P ( V3 ) + C ?</b>
<b>Has</b>	<b>he / she / it</b>	

- مثال: **Have** you played tennis yet?

**Affirmative الإثبات:**

<b>I / You / We / They</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>P.P ( V3 ) + C.</b>
<b>He / She / It</b>	<b>has</b>	

- مثال: **I have** just played tennis.

- **Negative النفي:** نفس شكل الإثبات فقط نضع ( **not** ) امام **have / has** : ( **hasn't ← has** ) - ( **haven't ← have** )

- مثال: **I haven't** played tennis yet.

- ملاحظة: اسم المفعول ( P.P ) هو بإضافة ( **ed** ) للفعل النظامي ( **play → played** )

والتصريف الثالث ( العامود الثالث في ورقة الأفعال الشاذة ) للفعل الشاذ ( **break → broken** ) - ( **go → gone** )

- ملاحظة: نترجم ( **have / has** ) بمعنى ( **قد** )



**Put the verbs between brackets in the correct form:**

- Osama.....(go) out since five minutes.
- Hello.....you just.....(arrive) ?
- .....it.....(stop) raining yet ?
- Aya can't walk. She.....(break) her leg.
- Zaid's English.....(improve) much recently.
- I.....(get) a letter this morning.
- 'Do you know where Bana is ?' 'Yes, I.....(just see) her.'
- 'What's in the newspaper today?' 'I don't know. I.....(not read) it yet.'
- 'Are your friends here?' 'Yes, they.....(just arrive).'
- 'What does the teacher think of your plan?' 'We.....(not tell) him yet.'

**الحلول**

- 1.has gone 2.Have / arrived 3.Has / stopped 4.has broken 5.has improved 6.have got 7.I have just seen 8.haven't read 9.have just arrived 10.haven't told

التكلم وربما يمتد للمستقبل (بدأ في الماضي مروراً بالحاضر نحو المستقبل) يعبر عن نشاط بدأ في الماضي في وقت غير محدد واستمر لوقت

دلالاته: **for** لمدة - **since** منذ - **all** طوال

**السؤال Question**

<b>Have</b>	<b>I / you / we / they</b>	<b>been+(V1)ing+C?</b>
<b>Has</b>	<b>he / she / it</b>	

**الإثبات Affirmative**

<b>I / You / We / They</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>been+(V1)ing +C.</b>
<b>He / She / It</b>	<b>has</b>	

مثال: **Have you been playing tennis** -

مثال: **I have been playing tennis.** -

**Negative النفي**: نفس شكل الإثبات فقط نضع (not) امام have / has : (hasn't ← has) - (haven't ← have)

مثال: **I haven't been playing tennis.** -

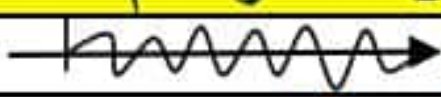
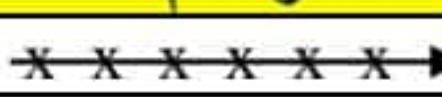
ملاحظة: نترجم (have / has been) بمعنى (قد صار)

**Put the verbs between brackets in the correct form:**

- Ahmad.....(swim) with his friends recently.
- Hiba.....(buy) food for her family.
- I.....(do) a research for a school project for a month.
- She.....(work) since 8 o'clock this morning.
- What.....you.....(do) since I last saw you?
- We are waiting for the bus. We.....(wait) for 20 minutes.
- Linda is a teacher. She.....(teach) for ten years.
- How long.....you.....(sell) computers?
- We are learning French. We.....(learn) since December.
- We have just come back. We.....(celebrate) Samer's graduation.

**الحلول**

- 1.has been swimming 2.has been buying 3.have been doing 4.has been working 5.have / been doing 6.have been waiting 7.has been teaching 8. Have / been selling 9.have been learning 10.have been celebrating

<b>الحاضر التام المستمر Present Perfect continuous</b>	<b>الحاضر التام Present Perfect</b>
1- متواصل ( بدون انقطاع ) 	1- متقطع ( متكرر ) 
2- نهتم بطول فترة النشاط وليس الأثر	2- نهتم بالأثر أو النتيجة
3- لم ينتهي وربما يمتد للمستقبل	3- انتهى للتو أو منذ قليل
<b>since / for</b>	



ملاحظة: اذا اتى ( since / for ) فإننا ننظر للفعل اذا كان لا يقبل الاستمرار فإننا نختار حاضر تام  
- من الأفعال التي لا تقبل الاستمرار ( أفعال لحظية / أفعال ساكنة ):

see - start - finish - pass - seem - know - be - begin - arrive

like - love - want - need - complete - break - think\* - have\*

- أفعال النجمة تقبل الاستمرار ولكن بمعنى آخر ( يتناول having - يفكر thinking )

- The police sergeant ..... ( interview ) two people **so far** today.  
 2. The detectives ..... ( interview ) people **all** week.  
 3. Hani ..... ( study ) law and history **for** four years.  
 4. Hassan ..... ( write ) an essay **all** morning.  
 5. I ..... ( play ) the piano **since** I was 13.  
 6. She ..... ( just be ) shopping.  
 7. He ..... ( just finish ) work. He ..... ( work ) **since** 8 o'clock this morning.  
 8. He ..... ( just come ) out of the sea. He ..... ( swim ) with his friends.  
 9. They have just had a family meal. They ..... ( celebrate ) Samer's graduation.  
 10. He has just come off the football pitch. He ..... ( play ) football.  
 11. She has just come out of the library. She ..... ( do ) research for a school project.  
 12. What ..... ( you do ) **since** I last saw you?  
 13. I ..... ( pass ) my driving test and I ..... ( have ) interviews for a university place.  
 14. I ..... ( start ) learning the mizmar, but I ..... ( only play ) **for** a few weeks.  
 15. .... ( you ever learn ) to play a musical instrument?  
 16. .... ( you have ) a holiday **yet** this year?  
 17. We ..... ( just come back ) from Lattakia.  
 18. Where ..... ( you be ) ? I ..... ( try ) to phone you **all** morning.  
 19. I ..... ( sort out ) my bedroom cupboards **all** morning.  
 20. You look tired. What ..... ( you do ) ?  
 21. I ..... ( not see ) him for over a week.  
 22. **For** several years, the Programme ..... ( work ) hard to protect Matchie's tree kangaroo.  
 23. I am hot. I ..... ( not have ) a cold drink since breakfast.  
 24. I ..... ( not sleep ) **at all** for three nights.  
 25. How long ..... ( you play ) the piano?  
 26. .... ( you play ) tennis **before**?  
 27. **Since** she arrived in England, she ..... ( work ) as a primary school teacher.  
 28. I ..... ( play ) tennis **three times so far** this week.  
 29. The couple ..... ( recently have ) a baby.  
 30. .... ( you speak ) to Ibrahim **recently**?  
 31. I'm really tired. I ..... ( not sleep ) very well **recently**.  
 32. Laila ..... ( revise ) for the science exam **recently**.  
 33. They ..... ( work ) very hard **recently**, so they're really looking forward to their holidays.

### الحلول

1. has interviewed 2. have been interviewing 3. has been studying 4. has been writing 5. have been playing 6. has just been 7. has just finished – has been working 8. has just come – has been swimming 9. have been celebrating 10. has been playing 11. has been doing 12. have you been doing 13. have passed - have been having ( have had ) 14. have started / have only been playing 15. Have you ever learned 16. Have you had 17. have just come back 18. have you been – have been trying 19. have been sorting out 20. have you been doing 21. haven't seen 22. has been working 23. haven't had 24. haven't slept 25. have you been playing 26. Have you played 27. has been working 28. have played 29. have recently had 30. Have you spoken 31. haven't been sleeping 32. has been revising 33. have been working



## كلمات لها أكثر من معنى

1. When I was a student, I was a member of the **Law** ( Type - Society ).
2. **Tutankhamen** was a very famous Egyptian ( ruler – society).
3. What ( society – type) of **music** do you like best?
4. The ( case – court ) **heard** that the crime had taken place on a **tennis** ( case – court ).
5. Taking another person's ( type – property) is **theft**.
6. The **price** of ( society – property) in the city has increased dramatically this year.
7. In the final of the championship, the **players** were on ( law – court ) for two hours.
8. He did a ( property – fine) **job** of washing my car.
9. Secretaries used to spend most of their time ( typing – playing) **letters** and reports.
10. I'm doing my **maths** homework –can I borrow your ( ruler - society ), please?
11. A strong legal system is important in a **modern** ( type - society ).
12. The ( type – fine ) **weather** made me feel happy.
13. My mood changed when the police officer gave me a ( case – fine ) for **driving too fast**.
14. Three men will appear in ( type – court ) tomorrow **accused** of dangerous driving.
15. What does this **word** ( type – mean)?
16. He had to **pay a** ( court – fine) because he was driving without insurance.
17. The **judge** in charge of the ( society – case ) carried all his documents in a **black leather** ( court – case).
18. ( Fine – Mean ) is the opposite of **generous**.

## الحلول

1. Society 2. ruler 3. type 4. court – court 5. property 6. property 7. court 8. fine 9. typing  
10 . ruler 11. society 12. fine 13. fine 14. court 15. mean 16. fine 17. case – case 18. Mean

**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

<p>(1) <b>1.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> The law is the rules which control society.</p> <p><b>2.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> Police and judges make people obey codes of law.</p> <p><b>3.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> Criminal law deals with murder and theft.</p> <p><b>4.A:</b> Where are some criminals sent? Why?</p> <p><b>B:</b> .....</p>	<p>(2) <b>1.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B :</b> Ali has studied law and history.</p> <p><b>2.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> He has been studying for four hours.</p> <p><b>3.A:</b>.....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> He has written two essays this week.</p> <p><b>4.A:</b>.....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> The police sergeant has interviewed two people so far.</p>
<p>(3) <b>1.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> They should be punished because they have broken the law.</p> <p><b>A:</b> What have you done so far this week?</p> <p><b>2.B:</b> .....</p> <p><b>3.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> The lazy students will be punished severely.</p> <p><b>4. A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> I've been reading a book about the history of law-making.</p>	<p>(4)<b>1.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b>The Geneva Convention is a set of international laws.</p> <p><b>2.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> The first treaty was written in 1864</p> <p><b>3.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> It is often changed due to different types of war.</p> <p><b>4.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B.</b>Doctors and nurses can offer help.</p>



(5) 1.A: .....	(6) 1.A: .....
B: Yes, I like music.	B: Modern criminals are using computers to help them commit crimes.
2.A: .....	2.A: .....
B: I like classical music	B: Criminals can use the Internet to plan crimes.
3.A: .....	3.A: .....
B: I have been playing the piano for 3 years.	B: Computers allow criminals access to millions of people.
A: What have you been doing recently?	
4.B: .....	

## الحلول

- (1) 1.A. What is the law? 2.A. Who makes people obey codes of law? / What do police and judges make people do / obey?  
3.A. What does criminal law deal with? 4.B. They sent to prison because they are dangerous.
- (2) 1.A. What has Ali studied? / Who has studied law and history? 2.A. How long has he been studying?  
3.A. How many essays has he written this week? 4.A. How many people has the police sergeant interviewed so far?
- (3) 1.A. Why should they be punished? 2. B. I have played tennis.  
3.A. How will the lazy students be punished? / Who will be punished severely? 4.A. What have you been reading / doing?
- (4) 1.A. What is the Geneva Convention? 2.A. When was the first treaty written? 3. A. Why is it often changed?  
4.A. Who can offer help? / What can doctors and nurses do?
- (5) 1.A. Do you like music? 2.A. What kind of music / What do you like? 3.A. How long have you been playing the piano?  
4.B. I have been studying recently.
- (6) 1.A. Why are modern criminals using computers? 2.A. Why can criminals use the Internet? 3.A. What do computers allow criminals access to?

## Complete the following sentences using clauses:

- 1- When I was a student, ..... I was very happy.  
2- He had to pay a fine because ..... he was driving fast.  
3- He left court a free man because ..... he was innocent.  
4- Omar felt very guilty even though ..... the accident wasn't his fault.  
5- I've been playing the piano since ..... I was seven years old.  
6- I haven't seen him since ..... he went to London.  
7- A virus is a bad programme which ..... can damage computers.  
8- What have you been doing since ..... I last saw you.  
9- Since I was 13 ..... I have lived in Syria.  
10- There would be a chaotic situation if ..... there is no law.  
11- I'm really tired, but ..... I can't sleep.  
12- I'm really tired this morning, so ..... I can't go swimming.  
13- I'm really tired because ..... I've been working hard recently.

## Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:

The law related (1) ..... computer crime is changing very quickly. Modern criminals (2) ..... using computers to help (3) ..... commit crimes like identity theft (4) ..... to make it easier (5) ..... commit old crimes like theft or fraud. One issue (6) ..... makes it hard to fight computer crime (7) ..... that this type of offence is often more difficult to solve (8) ..... traditional crimes because (9) ..... criminals are invisible and their actions may (10) ..... hard to prove. Another issue is that (11) ..... is quite difficult to prosecute (12) ..... computer criminal successfully (13) ..... usually nothing is actually stolen or physically damaged. In recent years computer crime (14) ..... increased as the number of people using (15) ..... Internet to buy things or to access (16) ..... bank accounts has grown. This new type (17) ..... business has attracted techno-criminals (18) ..... order goods without paying, or break into (19) ..... computer systems of businesses (20) ..... move money to their own account or send viruses (21) ..... can seriously damage computers and the information (22) ..... contain. These viruses can affect millions of people worldwide. Criminals can use (23) ..... Internet to plan crimes and pass (24) ..... confidential information more easily (25) ..... meetings or telephone conversations. Computers allow criminals access (26) ..... millions of people whom (27) ..... may persuade to pay (28) ..... something worthless.

## الحلول

- 1.to 2.are 3.them 4.and 5.to 6.that 7.is 8.than 9.the 10.be 11.it 12.a 13.because 14.has  
15.the 16.their 17.of 18.who. 19.the 20.and 21. which 22. they 23.the 24. on 25.than 26.to 27.they 28. for



Today, more (10)..... more people in Syria(2)..... using computers for activities (3)..... home, at school or at work. Such is(4)..... demand that the government launched(5)..... scheme to allow Syrians(6)..... purchase them more easily. Many people(7)..... using computers for all sorts of things – writing letters, searching (8)..... Internet or just playing games. (9)..... is a great thing that Syria(10)..... embraced modern technology so successfully,(11)..... in this essay I (12)..... going to consider two disadvantages(13)..... computers. In my opinion, the main disadvantage(14)..... that people may spend so much time on(15)..... computers that they see less of their friends (16)..... family. Children(17)..... spend too long playing computer games may become unsociable and forget how (18)..... communicate normally(19)..... other people. Another result of people spending too much time at their computers(20)..... that their health suffers. Sitting (21)..... long periods of time can hurt(22)..... eyes, cause headaches, or damage your hands(23)..... arms. In some cases this means that people cannot (24)..... their jobs properly. There(25)..... no doubt that computers are here to stay. Some jobs(26)..... many leisure activities would(27)..... impossible without them, (28)..... we should be aware of the possible dangers of spending too much time (29)..... our computers.

## الحلول

1.and 2.are 3.at 4.the 5.a 6.to 7.are 8.the 9.It 10.has 11.but 12.am 13.of 14.is 15.their 16.and 17.who 18.to 19.with 20.is 21.for 22.your 23.and 24.do 25.is 26.and 27.be 28.but 29.at

The Geneva Convention (1)..... a set of international laws that protect injured soldiers(2)..... civilians during war. The law makes sure(3)..... every person is treated well and (4)..... respect. The first treaty was written(5)..... 1864 but it is often changed due (6)..... different types of war. (7)..... was significantly updated in 1949 after World War Two. Syria (8)..... one of 200 countries in(9)..... world that agrees (10)..... follow the laws of the Geneva Convention.

## الحلول

1.is 2.and 3.that 4.with 5.in 6.to 7.It 8.is 9.the 10.to

1. When I was.....student, I was a member of the law society.
2. Tutankhamen was.....very famous Egyptian ruler.
3. The price of property in the city.....increased dramatically this year.
4. In the final of the championship, the players were.....court for two hours.
5. He did.....fine job of washing my car.
6. He had to pay a fine.....he was driving without insurance.
7. Secretaries used to spend most of their time typing letters.....reports.
8. Many people believe that the worst crimes are murder.....other violent acts.
9. There would be.....chaotic situation in society if there were no legal systems.
10. He left court a free man.....he had proved that he was innocent . The jury said he was not guilty.
11. They have broken the law- they should.....punished.
12. I've.....reading a book about the history of law- making.
13. Anyone.....has committed a crime will have a criminal record.
14. Students.....have been cheating will be punished severely.
15. He has been studying law.....three years.
16. Computer criminals are invisible.....makes it more difficult for the police to solve computer crimes.

## الحلول

1.a 2.a 3.has 4.on 5.a 6.because 7.and 8.and 9.a 10.be 11.be 12.been 13.who 14.who 15.for 16.which

### Translate these sentences into English:

1. اتفاقية جنيف هي مجموعة من القوانين الدولية التي تحمي الجنود المصابين والمدنيين اثناء الحرب.
2. الهلال الأحمر هو واحد من المنظمات التي تزود المساعدة خلال أوقات الحرب.
3. يكون الشخص بريء حتى شخص ما يثبت بأنه مذنب.



4. هناك سوف يكون حالة فوضوية في المجتمع اذا لم يكن هناك أنظمة قانونية
5. إنه غادر المحكمة رجل حرلانه قد اثبت بأنه كان بريء
6. لقد خالفوا القانون- يجب أن يعاقبوا
7. أي شخص الذي قد ارتكب جريمة سوف يملك سجل اجرامي
8. الطلاب الذين قد صار لهم يغشون سوف يعاقبون بقسوة
9. نظاما قانونيا قويا مهم في مجتمع حديثا
10. اخذ ممتلكات شخص آخر هي سرقة
11. توجب عليه ان يدفع غرامة لانه كان يقود بدون تأمين
12. اعتادت السكرتيرات ان يقضوا معظم وقتهم في طباعة الرسائل والتقارير
13. يستخدم المجرمون الحديثون الحواسيب لتساعدهم في ارتكاب جرائم مثل انتحال الشخصية

- 1- The Geneva Convention is a set of international laws that protect injured soldiers and civilians during war.
- 2- The Red Crescent is one of the organisations that provides aid during times of war.
- 1- A person is innocent until someone proves that he is guilty.
- 2- There would be a chaotic situation in society if there were no systems.
- 5 - He left court a free man because he had proved that he was innocent.
- 6 - They have broken the law – they should be punished.
- 7- Anyone who has committed a crime will have a criminal record.
- 8- Students who have been cheating will be punished severely.
- 9- A strong legal system is important in a modern society.
- 10-Taking another person's property is theft.
- 11- He had to pay a fine because he was driving without insurance.
- 12- Secretaries used to spend most of their time typing letters and reports.
- 13- Modern criminals are using computers to help them commit crimes like identity theft.

**\*Write a report making recommendations which will improve road safety in your town or city.**

(Activity Book .P .70)

**\*Write a paragraph expressing your opinions about the traffic situation in your town or city.**

These questions to help you:

(Student Book. P. 15)

1. Do you think there should be speed limits? If so, where? Give reasons for your answer.
2. What should happen to motorists who break these speed limits?
3. Should motorists who drive too fast in residential areas be banned from driving?

### Road Safety / Traffic Situation

**Damascus is my city. People here experience too much traffic jams. There are too many cars and buses in the streets. The roads are narrow and crowded too. Many people drive their cars too fast everywhere. This leads to many accidents. In my opinion, there should be speed limits and motorists shouldn't drive too fast in residential areas. If they do so, they should be banned from driving and pay a huge fine. Moreover, roads should be made wider. Finally, I think this will improve road safety in Damascus and make our lives better.**



\*اكتب تقريراً تقدم فيه مقترحات سوف تحسن سلامة الطرقات في بلدتك أو مدينتك. (كتاب النشاط ص 70)

\*اكتب موضوعاً عبر فيه عن آراءك حول حالة السير في بلدتك أو مدينتك. (كتاب الطالب ص 15)

1. هل تعتقد أنه يجب أن يكون هناك حدود للسرعة؟ إذا كان كذلك أين؟ أعطي أسباباً لجوابك.
2. ماذا ينبغي إن يحدث لسائقي الدراجات الذين يتخطون حدود السرعة؟
3. هل ينبغي لسائقي الدراجات الذين يقودون في الأماكن السكنية أن يُحرمون من القيادة؟

## سلامة الطرق / حالة المرور

دهشقي هي مدينتي ، الناس هنا يعانون إزدحاما مروريا كثيرا جدا ، هناك سيارات وباصات كثيرة جدا في الشوارع ، الطرقات ضيقة و مزدحمة أيضا ، أناس كثيرون يقودون سياراتهم بسرعة كبيرة جدا في كل مكان ، هذا يؤدي لحوادث عديدة ، في رأيي ، يجب أن يكون هناك حدودا للسرعة ولا يجب على سائقي الدراجات أن يقودون بسرعة في الأماكن السكنية ، إذا فعلوا ذلك فيجب أن يمنعوا من القيادة ويدفعوا غرامة كبيرة ، علاوة على ذلك ، الطرقات يجب أن تصبح أعرض ، أخيرا ، أنا أعتقد هذا سوف يحسن سلامة الطرق في دهشقي ويجعل حياتنا أفضل .

Express your opinions about the disadvantages and dangers of using computers. (Activity Book, P.7)

## Disadvantages and Dangers of Using Computers

Computers are very important in our lives. However, there are some disadvantages and dangers of using them. For example, some people spend so much time on their computers. They see their friends and family less. In addition to, they will have problems in their bodies. Other people use the computers of their companies for their own purposes. And this is wrong because they will not do their jobs well. I think that companies should not allow them to do that. Finally, computers are good but we have to know how to use them.

عبر عن رأيك حول المساوئ والأخطار الناجمة عن استخدام الحاسوب. (كتاب النشاط ص 7)

## المساوئ والأخطار الناجمة عن استخدام الحاسوب

الحواسيب هامة جدا في حياتنا. على أي حال ، هناك بعض المساوئ والأخطار ناجمة عن استخدامهم. على سبيل المثال، بعض الناس يقضون وقتاً كثيراً جداً على حواسيبهم . هم يرون اصدقائهم وعائلاتهم أقل. بالإضافة إلى ذلك، هم سوف يملكون مشاكل في أجسامهم. اناس آخرون يستخدمون حواسيب شركاتهم لأغراضهم الخاصة. وهذا خطأ لانهم سوف لن يقومون بعملهم بشكل جيد. أنا أعتقد بان الشركات لا ينبغي أن تسمح لهم ليفعلوا ذلك. أخيراً، الحواسيب تكون جيدة لكن يجب علينا أن نعرف كيف نستخدمهم.



Write an essay in answer to this question: Do you think companies should allow their employees to use work computers for their own purposes?

(Activity Book, P.8)

### Computer Companies

Many companies use computers for their work and activities. Today, you should have an experience in using computer to be able to find a job. Some employees use the computers of the companies for their own purposes. For example, they spend many hours using the internet to communicate with their friends and others play computer games for long hours. In my opinion, companies should not allow the employees to use computers for their own purposes by making control on all computers.

اكتب مقالة مجيبا على هذا السؤال هل تعتقد أن شركات الحاسوب يجب أن تسمح لموظفيها أن يستخدموا حواسيب العمل لأغراضهم الشخصية.  
(كتاب النشاط ص 8)

#### شركات الحواسيب

العديد من الشركات تستخدم الحواسيب في أعمالها ونشاطاتها. اليوم، يجب أن تمتلك خبرة باستخدام الحاسوب لتكون قادرا أن تجد عملا. بعض الموظفين يستخدمون حواسيب الشركات من أجل أغراضهم الخاصة. على سبيل المثال: إنهم يقضون عدة ساعات يستخدمون الانترنت ليتواصلوا مع أصدقائهم، بينما آخرون يلعبون ألعاب الحاسوب لساعات طويلة. برأيي، لا يجب أن تسمح الشركات للموظفين باستخدام الحواسيب لأغراضهم الخاصة وذلك بمراقبة جميع الحواسيب.



## Unit 2

## Students` Book ( Unit 2 )

Shortage	عجز - نقص	Natural	طبيعي
Leading to	يؤدي إلى	Disaster	كارثة
Hunger	الجوع	Early	باكرا
Scale	مقياس	Century	قرن
Great	عظيم	Agriculture	الزراعة
Wealth	ثروة	Farmers	مزارعين
Necessity	ضرورة	Poor	فقير
Old-fashioned	قديم	Die	يموت
Methods	أساليب - طرق	Quarter	ربع
Earn	يكسب	Population	عدد سكان
Disease	مرض - علة	Parts	أجزاء
Destroy	يدمر	Small	صغير
Food	طعام	Island	جزيرة
During	خلال	The next	القادمة
Ocean	محيط		
Migration	هجرة - نزوح	August	أب
Large	كبيرة	Earth	الأرض
Foreign	غريبة - اجنبية	Tremors	هزات
Leave- left	يغادر - غادر	Gradually	تدريجيا
Illustrate	يوضح	Frequent	متكررة
Choose- chose	يختار - اختار	Beginning	بداية
Success	نجاح	October	تشرين الأول
Development	تطور	Decided to	قرر أن
Deteriorate	يتدهور - ينهار	No longer	لم يعد
Emigrate	يهاجر	Safe	أمن
Economic	اقتصادي	Evacuate	يُتَلَقَّى
Activity	نشاط	Nearby	مجاورة
Concerned with	مهتم بـ	Ship	سفينة
Raw	خام	Picked up	التقط - أخذ
Materials	مواد	Take- took	يأخذ - أخذ
Manufactures	سلع - منتجات	South	جنوب
Serious	خطير - جدي	Pass	يسمر
See- saw	يرى - رأى	Weekly	أسبوعيا
Volcano	بركان	Earnings	مكاسب
Erupt	يثور - ينفجر	Earthquake	زلزال
Stay	يبقى	Cause	يسبب
Volcanic	بركاني	Destruction	دمار
Stop	يتوقف	Disastrous	كارثية
Vote	يُطَوِّت	Crops	محاصيل
Go back- return	يعود	Mass	هائلة
However	على أي حال	Activity	نشاط
Adapt to	يتكيف مع	Economic	اقتصادي
Elderly	كبار السن - مسنين	Development	تطور
Changes	تغيرات	Chemistry	كيمياء
Couples	ازواج	Physics	فيزياء
Married	تزوج	Sail	يسبح



Babies	أطفال	February	شباط
Born	وُلد	Hit	يضرب - يفتك
Arabian Gulf	الخليج العربي	Moroccan	المغربية
Transform into	يتحول إلى	Agadir	أغادير
States	ولايات - إمارات	Although	بالرغم من
Funded by	ممول بـ	Lasted	استمر - دام
Gas	الغاز	Second	ثانية
Needs	حاجات	Destructive	مدمر
Construction	بناء - تشييد	Rescue	إنقاذ
Industries	صناعات	Team	فريق
Lead- led	يقود - قاد	Arrive	يصل
Huge	ضخم	Completely	بشكل كامل
Demand for	طلب على	Refugees	لاجئين - نازحين
imagine	يتخيل	Test	فحص - اختبار
Skilled	ماهرون	Fail	يفشل - يُخفق
Workers	عمال	Twice	مرتين
Region	منطقة	Recognize	يدرك - يتعرف على
High- tech	ذو تقنية عالية	Get up	ينهض
All over the Gulf	في كل أنحاء الخليج	Smiling	ابتسام
Find- found	يجد - وجد	Contact	يتصل - يتواصل
Nervous	عصبي - متوتر	Switch off	يطفى
Airport	مطار	Inhabitants	سكان
Fly	يطير	Injured	أصاب
confident	واثق	Late	أواخر
Driving	القيادة	Young	صغير شاب
Rare	نادر		

## Activity Book ( Unit 2 )

Mountains	جبال	Certain	مؤكد / مهين
Forge	يخوض - يجتاز	Warmer	أدفى
Rivers	أنهار	Northwards	باتجاه الشمال
Insects	حشرات	Southwards	باتجاه الجنوب
Extensive	واسعة	Winter	شتاء
Distances	مسافات	Summer	صيف
Continents	قارات	Autumn	خريف
Oceans	محيطات	Spring	ربيع
Creatures	مخلوقات	Movement	تنقل - حركة
Halfway	نصف الطريق	Return	يهوؤ
The grey whale	الحوت الرمادي	Journey	رحلة
Northern	شمالي	Original	اصلي
Plenty of	وفرة- كثرة من	Recurrent	متكررة
Colder	أبرد	Cross	يعبر
Temperate	معتدل	Raise	يربي
Weather	طقس	Young	صغار
Involve	يتضمن	Incredibly	بشكل عجب
Escape from	يفر من	Route	طريق- درب
Enemies	أعداء	Generation	جيل
Rarely	نادرا		
Advance	يتقدم	Land	ارض - يابسة
Steadily	بثبات	Sleep-slept	ينام - نام



Repeatedly	بشمل متكرر	Lovely	جميل - جذاب
Mild	لطيف - معتدل	Apartment	شقة
Temperatures	درجات الحرارة	Provided with	مزود بـ
Bring up	يربي	Job	عمل
Living	حي	Run	يدير
Address	عنوان	Engineering	هندسية
Century	قرن	Firm	شركة
Centimes	سنتيمات	Build-built	يبني - بني
Algerian	جزائري	Bridges	جسور
Dinar	دينار	Attend	يحضر
All over the world	بكل انحاء العالم	Look for	يبحث عن
Difficult	صعب	Parents	والدان
Getting used to	معتادا على	Nearly	تقريبا
Away from	بعيدا عن	Break	يكسر - فاصل
Fit in	يتأقلم	Offered	قدم - عرض
Friendly	ودود	Describe	يصف
Learn-learnt	يتعلم - علم	Sequence	سلسلة
Culture	ثقافة	Events	احداث
Felt ill	شعر بالمرض	Midnight	منتصف الليل
Dream-dreamt	يحلم - حلم	Half-asleep	نصف نائم
Surprised	متفاجئ	The wind	الرياح
Asleep	نائم	Blowing	تهب
Retire	يتقاعد	Shattered	حطمت
Rushe	يندفع نده	Immediately	حالا
All right	على ما يرام	Leapt out of	قفز من

### Why do people leave their home countries?

In the early 19th century, the most important economic activity in Ireland was agriculture. But the farmers were poor and they used old-fashioned methods. Because they heard that they could earn four times as much abroad, some farmers emigrated. But between 1820 and 1840, the economic situation in Ireland deteriorated and in 1845 the Potato Famine began. Disease destroyed 75% of the year's potatoes – the main food for most of the population. During the next two years, 350,000 people died of starvation and there was a huge increase in emigration. By the end of 1854, a quarter of the population of Ireland had left for other parts of the world.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. Which economic activity was very important in Ireland?
2. Why did some farmers emigrate?
3. What caused the Potato Famine?
4. What were the effects of the Potato Famine?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

5. to a foreign country
6. got worse
7. serious shortage of food leading to great hunger on a large scale

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:

8. The farmers were rich and they used modern ways.
9. In the 19th century, the economic situation in Ireland got better.
10. Over half a million people in Ireland died because of the earthquake.

#### الاجوبه

1. agriculture 2. Because they heard that they could earn four times as much abroad.
3. Disease destroyed 75 % of the year's potatoes. 4. 350,000 people died of starvation and there was a huge increase in emigration.
5. abroad 6. deteriorated 7. famine 8. rich poor – modern old-fashioned 9. better worse 10. over half a million 350,000 - earthquake famine



Tristan da Cunha is a small island in the South Atlantic Ocean. In August 1961, earth tremors started and gradually became more frequent. At the beginning of October, the government decided that the island was no longer safe and the whole population of 268 people was evacuated to a nearby island. A ship picked **them** up and took them to South Africa. As they passed Tristan da Cunha, they saw the volcano erupt. Later the people were taken to England, where they stayed for the next two years. In 1963, the volcanic activity on the island stopped and most of the people voted to go back. However, not everyone returned: 14 people had adapted to life in England and decided to stay **there**, and five elderly people had died. There were other changes too: ten couples from the island had married, and eight babies had been born.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Where is Tristan da Cunha located ?
2. Why were the people evacuated from the island?
3. When did Tristan da Cunha become safe again?
4. What do the words in bold ( **them** – **there** ) refer to?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. a piece of land completely surrounded by water
6. slowly – over a long period of time
7. sent away from a dangerous place into a safe one

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. The whole population of Tristan da Cunha stayed on the island because of the war.
9. The people of Tristan da Cunha stayed in South Africa for two months.
10. All of the people of Tristan da Cunha went home even though there was still volcanic activity.

1. in the South Atlantic Ocean. 2. Because the island was no longer safe. 3. In 1963. 4. **them**: 268 people – **there**: in England 5. Island  
6. gradually 7. evacuated 8. ~~stayed on~~ were evacuated from – ~~was~~ volcanic activity. 9. ~~South Africa~~ England – ~~months~~ years  
10. ~~All~~ Most - even though ~~there was still volcanic activity~~ when the volcanic activity stopped.

The economic success of the 1960s and 1970s saw the Arabian Gulf countries transformed into modern and wealthy states, funded by oil and other precious natural resources such as natural gas. The needs of the oil and construction industries led to a huge demand for skilled workers. Many thousands of people moved to the region to help build high-tech cities all over the Gulf. These workers, from many regions of the world, were able to find a better life and help with the development of the region. On February 29th 1960, an earthquake hit the Moroccan city of Agadir. Although it lasted only fifteen seconds, it was one of the most destructive earthquakes of the 20th century. When the rescue team arrived, many areas of the city had been destroyed completely and thousands of families had become refugees. After the earthquake, the city was evacuated and inhabitants moved 3km south where the city was rebuilt. Later studies showed that the disaster had killed over one third of the population, over 10,000 people, and had injured many more.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What played a main role in the economic success of the 1960s?
2. Why was there much demand for skilled workers?
3. How were the lives of the workers transformed?
4. Where is Agadir?
5. What natural disaster happened there?
6. When did it happen and how long did it take?
7. Why was this event disastrous?
8. Where were the people evacuated?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

9. a period of great wealth
10. changed completely
11. having a lot of money

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

12. The Arabian Gulf countries were poor and undeveloped in the 1960s and 1970s
13. A few people emigrated to the Arabian Gulf countries because of natural disasters.



14. Workers went to the Gulf from the Arab countries only.  
15. The population of Agadir was about 10,000 people and the earthquake killed over half of them.

**الاجوبه**

1. Oil and other precious natural resources such as natural gas. 2. Because of the needs of oil and construction industries. 3. They were able to find a better life. 4. in Morocco 5. an earthquake 6. on February 29th, 1960 - fifteen seconds 7. Because many areas of the city had been destroyed completely, thousands of families had become refugees and over 10,000 people were killed and many more were injured. 8. They were evacuated 3 km south. 9. success 10. transformed 11. wealthy 12. ~~poor and undeveloped~~ wealthy and modern 13. ~~A few~~ Many thousands of - ~~natural disasters~~ economic success 14. ~~the Arab countries only~~ many regions of the world . 15. ~~10,000~~ 30,000 ~~half~~ one third

**Animal Migration**

When we talk about animal migration we mean the movement of an animal from the place where it has been living to a different place and the return journey to that animal's original home. Most animal migrations are recurrent events which happen at certain times of the year. Animals usually migrate to find food or to raise their young. Incredibly, most migrating animals follow the same route every year and from generation to generation. Land animals may cross mountains or forge through rivers, while birds and insects travel extensive distances, sometimes across continents and oceans. Fish and other sea creatures may migrate halfway round the world. For example, the grey whale can travel as much as 20,000 kilometres. Many animals migrate to northern regions during the northern summer because the long summer days mean that there is always plenty of food. In the autumn, when the weather gets colder, many animals migrate south to find food and warmer weather (the southern summer). Some animals migrate every year, doing the two journeys in one year, but others migrate only if they need to find food or for more temperate weather.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What is animal migration?
2. What is surprising about animal migration?
3. How far can the grey whale travel?
4. When do some animals migrate northwards and southwards?
5. Do all animals make the same number of migrations every year? Explain

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. important things that happen
7. travel to live in a warmer place
8. way

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

9. Animal migration always involves returning the same season.
10. All animals migrate at the same time every year.
11. Most animals migrate to escape their enemies.
12. Many animals migrate south in the summer.
13. Finding food is rarely the main reason for migration.

**الاجوبه**

1. It is the movement of an animal from the place where it has been living to a different place and the return journey to that animal's original home. 2. Most migrating animals follow the same route every year. 3. 20,000 Km 4. They migrate to northern regions during the northern summer and in the autumn, they migrate south. 5. No, some animals migrate every year, doing the two journeys in one year, but others migrate only if they need to find food or for more temperate weather. 6. events 7. migrate 8. route 9. ~~always involves returning the same season~~ can be different seasons. 10. ~~All~~ Most 11. ~~escape their enemies~~ find food or raise their young. 12. ~~south~~ north 13. ~~rarely the main reason~~ one of the main reasons.

● **Past Perfect الماضي التام:** يعبر عن عملان حدثا في الماضي الذي حدث أولا يسمى ماضي تام و الذي حدث بعده يسمى ماضي بسيط

بسيط ( الماضي التام لا يأتي لوحده في الجملة بل يجب ان يأتي بعده ماضي بسيط ليحمله ماضي تام

- دلالة: تقريبا نفس دلالة الحاضر التام: ( for - yet - already - till - until )



**had + P.P ( V3 ) + C .** + فاعل ( كل الضمانر )

- Affirmative الإثبات:

After the lesson had finished, I spoke to the teacher.



- ملاحظة: في حال السؤال فقط نبدل بين ( had ) والفاعل وفي حال النفي فقط نضع ( not ) امام ( had )  
- ملاحظة هامة جدا: كلمات ربط بين الماضي البسيط والماضي التام

ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط + <b>By the time</b>
ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط + <b>When</b>
ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط + <b>Before</b>
ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام + <b>After</b>
ماضي تام + عام + <b>By</b>
ماضي تام + عام + <b>By the end</b>
ماضي تام + <b>because</b> + ماضي بسيط

- امثلة  
→ **By the time** I came home, they **had gone** out.  
→ **When** I came home, they **had gone** out.  
→ **Before** I came home , they **had gone** out.  
→ **After** they **had gone** out, I came home.  
→ **By 2010**, I **had finished** my study at university.  
→ **By the end 2010**, I **had finished** my study at university.  
→ I was very tired **because** I **had worked** hard.

ملاحظة:

حاضر تام → جملة ماضي بسيط / تاريخ / عام + <b>since</b>
ماضي تام → عام / تاريخ + <b>By</b>
ماضي بسيط → عام / تاريخ + <b>in</b>

- I **have lived** in London **since 2000** / I was a child.  
→ **By 2010**, I **had finished** my study at university.  
→ I **travelled** to London **in 2000** / **on 6.9. 2000**.

- ملاحظة: ازمدة الحاضر تأتي مع بعضها وازمنة الماضي تأتي مع بعضها ( تفيد هذه الملاحظة في سؤال إكمال جمل)  
- ملاحظة: فقط يتقاطع الماضي البسيط مع الحاضر التام او التام المستمر مع ( since )

1. **In 1854**, a quarter of the population of Ireland ..... ( **emigrate** ) abroad.
2. **By 1854**, a quarter of the population of Ireland ..... ( **emigrate** ) abroad.
3. Irish people emigrated because many ..... ( **die** ) of starvation.
4. Not everyone returned: 14 people ..... ( **adapt** ) to life in England and decided to stay there.
5. James **was** very nervous when he arrived at the airport. He ..... ( **never fly** ) **before**.
6. Ruba **didn't** feel very confident about taking her driving test. She ..... ( **fail** ) **twice**.
7. Salah **didn't** recognise his friend, Hani. He ..... ( **not see** ) him **for** years.
8. Firass **found** it difficult to get up this morning. He ..... ( **work** ) late the night **before**.
9. When Laila read the letter she couldn't stop smiling. She ..... ( **pass** ) her exams.
10. Samer couldn't contact his brother, Hani. He ..... ( **switch off** ) his mobile.
11. **On February 29th 1960**, an earthquake ..... ( **hit** ) the Moroccan city of Agadir.
12. The earthquake that hit Agadir ..... ( **last** ) only fifteen seconds.
13. It ..... ( **be** ) one of the most destructive earthquakes of the **20th century**.
14. When the rescue team ..... ( **arrive** ), many areas of the city had been destroyed completely.
15. When the rescue team arrived, thousands of families ..... ( **become** ) refugees.
16. After the earthquake of Agadir in 1960, the city ..... ( **be** ) evacuated and inhabitants ..... ( **move** ) south.
17. After the earthquake of Agadir, the inhabitants moved 3km south where the city ..... ( **be** ) rebuilt.
18. Later studies showed that the disaster ..... ( **kill** ) over one third of the population of Agadir.
19. Five hours after we left England, we ..... ( **arrive** ) in Damascus.
20. My father helped to run an engineering firm that ..... ( **build** ) bridges.
21. We went to an international school and ..... ( **attend** ) school with children from all over the world.
22. It was difficult getting used to being away from home, but we ..... ( **work** ) hard to fit in and the locals ..... ( **be** ) friendly.
23. My family and I returned to England, but I ..... ( **love** ) my time in Syria. I ..... ( **learn** ) much about an interesting culture and ..... ( **make** ) many good friends.
24. Last year I ..... ( **spend** ) two months in China.
25. I went to the doctor's this morning. I ..... ( **feel** ) ill during the night.
26. I ..... ( **dream** ) of visiting China for many years. Last year I spent two months there.
27. My sister and her husband moved into a new flat at the weekend. Before that they ..... ( **live** ) with her husband's parents.
28. My father retired last year. He ..... ( **work** ) for the same company all his life.



29. I wasn't surprised that he fell asleep at the wheel of his car. He .....(drive) nearly 1,000 kilometres without a break.
30. He .....( look ) for work for only two weeks. Then yesterday he was offered two jobs.
31. Greenchester had parks where people .....( spend) their free time.
32. It was a very clean place because everybody .....( recycle) all their rubbish.
33. The people of Greenchester woke up to find that during the night their town..... ( turn) grey, most of the plants .....(die) and the birds .....( fly) away.
34. The sky, which .....( always be) blue, was grey that morning.
35. The people were angry, so they.....(call) the Mayor.
36. The people expected the Mayor to find the answer but he didn't know why Greenchester .....( turn) grey.
37. He discussed the problem with his advisors, then they suddenly .....( realise) that the cause of the problem might be the landfill site.
38. Although it .....( be) there for as long as anyone could remember, very few members of the public ever went there.
39. When the Mayor visited the landfill site, he .....(find) that it was full.
40. The people thought they.....( recycle) their rubbish, but the council .....( bury) it and the fumes from the rubbish ..... ( poison ) Greenchester.
41. I took out my mobile phone, when somebody .....(bump) into me.
42. The person who had bumped into me .....( be ) my friend!

#### الحلول

1. emigrated 2. had emigrated 3. had died 4. had adapted 5. had never flown 6. had failed 7. hadn't seen 8. had worked 9. had passed  
 10. had switched off 11. hit 12. lasted 13. was 14. arrived 15. had become 16. was - moved 17. was 18. had killed 19. arrived 20. Built  
 21. attended 22. worked - were 23. had loved - had learned - had made 24. spent. 25. had felt 26. had dreamed 27. had lived 28. had worked  
 29. had driven 30. had looked 31. spent 32. recycled 33. had turned - had died - had flown 34. had always been 35. called 36. had turned  
 37. realized 38. had been 39. found 40. had recycled - had buried - had poisoned 41. bumped 42. Was

#### ازمنه متنوعه

1. Throughout history people .....( move ) from one country to another. Some of those emigrants.....(choose) to emigrate, while others .....( have to ) move because of wars or natural disasters.
2. During the period 1970-2000, the number of migrants in the world ..... ( rise ) to 175 million.
3. In recent years migration into Europe and Russia .....( increase) sharply, while in many other parts of the world numbers .....( fall ) .
4. In Australia, since 1945 over six million people ..... ( arrive) to settle.
5. From 1950 to 2000, over a million migrants ..... ( enter) Australia.
6. Sofia .....( arrive) in England seven years ago.
7. Something .....( happen) to our town during the night. It's dying. We must do something.
8. In 1975 my family .....(leave) England on an aeroplane and in 1986, we .....( return ) to England.
9. She has gone back to Poland several times , but she ..... ( never want) to stay there.
10. Two years ago she ..... (get married).
11. When Sofia first arrived in Britain, she .....( not imagine) she would settle here.
12. For the first year she suffered from culture shock and .....( want) to go home.
13. She quickly learned the language and .....( make) new friends.
14. In the seven years Sofia has been in England, she ..... ( become) so used to the way of life.

#### الحلول

1. have moved - chose - had to 2. rose 3. has increased - have fallen 4. have arrived 5 entered 6. arrived 7. has happened  
 8. left - returned 9. has never wanted 10. got married 11. didn't imagine 12. wanted 13. made 14. has become



## Numbers

### الأرقام الاصلية: Cardinal Numbers -

one 1 / two 2 / three 3 / four 4 / five 5 / six 6 / seven 7 / eight 8 / nine 9 / ten 10 / eleven 11 / twelve 12 / thirteen 13 / fourteen 14 / fifteen 15 / sixteen 16 / seventeen 17 / eighteen 18 / nineteen 19 / twenty 20 / twenty-one 21 / thirty 30 / forty 40 / fifty 50 / sixty 60 / seventy 70 / eighty 80 / ninety 90 / one hundred 100 / one thousand 1000 / one million 1000 000 / percent %

لكتابة الرقم نبدأ بالآلاف ثم المئات ونكتب and ثم العشرات ونضع - وبعدها الاحاد  
 مثال: 8475 eight thousand four hundred and seventy-five

يمكن لقراءة العام المألف من اربعة ارقام ان نقسم الرقم الى رقمين  
 مثال: 1971 19 - 71 nineteen seventy- one

### الأرقام الترتيبية: Ordinal Numbers -

the first 1<sup>st</sup> / the second 2<sup>nd</sup> / the third 3<sup>rd</sup> / the fourth 4<sup>th</sup> / the fifth 5<sup>th</sup> / the sixth 6<sup>th</sup> / ...  
 باقي الأرقام فقط نضع ( th ) امام الرقم لتتحول من رقم اصلي الى رقم ترتيبي  
 مثال: the twentieth 20<sup>th</sup> / the eighth 8<sup>th</sup> / .....

#### Write the numbers as words.

- 1) 19th : ..... 2) 75% ..... 3) 350,000.....  
 4) By the end of 1854 ..... 5) In August 1961 .....  
 6) 268 people..... 7) 25.....  
 8) The economic success of 1960 and 1970.....  
 9) 17, 10th Avenue ..... 10) My school was opened in 1975 .....  
 11) 1,750 students go to my school.....

#### Rewrite the phrases as numbers.

- 12) seventy-six percent ..... 13) twentieth ..... 14) seventy-five million ..... 15). a hundred.....

#### الحلول

1. nineteenth 2. seventy-five percent 3. three hundred and fifty thousand 4. eighteen fifty- four  
 5. nineteen sixty-one 6. two hundred and sixty-eight 7. nineteen sixty -nineteen seventy 8. twenty-five  
 9. seventeen, tenth 10. nineteen seventy-five 11. one thousand seven hundred and fifty  
 12. 76% 13. 20<sup>th</sup> 14. 75,000,000 15 . 100

#### Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:

<p>(1) <b>1. A:</b>.....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> The most important economic activity in Ireland was agriculture.</p> <p><b>2.A:</b>.....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> In 1845 the Potato Famine began.</p> <p><b>3.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> Disease destroyed 75% of the year's potatoes.</p> <p><b>4.A:</b>.....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> People moved to find a better life.</p>	<p>(2) <b>1.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> 350,000 people died of starvation.</p> <p><b>2.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> Some farmers emigrated because they could earn more money abroad.</p> <p><b>3.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> People were taken to England.</p> <p><b>4.A:</b>.....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> They stayed for the next two years</p>
---	--



(3)A: .....? B: I am from Syria. 2.A: .....? B: I go to school. 3.A: .....? B: I am studying chemistry. 4.A: .....? B: Yes, I like being a student.	(4)1.A: .....? B: Most animals migrate to northern region. 2.A: .....? B: They migrate during the summer. 3.A: .....? B: They migrate to find food or raise their young. 4.A: .....? B: The grey whale can travel as much as 20,000 kilometres.
--	--

(5) 1.A: .....? B: There are twenty-five students in my class. 2.A: .....? B: My school opened in 1975. 3.A: .....? B: The address of the school is 17, 10th Avenue. 4.A: How many students go to your school? B: .....	(6) 1.A: .....? B: I passed my English exam. 2.A: .....? B: There were two world wars in the twentieth century. 3.A: .....? B: There are a hundred centimes in one Algerian dinar. A: What is the population of your city? 4.B: .....
--	--

(7)1. A: .....? B: My family left England on an aeroplane. 2.A: .....? B: We arrived in Damascus, Syria. 3.A: .....? B: My mother was worried because she was scared of flying. A: Did she sleep through the trip? 4.B: .....	(8)1. A: .....? B: I drove nearly 1,000 kilometres without a break. 2.A: .....? B: I was offered two jobs. 3.A: .....? B: I spent two months in China last year. A: How were the locals in China? 4.B: .....
--	---

## الحلول

(1)1.A. What was the most important economic activity in Ireland? 4.A. Why did people move?	2.A. When did the Potato Famine begin?	3.A. What did disease destroy?
(2)1.A. How many people died of starvation? / Why did 350,000 people die? 3.A. Where were people taken to?	4.A. How long / How many years did they stay?	2.A. Why did some farmers emigrate?
(3)1.A. Where are you from?	2. A. Where do you go?	3.A. What are you studying?
4.A. Do you like being a student?	(4)1.A. Where do most animals migrate to?	2.A. When do they migrate?
3.A. Why do they migrate?	4.A. How far / How many kilometres can the grey whale travel?	
(5)1.A. How many students are there in your class?	2.A. When did your school open?	3. A. What is the address of the school?
4.B. About 500 students go to my school.	(6)1.A. What did you pass?	2.A. when were there two world wars? / How many world wars were there in the twentieth century?
3.A. How many centimes are there in one Algerian dinar?	4.B. It is 25,000,000.	
(7)1.A. Where did your family leave on an aeroplane? / How did your family leave England?	2.A. Where did you arrive?	
3.A. Why was your mother worried?	4.B. Yes, She did.	
(8)1.A. How far / How many kilometres did you drive without a break?	2.A. What / How many jobs were you offered?	
3.A. Where did you spend two months last year? / When did you spend two months in China?	4. B. They were friendly.	

## Complete the following sentences using clauses:

- يمكن ان تعمل ( which - who ) عمل فاعل وفي هذه الحالة نضع فعل بعدها

- The people emigrated because ..... they were poor.
- When the rescue team arrived, ..... they helped the people.
- Later studies showed that ..... many people died.
- When they sailed past the island ..... the volcano erupted.
- My mother was worried because ..... My sister was ill.
- I went to the doctor's because ..... I was ill.



- 7- He fell asleep at the wheel of his car because..... he was very tired.  
 8- Salah didn't recognise his friend, Hani because.....  
 he hadn't seen him for years.  
 9- Firass found it difficult to get up this morning because..... he studied all night.  
 10- James was very nervous when ..... he arrived at the airport.  
 11- James was very nervous because ..... he had never flown before.  
 12- My family and I lived in a lovely apartment, which ..... was in the city centre.  
 13- I wasn't surprised that ..... he came late.  
 14- Samer couldn't contact his brother, Khaled because.....  
 he had switched his mobile off.

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

In the early 19th century, (1)..... most important economic activity in Ireland (2)..... agriculture. But the farmers were poor and (3)..... used old-fashioned methods. (4)..... they heard that they could earn four times as much abroad, some farmers emigrated. But (5)..... 1820 and 1840, the economic situation in Ireland deteriorated and (6)..... 1845 the Potato Famine began. Disease destroyed 75% of the year's potatoes – the main food (7)..... most of the population. During the next two years, 350,000 people died of starvation (8)..... there was a huge increase in emigration. By the end of 1854, (9)..... quarter of the population of Ireland (10)..... left for other parts of the world.

الحلول

1.the 2.was 3. they 4. Because 5.between 6.in 7.for 8.and 9. a 10. had

Tristan da Cunha (1)..... a small island in the South Atlantic Ocean. In August 1961, earth tremors started (2)..... gradually became more frequent. At (3)..... beginning of October, the government decided that the island (4)..... no longer safe and the whole population of 268 people was evacuated (5)..... a nearby island. A ship picked (6)..... up and took them to South Africa. As they passed Tristan da Cunha, (7)..... saw the volcano erupt. Later the people (8)..... taken to England, (9)..... they stayed for the next two years. In 1963, the volcanic activity (10)..... the island stopped and most of the people voted to go back. However, not everyone returned: 14 people (11)..... adapted to life in England and decided to stay (12)....., and five elderly people had died. There (13)..... other changes too: ten couples from the island had married, (14)..... eight babies had been born.

الحلول

1.is 2.and 3.the 4.was 5. to 6. them 7.they 8. were 9.where 10.on 11. had 12. there 13. were 14.and

The economic success of the 1960s (1)..... 1970s saw the Arabian Gulf countries transformed (2)..... modern and wealthy states, funded (3)..... oil and other precious natural resources such (4)..... natural gas. (5)..... needs of the oil and construction industries led (6)..... a huge demand (7)..... skilled workers. Many thousands (8)..... people moved to the region to help build high-tech cities all over the Gulf. These workers, from many regions of the world, (9)..... able to find a better life and help (10)..... the development of the region

الحلول

1.and 2. into 3. by 4. as 5.The 6. to 7.for 8. of 9.were 10. with

On February 29th 1960, (1)..... earthquake hit the Moroccan city of Agadir. Although (2)..... lasted only fifteen seconds, it (3)..... one of the most destructive earthquakes of the 20th century. When (4)..... rescue team arrived, many areas of the city had (5)..... destroyed completely (6)..... thousands of families had become refugees. After the earthquake, the city (7)..... evacuated and inhabitants moved 3km south (8)..... the city was rebuilt. Later studies showed that the disaster (9)..... killed over one third of the population (10)..... Agadir, over 10,000 people, and had injured many more

الحلول

1.an 2. it 3. was 4.the 5. been 6. and 7.was 8. where 9.had 10. of



When we talk about animal migration(1)..... mean the movement of an animal from the place (2)..... it has been living to(3)..... different place and the return journey (4)..... that animal's original home. Most animal migrations (5)..... recurrent events which happen (6)..... certain times of the year. Animals usually migrate to find food or(7)..... raise their young. Incredibly, most migrating animals follow (8)..... same route every year and (9)..... generation to generation. Land animals may cross mountains or forge through rivers, while birds(10)..... insects travel extensive distances, sometimes across continents and oceans. Fish and other sea creatures may migrate halfway round (11)..... world. For example, the grey whale can travel as much as 20,000 kilometres. Many animals migrate to northern regions during the northern summer (12)..... the long summer days mean that there(13)..... always plenty of food. In the autumn, (14)..... the weather gets colder, many animals migrate south to find food and warmer weather (the southern summer). Some animals migrate every year, doing the two journeys in one year, (15)..... others migrate only if they need to find food or(16)..... more temperate weather.

## الحلول

1.we 2.where 3. a 4. to 5.are 6. at 7.to 8. the 9.from 10.and 11.the 12. because 13 is 14.when 15.but 16.for

In 1975 my family left England on (1)..... aeroplane. Five hours later we arrived (2)..... Damascus, Syria. My mother was worried about the plane journey because(3)..... is scared of flying. But there (4)..... no turbulence and she slept through(5)..... trip. In Syria my family lived in a lovely apartment, (6)..... was provided by my father's new job. My father helped (7)..... run an engineering firm that built bridges. We went to an international school (8)..... attended school with children (9)..... all over the world. At first, (10)..... was difficult getting used to being away from home, (11)..... we all worked hard to fit in and the locals (12)..... very friendly. In 1986, my family and I returned to England, but I (13)..... loved my time in Syria. I had learned so much (14)..... an interesting culture and had made so many good friends.

## الحلول

1.an 2.in 3. she 4. was 5.the 6. which 7. to 8.and 9. from 10. it 11.but 12.were 13. had 14.about

1. The people of Tristan da Cunha were taken from their island.....England.
2. A huge earthquake caused the destruction of Agadir, Morocco,.....1960.
3. Two disastrous potato crops led.....mass starvation in Ireland.
4. The majority of the world's migrants move.....find a better life.
5. The people of Tristan da Cunha left.....of volcanic activity.
6. The economic success of the 1960s and 1970s was funded.....oil.
7. These workers were able to find a better life and help.....the development of the region.
8. ....1854 a quarter of the population of Ireland emigrated abroad.
9. ....1854 a quarter of the population of Ireland had emigrated abroad.
10. Irish people emigrated.....so many were dying of starvation.
11. Irish people emigrated because so many had died.....starvation.
12. On February 29th 1960, .....earthquake hit the Moroccan city of Agadir.
13. James was very nervous when he arrived.....the airport.
14. I agree/disagree.....you about travelling abroad.

## الحلول

1.to 2.in 3.to 4.to 5.because 6.by 7.with 8.In 9.By 10.because 11.of 12.an 13.at 14.with

**Translate these sentences into English:**

1. معظم هجرات الحيوانات هي أحداث متكررة التي تحدث في أوقات محددة من العام
2. الحيوانات عادة لتجد الطعام او لتربي صغارها تهاجر
3. تتبع معظم الحيوانات المهاجرة نفس الطريق كل عام ومن جيل إلى جيل
4. بعض النشاطات البشرية تدمر العالم الطبيعي
5. تنخفض البطالة بما أن أكثر الناس يجدون عمل دائم



6. معدل الإيرادات من المتوقع ان يتضاعف في السنوات العشرة القادمة
7. كان عاما كارثيا لصناعة الشاي
8. لقد سببت العواصف الدمار لمعظم المحاصيل

- 1- Most animal migrations are recurrent events which happen at certain times of the year.
- 2- Animals usually migrate to find food or to raise their young.
- 3- Most migrating animals follow the same route every year and from generation to generation.
- 4- Some human activities are destroying the natural world.
- 5- Unemployment is falling as more people find permanent work.
- 6- Average earnings are expected to double in the next ten years.
- 7- It has been a disastrous year for the tea industry.
- 8- Storms caused the destruction of most of the crops.

- .....
- \*You are going to write **an email** to a friend about a **significant event** that changed your life. (Student Book. P. 21)  
Choose the event you are going to talk about. Examples: Your first day at school , Changing schools, The first holiday you remember, An interesting journey,
  - \*Choose something that actually happened to you or use your imagination to make up a **story**. Activity BookP: 13
  - \*Write an informal letter describing a **visit**. (Activity book.P.31)
  - \*Write your own letter to a friend, describing an **interesting place** you have **visited**. (Activity book.P.32)
  - \*You are going to write an account of a **visit** you made. (Student Book P. 45)

### A Significant Event / An interesting Place / An interesting Story

Dear Hani,

I am enjoying my holiday in London. I am with my family. We visit wonderful places every day. we go to nice restaurants and have delicious food . We also go shopping and spend great time. Three days ago, I met a pretty girl. Her name was Hiba. I lved her very much and we would marry next year. Anyway, tomorrow, we will visit the British Museum and enjoy wonderful views from the London Eye. We will come back after a week. It`s really an interesting journey that I will never forget.

- \*سوف تكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا إلى صديق حول حدثًا هامًا الذي غير حياتك. (كتاب الطالب ص 21)  
إختر الحدث الذي ستكتب عنه. أمثلة: يومك الأول في المدرسة ، تغير المدارس ، أول عطلة تتذكرها ، رحلة ممتعة
- \*إختر شيئاً ما حدث معك فعلاً أو استخدم خيالك لتختر قصة. (كتاب النشاط ص 13)
- \*أكتب رسالة غير رسمية تصف زيارة. (كتاب النشاط ص 31)
- \*أكتب رسالة خاصة بك لصديق واصفًا مكانًا ممتعًا قد زرتة. (كتاب النشاط ص 32)
- \*ستكتب وصفًا لزيارة قمت بها. (كتاب الطالب ص 45)

### حدثاً هاماً / مكان ممتع / قصة ممتعة

عزيزي هاني:

إننا أستمتع بعطلتي في لندن، إنني مع عائلتي، نحن نزور أماكن رائعة كل يوم، نذهب إلى مطاعم جميلة ونتناول طعاما لذيذا، نحن أيضا نذهب للتسوق ونمضي وقتا رانعا، منذ ثلاثة أيام قابلت فتاة جميلة إسمها هيبه، أنا أحببتها كثيرا ونحن سوف نتزوج العام القادم، على أي حال، غدا سوف نزور المتحف البريطاني وسنستمتع بالمناظر الرائعة من عين لندن، سوف نعود بعد إسبوع ، إنها حقا رحلة ممتعة التي انا سوف لن أنسى.



## Unit 3

## Students` Book ( Unit 3 )

Accurate	دقيق	Issue	قضية
Definition	تعريف	Polluted	ملوث
Once	مرة	Passport	جواز سفر
Throw away	يرمي		
River	نهر	Paperwork	اعمال ورقية
Glass	زجاج	Administration	إدارة
Metal	معدن	Unexpectedly	بشكل غير متوقع
Cardboard	كرتون	Competition	منافسة - تنافس
Simply	ببساطة	Run out of	ينفذ هن
Under	تحت	Minority	أقلية
Ground	ارض	Keep up with	يوكب - يتابع
Bury	يدفن	Changes	تغيرات
Rubbish	نفاية	Cut down on	يقلل
Unwanted	غير مرغوب به	Packaging	التغليف - التعليب
Unusable	غير قابل للاستعمال	Come up against	يواجه
Points	نقاط - اهداف	Plan	خطة - يخطط
Tools	أدوات	Look forward to	يتطلع - يتشوق
Reprocess	يعيد معالجة	Scientists	علماء
Provide	يزود	Come up with	يخترع
Electricity	كهرباء	Reprocessing	إعادة معالجة
Fridges	ثلاجات	Put up with	يتحمل
Batteries	بطاريات	Accept/stand/ tolerate	يقبل - يتحمل - يطيق
Equipment	معدات	Unpleasant	غير سار
Offence	إساءة - اذى	Invent/ discover/ find	يخترع
Household	منزلي	The latest	الاحدث
Forefront	طلبة - مقدمة	Meet/face	يقابل - يواجه
Regional	إقليمية	Reduce	يقلل
Hosting	مستضافة - استضافة	Wait	ينتظر
Conferences	مؤتمرات	Pleasure	سرور
Dedicate	بكراسة	Wishes	رغبات
Protection	حماية	Regret	ندم
Plants	نباتات	Criticism	نقد
Dispose of	يطرح - يتخلص من	Annoyance	انزعاج
Safely	بأمان	The mayor	العمدة / رئيس البلدية
Substances	مواد	Discuss	يناقش
Easily	بسهولة	Expect	يتوقع
In charge of	مسؤول عن	Realize	يدرك
Suppose	يفترض	Problem	مشكلة
Annoying	مزعج - إزعاج	Several	عديدة
Hopefully	بتفاؤل - مقعم بالأمل	Advisors	مستشارون
Be able to	يكون قادرا أن	The cause	السبب
Eventually	أخيرا	Suddenly	فجأة
Tired	متعب	Site	موقع
city center	مركز المدينة	edge	حافة



throughout	عبر - على مر	Remember	يتذكر
Moved	انتقل	Members	أفراد
Another	آخر	Poison	اسم / يسمم
Country	بلد	fumes	دخان
Migrants	مهاجرون	Unburied	غير مدفونة
Choose-chose	يختار - اختار	In fact	في الحقيقة
Emigrate	يهاجر	The council	المجلس
Wars	حروب	Furious	غاضبون
Natural	طبيعية	Resign	يستقيل
Disasters	كوارث	In response	ردا على ذلك
Economic	اقتصادية	Smoke	يرخان / دخان
Reasons	أسباب	Adverts	إعلانات
Rise- rose-risen	يرتفع - ارتفع	Collect	يجمع
Sharply	بحدة	Enough	كافي
Fall-fell-fallen	يسقط - سقط	Maths	رياضيات
Settle	يستقر	Quickly	بسرعة
Enter	يدخل	Storm	عاصفة
Celebration	احتفال	Day/daily	يوم - يومي
Cupboard	خزانة ملابس	Major // majority	كثير - الاكثريّة
Mainly	بشئ أساسي	Chaos // chaotic	فوضى - فوضوي
Prepare	يحضر	Guilt // guilty	ذنب - مذنب
Tidy	يرتب	Scene	مشهد
Call	يتصل - ينادي	Accident	حادث
Die	يموت	Fault	خطأ
Fly away	يطير بعيدا	Region	منطقة
Happen	يحدث	Disaster // disastrous	كارثة - كارثية
Turn	يتحول - دور	Effect	تأثير
Wake up	يستيقظ	Affect	يؤثر
Parks	منتزهات	Crops	محاصيل
Forests	غابات	Drinking water	مياة شرب
Lakes	بحيرات	Infect // infection	يعدي - عدوى
Clean	نظيف	Spread	ينتشر
During	خلال	Population	عدد السكان
Grey	رمادي	Hard	بجد
The sky	السماء	Amount	كمية
Blue	ازرق	Make sure	يتأكد
Plants	نباتات	National	وطني
Trees	أشجار	International	دولي
Birds	طيور	Flat	شقة
Noise	ضجة	Urgently	بالحاح
Traffic	مرور	Office	مكتب
Any longer	اكثر من ذلك	Workers	عمال
Lack	نقص	Improve	يحسن
Space	مساحة - فراغ	Recently	مؤخرا
Housing	سكن - إسكان	Situation	حالة
Facilities	تسهيلات	Especially	خصوصا
Enjoy	يستمتع	Bad	سيء
Out-of-town	خارج البلدة	Suggest	يقترح



Areas	مناطق	Residents	سكان
Range	نطاق / مدى	Get together	يتجمعون
Convenient	ملائم - مناسب	Agree	يوافق
Excellent	ممتاز	Set	مجموعة
Matter	مسألة - أمر	Recommendations	مقترحات - توصيات
Take ( an hour )	يستغرق ( ساعة )	Private	خاص
Terrible	فظيع	Parked	(سيارة) واقفة
Overcrowded	مكتظ - شديد الازدحام	Outside	خارج
Uncomfortable	غير مريح	Walk	يسير
Better	أفضل	Buying	شراء
Transport	نقل	Afford	يدفع
The smallest	الأصغر	Low-paid	أجر منخفض
Greatly	بشكل كبير	To be in black and white	مطبوع - مكتوب بوضوح
Awareness	وعي	To see red	يغضب
Fragile	هش - ضعيف	To give the green light	يسمح
Care	عناية	To put someone on the black list	يفضح / يعاقب
Precious	ثمين	Accused	اتهم
Seriously	بشكل جدي	Companies	شركات
Improving	تحسين	Incinerator	محرق
Out of the blue	بشكل مفاجئ	Clearly	بشكل واضح
Red tape	روتين حكومي	Printed	مطبوع
<b>Activity Book ( Unit 3 )</b>			
Wood	خشب	Cut down	يقطع
Pulp	عجينة الورق	Plants	نباتات
Commonly	بشكل شائع	Papermakers	صانعو الورق
Environmentalists	علماء البيئة	Sustainable	متجدد
Persuade	يقتنع	Forests	غابات
Increasing	متزايد	Facts	حقائق
Awareness	وعي	Produce	ينتج
Containers	حاويات	Proportion	نسبة - حصة
Parts	أجزاء	household	منزلي
Agencies	وكالات	Cardboard	كرتون
Programmes	برامج	Tonne	طن
Greater	اعظم - اكبر	Save	يوفر - ينقذ
Education	تعليم - تربية	Reduce	يقلل
Commercially	تجاريا	Harmful	مؤذي
Grown	نما	Rot	يتعفن - يفسد
Long-term	طويلة الأمد	Methane	غاز الميثان
Crops	محاصيل		
Despite	بالرغم من	Continue	يستمر - يتابع
Dependent on	معتمد على	Crush	يصرطد
Store	يخزن	Decay	يتفسخ - يفسد
Interests	اهتمامات	Fabric	نسيج
Stare out of	يحدق إلى الخارج	Gas	غاز



Peacefully	بشكل آمن	Replace	يستبدل
Luckily	لحسن الحظ	Burying	دفن
Okay	حسناً - على مايرام	Furniture	أثاث منزلي
Knock on	يطرق على	Black	أسود
Reply	رد - جواب	Blue	أزرق
Dressed	مرتد ثيابه	Brown	بني
Cloth	قماش	Green	أخضر
Cotton	قطن	Red	أحمر
Fibres	ألياف	White	أبيض
Grass	عشب	Yellow	أصفر
Sugar cane	قصب السكر	Letter	رسالة - حرف
Rumour	إشاعة	Unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
Calm down	يهدئ	Plans	خطط
Lazy	كسول	Close / near	قريب
Energy	طاقة	Dentists	أطباء اسنان
Amount	كمية	Intend to	ينوي ان
Fat	دهون - سمين	Wages	أجور - رواتب
Get worst	يصبح أسوأ	Simple	بسيط
Shy	خجول	Share	يشارك
In public	للعمامة - امام الجمهور	Accommodation	سكن - إقامة
Adverts	إعلانات	Eastern	شرقي
Slow	بطيء	Primary	ابتدائي - اولي
Reader	قارئ	Got married	تزوج
Busy	مشغول	The couple	الزوج
Lost	فقد - خسر	Imagine	يتخيل
Keys	مفاتيح	Suffered from	عانى من
Theatre	مسرح	Shock	صدمة
Based on	معتمد على	Pale	شاحب
Statistics	إحصائيات	Perhaps	ربما
Bar chart	مخطط بياني	Taking up	البدء بـ
Non-British	غير بريطانيون	Bump into	يصطدم بـ - يخبط بـ
Citizens	مواطنين	Walk	يمشي
Returned	عاد	Wonder	يتعجب
Total	كلي - إجمالي	Sing-sang	يغني - غنى
population	عدد سكان	Authorities	السلطات
Arrivals	القادمين	Picking	قطف
traditionally	تقليدياً	Vegetables	خضار
Growing	متزايدة - نامية	Repetitive	متكرر

### The dying town: a modern myth

Greenchester was a good place to live. It had parks, forests and lakes where people spent their free time. It was a very clean place because everybody recycled all their rubbish. But one morning the people of Greenchester woke up to find that during the night their town had turned grey. The sky, which had always been blue, was grey that morning. Most of the plants and trees had died and the birds had flown away. The people were angry, so they called the Mayor. —Something has happened to our town during the night. It's dying. We must do something. The people expected the Mayor to find the answer to their problem but he didn't know why Greenchester had turned grey. He discussed the problem for several days with his advisors, then they suddenly realised that the cause of the problem might be the landfill site on the edge of the town. Although it had been there for as long as anyone could remember, very few members of the public ever went there. When the Mayor visited the landfill



site, he found that it was full. The fumes from the unburied rubbish had poisoned Greenchester. The people thought they had recycled their rubbish, but in fact, the council had buried it in the landfill site. The people were furious and the Mayor had to resign.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Why was Greenchester a good place to live?
2. What strange thing happened to Greenchester during the night?
3. Why did the people call the Mayor?
4. Where was the landfill site?
5. What caused pollution to Greenchester?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. a hole in the ground where waste is buried
7. put under the ground
8. very angry

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

9. All the trees had been cut down and the birds had died.
10. The landfill site was visited by all members of the public.
11. Instead of burying the rubbish, the council recycled it.
12. The people were very happy and thanked the Mayor.

**الاجوبه**

1. Because it had parks, forests and lakes where people spent their free time. It was a very clean place.
2. It had turned grey. Most of the plants and trees had died and the birds had flown away.
3. They expected him to find the answer to their problem.
4. on the edge of the town.
5. the fumes from the unburied rubbish.
6. landfill
7. buried
8. furious
9. ~~All~~ Most of - ~~been cut down~~ died - ~~died~~ flown away.
10. ~~all~~ very few
11. ~~burying~~ recycling - ~~recycle~~ buried
12. ~~very happy~~-furious - ~~thanked the Mayor~~ the Mayor had to resign.

**Paper : new from old**

The first paper was made from cloth nearly two thousand years ago in China. Although paper can be made from all kinds of materials, such as cotton fibres, grass or sugar cane, these days wood pulp is the material most commonly used to make 'new paper' – that is, paper which contains no old or recycled paper. The modern world uses so much paper that environmentalists have persuaded us that we should recycle old paper. There is an increasing awareness in Syria of the need to recycle both paper and other materials. Paper-recycling containers can now be found in some parts of the country and some government agencies have begun paper recycling programmes. Also, there is greater education in schools about the need to take care of our environment.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. When and where was paper first produced?
2. What can paper be made from?
3. What is 'new paper'?
4. Where can people in Syria put paper to be recycled?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

- 5 material or fabric used to make clothes
6. has or holds within itself
7. the air, water and land where people, animals and plants live

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. Paper is rarely made from wood pulp.
9. Wood pulp is used to make recycled paper.

**الاجوبه**

1. Nearly two thousand years ago in China.
2. It can be made from all kinds of materials, such as cotton fibres, grass, sugar cane, cloth or wood pulp.
3. Paper which contains no old or recycled paper.
4. in paper-recycling containers
5. cloth
6. contains
- 7 environment
8. ~~rarely~~ commonly
9. ~~recycle~~ new

Although we use wood pulp from trees to make new paper, it is not true that recycling paper saves trees. Trees are a commercially grown long-term crop, so that when they are cut down, new ones are planted. Also, papermakers use the parts of trees that cannot be used in other industries such as building and furniture making.



Nearly all new paper is made from wood grown in sustainable forests. A large proportion of household waste is paper or cardboard. About half of this is newspapers and magazines. For every tonne of paper used for recycling, we save 30,000 litres of water, 3,000—4,000 kwh of electricity and reduce air pollution. Recycling paper is less harmful to the environment than burying **it** in landfill sites. This is because paper that is buried in the ground rots and produces methane, which is a powerful greenhouse gas. Despite our increasing dependence on information stored on computers, there will always be a demand for paper. In the interests of our environment, we have to make sure that we continue to recycle as much of it as possible.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Where does wood pulp come from?
2. When are new trees planted?
3. Where is the wood used to make paper usually planted?
4. What are the advantages of recycling paper?
5. Why is it better to recycle paper than to bury it?
6. How does burying waste paper have a negative effect on the environment?
7. Why do we have to recycle as much paper as we can?
8. What does **it** refer to ?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

9. causing damage or injury
10. decays
11. something grown for food

**Answer the following questions:**

12. Trees are planted for a short time
13. Paper mills use all parts of trees to make paper
14. About 70 % of the household paper and cardboard waste comes from cards.
15. Recycling paper causes a lot of pollution and uses up more water.
16. Burying paper in landfill sites does less damage to the environment than recycling it.

الاجوبه

1. trees 2. when trees are cut down. 3. in sustainable forests. 4. saving water, electricity and reducing air pollution. 5. Because recycling is less harmful to the environment. 6. The paper buried rots and produces methane, a powerful greenhouse gas. 7. Because recycling paper is in the interests of our environment. 8. paper 9. harmful 10. rots 11. crop 12. short long 13. all parts of trees parts of trees than cannot be used in other industries. 14. ~~70%~~ 50% - cards newspapers and magazines. 15. ~~causes a lot of~~ reduces - ~~uses up more~~ saves 16. less more

**Who are the economic migrants?**

In 2003, 410,000 non-British citizens came to live in the UK and 100,000 British people returned to their home country from Spain, Australia and other countries **where** they had gone to live or work. In the same period, 170,000 non-British citizens left the UK to live in other countries. 190,000 British people also left. This means a total increase of 150,000 in the British population, but where did all these immigrants come from and go to? Many new arrivals are economic migrants – people who come because they can earn more money in Britain than in their own country. Traditionally, many of these migrants used to come from countries in Africa or Asia, but now growing numbers are from less developed countries in Eastern Europe such as Poland, Hungary or Russia. Many new migrants take low-paid jobs which British people do not want to do, like cleaning, picking fruit and vegetables, looking after old people or doing repetitive factory work. A minority come to work in well-paid jobs, for example as dentists or doctors. Many of these migrants do not intend to stay in Britain, and send some of their earnings home to their families. But even though they earn higher wages than they would in their own countries, most economic migrants can only afford to live a simple life. Some share accommodation with another migrant family. British citizens who leave the UK to live abroad go mainly to countries with warmer climates and cheaper houses, countries like Spain, Greece, France or Turkey.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. How many people left Britain in 2003?
2. Who are economic migrants?
3. Why do British people usually go to other countries?
4. What does **where** refer to ?



**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. went back
6. a length of time
7. earning only a small amount of money

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. In 2003, fewer people in total came to live in Britain than left it to live abroad.
9. Fewer non-British people arrived in Britain than left it in 2003.
10. More British people arrived in Britain than left Britain.
11. Economic migrants earn more money in their home countries than in Britain.
12. Most migrants who come to Britain do high-paid jobs.

**الاجوبه**

1. 360, 000 . 2. People who go to another country to earn more money. 3. to live or work. 4. Spain, Australia and other countries
5. returned 6. period 7. low-paid 8. ~~fewer~~ more 9. ~~fewer~~ More 10. ~~More~~ Fewer 11. ~~more~~ less 12. ~~high~~ low

• **Wish التمني**: تُستخدم للتعبير عن ندم و اسف على حالات غير موجودة وللتعبير عن نقد و انزعاج حول اعمال يقوم بها آخرون يتمنى المتكلم تغيير هذه الاعمال وتحقيق ما يريد

- الاستخدامات: 1- ( **جملة ماضي بسيط + wish** ) للتعبير عن اسف وندم ( **regret** ) و استحالة ( **impossibility** )  
 2- ( **wish + would + V1 + فاعل** ) للتعبير عن انزعاج ( **annoyance** ) او نقد ( **criticism** )  
 3- ( **wish + could + V1 + فاعل** ) للتعبير عن عجز و عدم قدرة ( **inability** )

- ملاحظات هامة: - دائما يأتي بعد ( **wish** ) جملة ماضي تبدأ بالفاعل

- جميع الضمائر تأخذ فعل الكون ( **were** ) بعد ( **wish** )

- عند كتابة جملة ( **wish** ) دائما نعطي عكس الجملة المعطاة اي: إثبات → نفي أو نفي → إثبات  
 ونرجع بالزمن درجة للوراء



- الماضي من: ( **can → could + V1** ) - ( **will → would + V1** )

- نحول: ( **very / too / really → so** ) في حال النفي بجملة التمني

( **very good / very well → better** ) في حال الاثبات بجملة التمني

- يجوز الحل بأن نعطي عكس الجملة ليس بالقواعد بل بالمعنى: **good ←→ bad**

- في جملة ( **wish** ) تتحول كلا مما يلي إلى:

( **am / is / are** ) → **wish** → ( **weren` t** )

( **am not / isn` t / aren` t** ) → **wish** → ( **were** )

( **can** ) → **wish** → ( **couldn` t** )

( **can` t** ) → **wish** → ( **could** )

( **will** ) → **wish** → ( **wouldn` t** )

( **won` t** ) → **wish** → ( **would** )

( **V1 / Vs حاضر بسيط إثبات** ) → **wish** → ( **didn` t + V1 ماضي بسيط نفي** )

( **don` t / doesn` t + V1 حاضر بسيط نفي** ) → **wish** → ( **V1+ed / V2 ماضي بسيط إثبات** )

I do not have my glasses with me. **I wish I had my glasses with me.** ( **regret** اسف وندم ) ماضي بسيط

**I wish I would have my glasses with me.** ( **annoyance** انزعاج )



I am too old to play tennis. **I wish I weren't so old to play tennis.** (ماضي بسيط regret) (اسف وندم)

I cannot go to your party. **I wish I could go to your party.** (عجز وعدم قدرة inability)

My friend won't give me my CD back. **I wish my friend would give me my CD back.** (انزعاج annoyance)

My brother spends many hours talking on the phone.

**I wish my brother didn't spend many hours talking on the phone.** (ماضي بسيط regret) (اسف وندم)

**I wish my brother wouldn't spend many hours talking on the phone.** (انزعاج annoyance)

**ملاحظة:** يمكن الحل دائما بجمله ماضي بسيط مع عكس الجمله اذا لم يكن يوجد ( **will - won't - can - can't - be** )

### Choose the correct words in brackets:

- I wish people ( **could - would** ) take the problem more seriously. Maybe one day they will.
- I wish he ( **would - could** ) stop smoking.
- I wish we ( **would - could** ) recycle plastic more easily.
- I wish they ( **couldn't - wouldn't** ) do that. It's so annoying!
- People drive too fast in the city centre. I wish they ( **would - wouldn't** ) drive more slowly.
- I wish our city ( **would - could** ) collect rubbish more often.
- The weather's too hot at the moment. I wish it ( **were - weren't** ) so hot. I wish it ( **were - weren't** ) cooler.
- I wish you ( **would - could** ) stop wasting paper.
- You eat too quickly. I wish you ( **would - wouldn't** ) eat so quickly.
- He's lost his keys. He wishes he ( **could - would** ) find his keys.
- Her music is too loud for me. I wish she ( **could - would** ) turn her music down.
- We don't spend much time together. I wish we ( **could - couldn't** ) spend much more time together.
- The streets are dirty. I wish they ( **were - weren't** ) cleaner.
- I'm not very good at maths. I wish I ( **were - weren't** ) better at maths.
- I wish I ( **could - would** ) swim.
- I wish they ( **would - were** ) stop making so much noise.
- I wish I ( **were - could** ) ten centimetres taller.
- I wish I ( **were - would** ) in charge of our company.

### الحلول

1. would 2. would 3. could 4. wouldn't 5. would 6. would 7. weren't - were 8. would 9. wouldn't 10. Could 11. would 12. could  
13. were 14. were 15. could 16. would 17. were 18. were

### B. Correct the verbs in brackets:

- I wish Hani .....(speak) more slowly.
- I wish I ..... ( be) twenty-five years younger.
- I wish people in my village .....( will) smoke less.
- I wish I ..... (can - sing) well.
- I wish we.....( not have to ) start work so early.
- I wish every country ..... ( have) a system like this.
- I wish you .....( not always lose) things.

### الحلول

1. spoke 2. were 3. would 4. could sing 5. didn't have to 6. had 7. didn't always lose

### C. Rewrite the following sentence ( Use wish )

- I'm really tired, but I can't sleep at night. I wish .....
- The weather's too hot at the moment. I wish .....
- People drive too fast in the city centre. I wish .....
- The streets are very dirty. I wish .....
- Many people in my village smoke too much. I wish .....



6. There are too many adverts on television. I wish .....
7. Our city doesn't collect rubbish often enough. I wish .....
8. I'm not very good at maths. I wish .....
9. I can't read very quickly. I wish .....
10. You waste too much paper. I wish .....
11. My brother spends many hours talking on the phone. I wish .....
12. I'm very shy about talking in public. I wish .....
13. Newspapers and magazines contain too many adverts. I wish .....
14. You eat too quickly. I wish .....
15. I'm a very slow reader. I wish .....
16. We don't spend much time together. I wish .....
17. The city centre is really busy this morning. I wish .....
18. He's lost his keys. I wish .....
19. I'm not old enough to go to university. I wish .....
20. Hani speaks really quickly. I wish .....
21. I can't speak French. I wish .....
22. You're always losing things. I wish .....
23. We have to start work very early. I wish .....
24. Going to the theatre is expensive. I wish .....
25. I can't sing very well. I wish .....
26. I'm really tired this morning. I wish .....
27. My friend won't give me my CD back. I wish .....
28. It's too hot to go out today. I wish .....
29. I can't remember where I left the newspaper. I wish .....
30. Her music is too loud for me. I wish .....

## الحلول

1. I could sleep at night. 2. the weather weren't so hot at the moment. 3. people didn't drive so fast in the city centre. 4. the streets weren't so dirty.
5. they didn't smoke so much. 6. there weren't so many adverts on television.
7. our city collected rubbish often. 8. I were very good at maths. 9. I could read very quickly. 10. you didn't waste so much paper.
11. my brother didn't spend many hours talking on the phone. 12. I weren't so shy about talking in public.
13. they didn't contain so many adverts. 14. you didn't eat so quickly. 15. I weren't such a slow reader. 16. we spent much time together.
17. the city centre weren't so busy this morning. 18. he hadn't lost his keys. 19. I were old enough to go to university. 20. Hani didn't speak so quickly.
21. I could speak French. 22. you weren't always losing things. 23. we didn't have to start work so early.
24. going to the theatre weren't expensive. 25. I could sing very well. 26. I weren't so tired this morning. 27. my friend would give me my CD back.
28. it weren't so hot. 29. I could remember where I left the newspaper.
30. her music weren't so loud for me.

## ازمنه متنوعه

1. ....( do ) my maths homework – can I borrow your ruler, please?
2. Three men ..... ( appear ) in court **tomorrow**.
3. When he accused me of being wasteful, I ..... ( get ) angry.
4. I heard this morning, unexpectedly, that I .....( win ) a writing competition.
5. Things .....( move ) so fast – it's impossible to keep up with the changes.
6. People living near the bus station ..... ( put up ) with a lot of noise.
7. Our city ..... ( not collect ) rubbish **often** enough.
8. I .....( look ) for a new flat. I can't put up with the noise of the traffic any longer.
9. The court heard that the crime ..... ( take place ) on a tennis court.
10. There.....(be) two world wars **in the twentieth century**.
11. My father ..... ( retire ) **last year**.

## الحلول

1. am doing 2. will appear 3. got 4. had won 5. are moving 6. put up 7. doesn't collect 8. am looking 9. had taken place 10. were 11. retired



- **مصطلحات اللون: Colour Idioms** -

- **فجأة** out of the blue → **unexpectedly** بشكل غير متوقع
- **روتين حكومي** red tape → **paperwork and administration** عمل ورقي وإدارة
- **مكتوب باليد / واضح** in black and white → **printed here** مطبوع هنا
- **يغضب** see red → **get very angry** يغضب
- **يسمح** give the green light → **say yes** يقول نعم
- **يفضح** put someone on the black list → **tell the public they have done something wrong**

يخبر العامة بانهم قد فعلوا شيء ما خطأ

**Choose the correct verb between brackets :**

1. When he accused me of being wasteful, I (saw red , gave the green light).
2. We have to stop companies from polluting the environment. We should (see red , put them on the black list).
3. They've (seen red , given the green light) to the building of a new incinerator.
4. The rules clearly say that we must not leave rubbish outside our homes. Look, it's (in black and white , out of the blue).
5. It's almost impossible to get a passport quickly. There is so much (see red , red tape).
6. I heard this morning, (out of the blue , put on the black list), that I'd won a writing competition.
7. A: Is that a letter you're reading?  
B: Yes, it's from an old friend. It came this morning – Completely out of the (red , blue).
8. A: Have you heard? The government of has given the (red , green) light to the building of a new airport .  
B: I think it's just a rumour.  
A: No, it's in the newspaper. Look - it's here in (black , blue) and (yellow , white).
9. A: Calm down. B: Sorry- someone accused me of being lazy and I just saw (white , red).
10. The authorities have just given the (blue , green) light to the building of new airport.
11. The news has come out of the (black , blue), and shocked many villagers.
12. The thought of a new airport near their homes has made many of them see (black , red).
13. Unfortunately, the plans have already been prepared- I've seen them in (black , white) and (black, white).

**الحلول**

- 1.saw red 2. put them on the black list. 3. given the green light 4. in black and white  
5.red tape 6. out of the blue 7. blue 8. green 9. red 10. green 11. blue 12. red 13. black / white

- **Three – Part Phrasal verbs** - **أفعال تركيبية من ثلاث أجزاء:**

- ينفذ** run out of
- يؤيد / يدعم** go along with
- يبقى على اطلاع** keep up with → **know the latest information about** يعرف آخر المعلومات حول
- ينقص / يخفض** cut down on → **reduce** يقلل
- يخترع** come up with → **invent / discover / find** يجد / يكتشف / يخترع
- يواجه** come up against → **meet / face** يقابل / يواجه
- يتطلع** look forward to + ( V ) ing / اسم → **wait with pleasure for something to happen**  
ينتظر بسرور لأجل شيء ما ليحدث
- يتحمل** put up with → **accept / stand / tolerate** يتقبل / يقبل



- هنا مجموعه من الأفعال المركبه والكلمات التي يمكن ان تستخدم معها

- run out of ( **space** ) - keep up with ( **changes / news** )  
 cut down on ( **the amount of sugar / the amount of waste / packaging** )  
 come up against ( **problem** ) - look forward to ( **holidays / the day** )  
 come up with ( **way** ) - put up with ( **noise / get worse** )

**Choose the correct verb between brackets :**

1. Things are moving so fast- it's impossible to keep (up , on) with **changes**.
2. Supermarkets should cut (down , up) on **packaging**.
3. we've (come up , down) against serious **problems** in our plan to recycle rubbish.
4. I'm looking forward (into , to) **the day** when 100% of our rubbish recycled.
5. Scientists have just come (on , up) with a new **way** of reprocessing plastic.
6. People living near the bus station put ( up , of) with a lot of **noise**.
7. I've been sorting (out , up) my bedroom cupboard all morning.
8. In the city, the council is running (up , out) of **space** for new houses.
9. Our town is trying hard to cut down (off , on) the **amount** of waste it buries in the ground.
10. Students should read newspapers to make sure they keep up(on , with) national and international news **stories**
11. I am looking for a new flat. I can't put up (with , off) **the noise** of the traffic any longer.
12. In my city, the council is (going along with , running out of) **space** for new houses.
13. We're running out (on , of) **space** to use as landfill sites.
14. Our town is trying hard to (come up against , cut down on) the **amount** of waste it buries in the ground.
15. Students should read newspapers to make sure they (keep up with , look forward to) national and international **news** stories.
16. I'm looking for a new flat. I can't (come up with , put up with) **the noise** of the traffic any longer.

**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

<p>(1)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Sofia arrived in England seven years ago.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: She worked as a primary school teacher.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: She went back to Poland to see her family.</p> <p>4.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Yes, She liked Britain.</p>	<p>(2)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B : Greenchester was a good place to live.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: It was a very clean place because everybody recycled all their rubbish.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Most of the plants and trees died.</p> <p>4.A:.....?</p> <p>B: The people felt angry.</p>
<p>(3)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I am tired because I have been working hard.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B The weather is too hot at the moment.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: People drive too fast in the city centre.</p> <p>4.A: .....?</p> <p>B: The streets are too dirty.</p>	<p>(4)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Driving to work takes me over an hour.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Because there is so much traffic.</p> <p>3.A:.....?</p> <p>B : I have tried travelling by train.</p> <p>4.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Because it is overcrowded.</p>



(5)1.A: .....?	(6)1.A: .....?
B: It had parks, forests and lakes.	B: The Mayor visited the landfill site.
2.A: .....?	A: What did he find in the landfill site?
B: He discussed the problem with his advisors	2.B: .....?
3.A: .....?	3.A: .....?
B: The Mayor had to resign.	B: The council had buried the rubbish in the landfill site.
4.A: .....?	4.A: .....?
B: Because the people were furious.	B: Burning rubbish causes pollution

**الحلول**

- (1)1.A. When did Sofia arrive in England?/ Where did Sofia arrive seven years ago? 2.A. What did she work?  
3.A. Why did she go back to Poland? 4.A. Did she like Britain?
- (2)1.A. What was Greenchester? Why was Greenchester a good place? 2.A. Why was it a very clean place?  
3.A. What died?/ What happened to most of the plants and trees? 4.A. How did people feel?
- (3)1.A. Why are you tired? 2. A. What is the weather like at the moment?  
3.A. How do people drive in the city centre?/Where do people drive too fast? 4.A. How are the streets?/ What do the streets look like?
- (4)1.A. How much time does driving to work take you? 2.A. Why does driving to work take you over an hour?  
3.A. How have you tried travelling?/What have you tried? 4.A. Why have you tried travelling by train?
- (5)1.A. What did it have? 2.A. Who did he discuss the problem with? 3.A. What did he have to do? 4.A. Why did he have to resign?
- (6)1.A. What did the Mayor visit? 2.B. He found the landfill site full. 3.A. Where had the council buried the rubbish?  
4.A. What does burning rubbish cause?

**Complete the following sentences using clauses:**

- 1- When he accused me of being wasteful, ..... I saw red.
- 2- I'm looking forward to the day when ..... I go to university.
- 3- I wish that ..... I could fly.
- 4- The weather is too hot at the moment, so ..... I'll stay at home.
- 5- The streets are very dirty, so ..... we should clean them.
- 6- I'm not good at maths, so ..... I need help.
- 7- I'm looking for a new flat because ..... my flat is noisy.
- 8- If you want to improve your health, ..... you should do sport.
- 9- I was walking through town when ..... it started snowing.
- 10- Since she arrived in England, ..... I haven't seen her.
- 11- I can't remember where ..... my uncle lives.
- 12- Everything was going very well until ..... the car broke down.
- 13- Omar felt very guilty even though ..... he didn't make a mistake.
- 14- Very few tourists come to your town because ..... they know nothing about it.
- 15- I am really tired, so ..... I will sleep early.

- بعد ( wish ) نستخدم الفعل في التصريف الثاني

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

Syria (1)..... at the forefront of regional recycling, hosting regional conferences dedicated (2)..... the protection of the environment, water conservation (3)..... climate change. Major recycling plants have (4)..... built in the last few years in order (5)..... dispose safely of substances such as plastics, batteries and other waste materials. There is (6)..... greatly increased awareness (7)..... the fragile local environment and (8)..... need to take care of Syria's precious natural resources.

**الحلول**

1. is 2.to 3.and 4.been 5.to 6.a 7.of 8.the

Throughout history people(1)..... moved from one country (2)..... another. Some of these migrants chose to emigrate, while others had to move because(3)..... wars or natural disasters or(4)..... economic reasons. Here are some facts and figures. During(5)..... period 1970–2000, the number of migrants (6)..... the world has risen from 82 million to 175 million. In recent years migration into Europe(7)..... Russia has increased sharply, while in many other parts of the world numbers(8)..... fallen. In Australia, (9).....



1945 over six million people have arrived to settle. In each ten-year period (10)..... 1950 to 2000, over (11)..... million migrants entered the country.

## الحلول

1.have 2. to 3.of 4.for 5.the 6.in 7.and 8. have 9. since 10. from 11.a

Greenchester was (1)..... good place to live. It had parks, forests and lakes (2)..... people spent their free time. It(3)..... a very clean place (4)..... everybody recycled all their rubbish. But one morning the people of Greenchester woke up (5)..... find that during the night their town(6)..... turned grey. The sky, (7)..... had always been blue, was grey that morning. Most of(8)..... plants and trees had died(9)..... the birds had flown. The people were angry (10)..... they called the Mayor. "Something has happened to our town during the night. It is dying. We must (11)..... something".

## الحلول

1.a 2.where 3. was 4.because 5.to 6.had 7.which 8.the 9. and 10.so 11.do

The people expected (1)..... Mayor to find the answer to their problem(2)..... he didn't know why Greenchester(3)..... turned grey. He discussed the problem for several days(4)..... his advisors, then they suddenly realized that the cause of the problem might(5)..... the landfill site on the edge of the town. Although (6)..... had been there for as long as anyone could remember, very few members (7)..... the public ever went there. When the Mayor visited the landfill site, (8)..... found that it (9)..... full. The fumes from the unburied rubbish(10)..... poisoned Greenchester. The people thought they had recycled(11)..... rubbish, but in fact, the council had buried it(12)..... the landfill site. The people were furious(13)..... the Mayor had to resign.

## الحلول

1.the 2. but 3. had 4.with 5.be 6.it 7.of 8.he 9.was 10.had 11.their 12.in 13.and

There (1)..... a lot I enjoy about living in our city. The new out-of-town shopping areas have (2)..... good range of shops and are very convenient (3)..... drive to. And the new sports facilities in the same areas (4)..... excellent. The city centre itself, however, is a different matter. Driving to work (5)..... the mornings often takes me over an hour (6)..... there is so much traffic. And the fumes from all the cars' buses (7)..... taxis are terrible. I (8)..... tried travelling by train, (9)..... that is not much better – it is overcrowded, too, and very uncomfortable. We need better public transport, but (10)..... would also help if people travelled to work(11)..... different times of the day.

## الحلول

1.is 2.a 3.to 4.are 5.in 6.because 7.and 8.have 9.but 10.it 11.at

I have (1)..... thinking of buying a flat in the city centre – it would make(2)..... life a lot easier, but they are all too expensive. I can't afford even(3)..... smallest flat. We urgently need more small flats (4)..... young office workers like me. The parks (5)..... other open spaces in the city have improved recently,(6)..... we need more of them. They(7)..... full for most of the day, and the situation is especially bad(8)..... lunch times. I suggest that all the residents of the city get together and agree(9)..... a new set of recommendations (10)..... improve life here. My first recommendation would( 11)..... this: "It would be(12)..... good idea if private motorists parked (13)..... cars outside the city, and then walked into the centre."

## الحلول

1.been 2.my 3. the 4.for 5.and 6.but 7.are 8. at 9.on 10.to 11.be 12.a 13.their



The first paper (1)..... made from cloth nearly two thousand years ago (2)..... China. Although paper can be made (3)..... all kinds of materials, such as cotton fibres, grass (4)..... sugar cane, these days wood pulp is(5)..... material most commonly used to make 'new paper' – that is, paper (6)..... contains no old or recycled paper. The modern world uses so much paper that environmentalists(7)..... persuaded us that we should recycle old paper. There is(8)..... increasing awareness in Syria of the need to recycle both paper(9)..... other materials. Paper-recycling containers can now(10)..... found in some parts of the country(11)..... some government agencies have begun paper recycling programmes. Also, there (12)..... greater education in schools about the need to take care (13)..... our environment. Although we use wood pulp from trees(14)..... make new paper, it is not true that recycling paper saves trees.

## الحلول

1. was 2.in 3.from 4.or 5.the 6.which 7. have 8.an 9.and 10.be 11.and 12.is 13.of 14.to

Trees are (1)..... commercially grown long-term crop, so that when (2)..... are cut down, new ones are planted. Also, papermakers use the parts of trees that cannot(3)..... used in other industries such as building (4)..... furniture making. Nearly all new paper is made(5)..... wood grown in sustainable forests. Here are some of the facts related (6)..... producing recycled paper: A large proportion (7)..... household waste is paper or cardboard. About half of(8)..... is newspapers and magazines. For every tonne of paper used for recycling, (9)..... save 30,000 litres of water 4,000—3,000 kwh of electricity and reduce air pollution. Recycling paper(10)..... less harmful to the environment (11)..... burying it in landfill sites. This is(12)..... paper that is buried in the ground rots and produces methane,(13)..... is a powerful greenhouse gas. Despite our increasing dependence ((14)..... information stored on computers, there will always(15)..... a demand for paper. In the interests of our environment, we have(16)..... make sure that we continue to recycle as much of (17)..... as possible.

## الحلول

1.a 2.they 3.be 4.and 5.from 6. to 7.of 8.this 9.we 11.than 10.is 12.because 13.which 14.on 15.be 16.to 17.it

In 2003, 410,000 non-British citizens came (1)..... live in the UK and 100,000 British people returned to their home country from Spain, Australia and other countries(2)..... they had gone to live or work. (3)..... same period, 170,000 non-British citizens left (4)..... UK to live in other countries. 190,000 British people also left. This means(5)..... total increase of 150,000 in the British population, but where (6)..... all these immigrants come from and go to? Many new arrivals (7)..... economic migrants – people(8)..... come because they can earn more money in Britain (9)..... in their own country. Traditionally, many of these migrants (10)..... to come from countries in Africa or Asia, (11)..... now growing numbers are (12)..... less developed countries in Eastern Europe such as Poland, Hungary or Russia.

## الحلول

1.to 2. where 3. In 4.the 5. a 6.did 7.are 8.who 9.than 10.used 11.but 12.from

Many new migrants take low-paid jobs (1) ..... British people do not want to (2)....., like cleaning, picking fruit and vegetables, looking (3)..... old people or doing repetitive factory work. A minority come to work(4)..... well-paid jobs, for example as dentists or doctors. Many of these migrants do(5)..... intend to stay in Britain, and send some of (6)..... earnings home to their families. But even though they earn higher wages(7)..... they would in their own countries, most economic migrants (8)..... only afford to live a simple life. Some share accommodation (9)..... another migrant family. British citizens (10)..... leave the UK to live abroad go mainly(11)..... countries with warmer climates and cheaper houses, countries (12)..... Spain, Greece, France or Turkey.

## الحلول

1.which 2.do 3.after 4. in 5. not 6.their 7. than 8.can 9.with 10.who 11.to 12.like



Sofia arrived (1)..... England **from** Poland seven years ago. **Since then she** (2)..... worked **as a** primary school teacher. (3)..... **has been** back to Poland several times to see **her** family, (4)..... **she has** never wanted to stay **there**. Two years ago **she got** married to another teacher at (5)..... school, **and the couple have** recently **had** (6)..... baby. **When** Sofia first arrived **in** Britain, **she** (7)..... imagine **she** would settle here. **For the** first year **she** suffered (8)..... culture shock **and** wanted to go home, **but she** quickly learned **the** language (9)..... made new friends. **In the** seven years Sofia **has been in** England, **she has** become so used (10)..... **the way of life that she** really feels (11)..... home **there**.

الحلول

1.in 2.has 3.She 4.but 5.her 6.a 7.didn't 8.from 9. and 10. to 11.at

I (1)..... walking through town **the** other day, **when** suddenly I thought **about** (2)..... friend Tareq. I **hadn't** seen **him** (3)..... several weeks **and** I wondered **what he was** doing I took **out my** mobile phone, (4)..... somebody bumped **into** (5)..... "Sorry," I said . The person (6)..... **had bumped into me was my** friend Tareq!

الحلول

1.was 2. my 3.for 4.when 5.me. 6.who

The authorities **have just** given the (1)..... **light to the** building of a new airport. The news (2)..... come **out of the** (3)....., **and** shocked many villagers. The thought of (4)..... new airport **near their** homes **has** made many **of them** see (5)..... . Unfortunately, the plans **have** already (6)..... prepared – I **have** seen **them in** (7)..... **and white**.

الحلول

1. green 2.has 3.blue 4.a 5. red 6.been 7. black

1. They have given the green light.....the building of a new incinerator.
2. The rules clearly say that we must not leave rubbish outside our homes. Look, it's in black .....white.
3. I heard this morning, out.....the blue, that I'd won a writing competition.
4. We are running out.....space to use as landfill sites.
5. Things are moving so fast- it's impossible to keep up.....the changes.
6. Supermarkets should cut down.....packaging.
7. we've come.....against serious problems in our plan to recycle rubbish.
8. I'm looking forward.....the day when 100% of our rubbish recycled.
9. Scientists have just come up.....a new way of reprocessing plastic.
10. People living near the bus station put up.....a lot of noise.
11. I wish a I could sleep.....night.
12. During the year 2009-2010, 4.5 million tonnes of household waste.....recycled.
13. In recent years migration into Europe and Russia.....increased sharply.
14. I.....been trying to phone you all morning.
15. In my city, the council is running.....of space for new houses.
16. Our town is trying hard to cut.....on the amount of waste it buries in the ground.
17. Students should read newspapers to make sure they keep up.....national and international news stories.
18. I'm looking for a new flat. I can't put.....with the noise of the traffic any longer.
19. Driving to work in the mornings often takes me over an hour.....there is so much traffic.
20. I travel to my work.....train.
21. I've.....thinking of buying a flat in the city centre.
22. The traffic situation is especially bad.....lunch times.

الحلول

1.to 2.and 3.of 4.of 5.with 6.on 7.up 8.to 9.with 10.with 11.at 12.were / was 13.has 14.have 15.out 16.down 17.with 18.up 19.because 20.by 21.been 22.at



**Translate these sentences into English:**

1. تتحرك الأشياء بسرعة – إنه من المستحيل مواكبة التغيرات
2. ينبغي على السوبرماركات ان تخفض التغليف
3. واجهنا مشاكل خطيرة في خطتنا لإعادة تصنيع القمامة
4. انني أتطلع لليوم عندما 100% من نفاياتنا يُعاد تصنيعها
5. لقد اخترع العلماء طريقة جديدة لإعادة معالجة البلاستيك
6. يتحمل الناس الذين يعيشون قرب موقف الباص الكثير من الضجيج
7. صنعت اول جريدة من القماش منذ ألفي عام تقريبا في الصين
8. إن إعادة تصنيع الورق أقل ضررا للبيئة من دفنها في مواقع مكبات النفايات
9. العشب وقصب السكر هما اثنان من المواد التي يمكن ان تستخدم لصنع الورق
10. دفن الورق في مواقع مكبات النفايات تسبب ضررا اكثر للبيئة من إعادة تصنيعه

- 1- Things are moving so fast – it's impossible to **keep up with** the changes
- 2- Supermarkets should **cut down on** packaging.
- 3- We've **come up against** serious problems in our plan to recycle rubbish.
- 4- I'm **looking forward to** the day when 100% of our rubbish is recycled.
- 5- Scientists have just **come up with** a new way of reprocessing plastic.
- 6- People living near the bus station **put up with** a lot of noise.
- 7- The first paper was made from cloth nearly two thousand years ago in China.
- 8- Recycling paper is less harmful to the environment than burying it in landfill sites.
- 9- Grass and sugar cane are two of the materials that can be used to make paper.
- 10- Burying paper in landfill sites does more damage to the environment than recycling it.

\*You are going to write a report based on waste and recycling statistics. (Student Book P: 27)

### Waste and Recycling

Every year, people throw away huge quantities of rubbish. They generate many types of waste, including used paper, empty packages and food scraps. We dispose of waste by burying it, burning it, or recycling it. 50 % of waste material was recycled in Syria last year. 25 % of waste material was burnt and 25 % of waste material was buried in landfill sites. Finally, Australia burns 10 % of its waste, whereas Greece buries the most waste in landfill sites.

\*سوف تكتب تقرير قائم على إحصائيات المخلفات و إعادة التصنيع . (كتاب الطالب ص 27)

### المخلفات و إعادة التصنيع

كل عام الناس يرمون كميات كبيرة من القمامة، هم يولدون أنواع عديدة من المخلفات، تشمل الورق المستعمل، العلب الفارغة وبقايا الطعام. نحن نتخلص من المخلفات بدفنها، بإحراقها أو بإعادة تصنيعها. 50% من مواد المخلفات أعيد تصنيعها في سوريا العام الماضي. 25% من مواد المخلفات أحرقت و 25% من مواد المخلفات دفنت في مواقع مكبات النفايات. أخيراً، أستراليا تحرق 10% من مخلفاتها، بينما تدفن اليونان معظم المخلفات في مواقع مكبات نفايات.



\*You are going to produce a set of recommendations to improve life in your town or city. (Student Book P: 30)

\*Write a letter to a local newspaper making recommendations, which might help to solve ONE of these problems.

(Activity Book – p: 22)

- There are very few public places in your town where people can go to keep fit.
- Very few tourists come to visit your town because they know nothing about it.

### Solving Problems / Improving Life

I live in Damascus . It is a very ancient and great city. It has many wonderful places to visit. However, very few tourists come to visit it because they know nothing about it. Moreover, the local people do not care about their city at all, although it is full of historical sites and great ruins. I suggest that the government should deal with this problem by educating the locals about their city and teach them how to keep it clean. There should also be nice hotels and restaurants for tourists and attract them by advertising much more widely about the city.

- \* أنت سوف تقدم مجموعة توصيات لتحسين الحياة في بلدتك أو مدينتك. (كتاب الطالب ص 30)
- \* اكتب رسالة لجريدة محلية مقدا توصيات يمكن أن تساعد على حل واحدة من هذه المشاكل. (كتاب النشاط ص 22)
- هناك القليل جداً من الأماكن العامة في بلدتك حيث تستطيع الناس الذهاب للحفاظ على الرشاقة.
- قلة من السياح يأتون لزيارة بلدتك لأنهم لا يعرفون شيئاً عنها.

### حلول للمشاكل / تحسين الحياة

أنا أعيش في دمشق. إنها مدينة قديمة وعظيمة. إنها تملك أماكن رائعة لتزور. على أي حال، قلة من السياح يأتون لزيارتها لأنهم لا يعرفون شيئاً عنها. علاوة على ذلك، الناس المحليين لا يهتمون بمدينتهم على الإطلاق بالرغم من إنها مليئة المواقع التاريخية والأثار العظيمة. أنا أقترح أنه ينبغي على الحكومة أن تعالج هذه المشكلة بواسطة تثقف المحليين حول مدينتهم وتعلمهم كيف ليحافظوا على نظافتها. ينبغي أن يكون هناك أيضاً فنادق ومطاعم جميلة للسياح وجذبهم بواسطة الإعلانات على نطاق أوسع بكثير عن المدينة.



## Unit 4

## Students` Book ( Unit 4 )

Students` Book ( Unit 4 )			
		Lettuce	خس
The earth	كوكب الأرض	Dry lands	أراضي جافة
At risk	في خطر	Sahara Desert	الصحراء العربية الكبرى
Save	ينقذ	Covered with	مغطى بـ
Planet	كوكب	Process	عملية
Plants	نباتات	Productive	منتج - معطاء
Nature	الطبيعة	Change into	يتحول إلى
Under threat	تحت التهديد - الخطر	Increasingly	بشكل متزايد
Climate	مناخ	Billion	بليون
Cultivate	يزرع - يحرث	Suffer from	يعاني من
Dust	غبار	Occur	يحدث
Erode	يتآكل - التآكل (الحت)	There is no	لا يوجد
Graze	يرعى الماشية	Harsh	قاسي
Soil	التربة	Top	قمة - اعلى
Survive	يبقى حيا	Layer	طبقة
Wildfire	حريق هائل	Depend on	يعتمد على
Biome	مشكلة	Greener	اكثر خضارا
Dome	قبة	In order to	لكي
Environmentalist	عالم بيئة	Proportion	نسبة - حصة
Exotic	غريب	Shortage	نقص
greenhouse	بيت زجاجي	Tend to	يميل إلى
Humidity	رطوبة	Overcultivate	يجور بالحراثة
Temperate	معتدل	Total	كلي
Waterfall	شلال	Poor	فقير
Camouflage	التمويه / يمويه	Unproductive	غير منتجة
Congregate	يتجمع	Overgraze	يجور بالرعي
Endangered	مهدد بالخطر	Permanently	بشكل دائم
Evade	يهرب - يتجنب	Kill off	يقتل
Extinction	إنقراض	In addition to	بالإضافة إلى
Habitat	موطن	Farming	زراعة
Predator	مفترس	Deforestation	تصحر / اتلاف الغابات
Shallow	قليل العمق / سطحي	Cutting down	تقطيع
Species	أنواع / نوع	Agricultural	زراعي
Associated with	مرتبط بـ	Wind	رياح
Dry	جاف	Blowing	يهب
Powder	مسحوق ( بودرة )	Washing away	يجرف
Stay	يبقى - يقيم	Produce	ينتج
Alive	حيا	Distances	مسافات
Conditions	ظروف - أحوال	Create	يخلق
Grow	ينمو - يزرع	Greater	بشكل أعظم
Spread	ينتشر	Pressure	ضغط
Field	حقل	Severe	قاسي
Grass	عشب	Escape from	يهرب من
Land	يابسة - ارض	In danger	في خطر
Growing	متزايد	Average	معدل



Crops	محاصيل	Cloud // Cloudy	غيم - غائم
Hectares	هكتارات	Spot	يلمح
Desert	صحراء	Lightning	برق
Desertification	تصحّر	Storm//stormy	عاصفة- عاصف
Sun//sunny	شمس - مشمس	Support	يدعم/ يدعم
Different from	مختلف من	Conservation	حماية
Prompted	شجعت- حثت	Programmes	برامج
Atmosphere	الجو	Efficiency	فعالية/ كفاءة
Wet	رطب - مبلل	Irrigation	الري
Calm	هادئ	Rural	ريفى
Clear	صافى - واضح - نقي	Cooperatives	تعاونى
Rain// rainy	مطر - ماطر	Implementation	تطبيق
Thunder	رعد	Knowledge	معرفة
Particular	محدد	Ultimately	أخيراً النهائي
Low	منخفض - قليل	Curtail	يبتر- يقلص- يقلل
Temperatures	درجات الحرارة	Unwarranted	غير مسموح به- غير مجاز
Celebrate	يحتفل	Consumption	استهلاك
Useful	مفيد	Prevail	يعم- يسود
Weather forecasting	النشرة الجوية	Facing	مواجهة- يواجه
Perfect	كامل - تام - مثالي	Contribute	يساهم
Demands	طلبات	Usage	استخدام
In turn	بدوره	Depth	عمق
Spilt	سكب	Importance	أهمية
Perpetually	على الدوام	Pollution	تلوث
Rewrite	يعيد كتابة	Resulting	نتاجا
Misheard	أساء السمع	Reply	رد - يرد - يجيب
Misbehaved	أساء التصرف	Consuming	استهلاك
Worse	أسوأ	Leading to	يقود الى
Flooding	فيضان	Incomplete	ناقص- غير كامل
Caused by	ناتج عن	Spider gram	مخطط عنكبوتى
Rising	ارتفاع	Scarcity	قلة- ندرة
Levels	مستويات	Lack of	نقص في
Present	يقدم	Unprecedented	غير مسبوق
Hurdles	موانع- معوقات	Preservation	حماية- وقاية
Aside from	معدا	Global	عالمى
Fulfill	ينجز- ينفذ- يفي	Challenge	التحدي

### Activity Book ( Unit 4 )

Feeding	إطعام- يطعم	Soya beans	فوليا الصويا
Chickens	الدجاج	Export	يصدر - تصدير
Surface	سطح	Increasingly	بشكل متزايد
Cover	يغطي	Turned into	تحول إلى
Stamps	طابع	Consumption	استهلاك
Diaries	مفكرات	Based on	معتمد على
In front of	امام	Ranchers	رعاة ماشية
At least	على الأقل	Cattle	ماشية
Tribes	قبائل	Loggers	حطابين اخشاب
Deep	عميق	Tropical	مدارى



Size	قياس	Hardwood	خشب صلب
Location	موقع	Oil	نפט - زيت
Vital	حيوي	At the expense	على حساب
Carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	In addition	بالإضافة إلى
Dry	جاف	Deforestation	إتلاف الغابات
Dusty	مغبر	Devastating	مدمر محطم
Native	اصلي	Destructive	مدمر
Medicines	ادوية	Employees	مستخدمين
Shelter	ملجأ - مأوى	Mishear	يسيء السمع
Influence on	يؤثر على	Consume	يستهلك

### The Spread of the Desert

Desertification, which is the process in which productive land changes into desert, is an increasingly serious problem in over a hundred countries of the world. One billion people, out of a total world population of six billion, suffer from **its** effects. Desertification usually occurs in dry areas where there is no rain and where the climate is harsh. In these places, the top layer of soil is destroyed so that the land can no longer be used for growing crops or grazing animals. This means that people who depend on the land for food have to move to greener areas in order to survive. A proportion of the population may survive by moving, but others may die because of shortages of food and water. Although natural changes in the climate often start the process, the activities of human beings are often the real cause of desertification.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. What is desertification?
2. How many countries and people does desertification affect?
3. Why does desertification usually happen in dry places?
4. How do severe climatic conditions affect farming?
5. What may happen to people who cannot escape from desert areas?
6. What does **its** refer to?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

7. the number of people living in a particular area
8. to stay alive
9. extremely dangerous

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:.

10. One fifth of the world's six million population suffer from desertification.
11. If the top layer of soil is destroyed, land becomes more productive.
12. People move to desert areas so that they can overcultivate their land.
13. The weather is the real reason behind desertification.

#### الاجوبه

1. It is the process in which productive land changes into desert. 2. over a hundred countries – one billion people 3. Because there is no rain and the climate is harsh. 4. The top layer of soil is destroyed so that the land can no longer be used for growing crops. 5. They may die 6. desertification. 7. population 8. survive 9. serious 10. ~~fifth~~ sixth – ~~million~~ billion 11. ~~becomes more productive~~ can no longer be used for growing crops. 12. ~~desert~~ greener ~~overcultivate their land~~ survive 13. ~~The weather is~~ The activities of human beings are

Because there are growing numbers of people to feed, farmers tend to overcultivate their land, with the result that the soil becomes poor and unproductive. Other farmers overgraze their land and this permanently kills off grass and other plants. In addition to the effects of farming, deforestation – the cutting down of trees – also erodes the soil. Trees are usually cut down to make more agricultural land, but once there are no longer trees and plants on an area of land, there is nothing to stop the wind and rain from blowing or washing away the top layer of soil. The dust which this produces can travel long distances and affect the health of people living in cities thousands of kilometres away. But this is not the end of the story: desertification can create conditions which produce strong winds and dangerous wildfires and this leads to even greater pressure on the Earth's most precious resource, water.



**Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do farmers tend to overcultivate their land?
2. When can the soil become poor?
3. How does overgrazing affect plant life ?
4. Why are trees usually cut down?
5. What prevents the rain and wind from washing away the top layer of soil?
6. Where does the dust come from?
7. What is the negative effect of the dust produced?
8. What can cause pressure on water?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

9. what plants need to grow in
10. always or for a very long time
11. valuable and important

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

12. Planting trees washes away the bottom layer of soil.
13. Dust may lead to strong winds and dangerous wildfires.

**الاجوبه**

1. Because there are growing numbers of people to feed. 2. when farmers overcultivate their land. 3. It kills off grass and other plants.
4. to make more agricultural land 5. Trees 6. the washing away of the top layer of soil. 7. It can affect the health of people. 8. the strong winds and dangerous wildfires produced by desertification. 9. soil 10. permanently 11. precious 12. ~~Planting~~ Cutting down – ~~bottom~~ top 13. ~~Dust~~ Desertification.

One of the most important issues in the 21st century is the scarcity of fresh water. A lack of water presents major hurdles to human development. Aside from fulfilling our need to drink, fresh water also plays a central role in agricultural production. Water preservation is a major global challenge. Greater development and a perpetually increasing population has led to unprecedented demands on all of our resources, which has in turn led to an increased water shortage. This has prompted Syria to support new water conservation programmes, which improve the efficiency of irrigation systems in rural areas. This includes empowering local cooperatives in the implementation of their knowledge to help improve lives through the conservation of water. Ultimately, we need to curtail the unwarranted consumption of water if we are to prevail over the challenges facing Syria today.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Which problem is discussed in the text?
2. What causes water shortage?
3. What has Syria done to preserve water?
4. How can we face the challenge of the scarcity of water?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. to make something better
6. a situation in which there is not enough of something
7. happening in or relating to the countryside (not town)

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. Water is only used for drinking.
9. Water conservation is a minor local issue.

**الاجوبه**

1. the scarcity of fresh water. 2. the unprecedented demands on all our natural resources caused by greater development and a perpetually increasing population. 3. It has supported new water conservation programmes, which improve the efficiency of irrigation systems in rural areas. 4. by curtailing the unwarranted consumption of water. 5. improve 6. scarcity 7. rural
8. Water is used for drinking and it plays a central role in agricultural production. 9. ~~minor-local~~ major global

### **Feeding Chicken is destroying the climate**

The rainforest of the Amazon region of Brazil in South America covers five percent of the world's land surface and is home to at least 30 percent of the world's animals and plants. The area is also the home of 220,000 people from about 180 different tribes who live deep in the forest. The rainforest itself is an important environment but, because of **its** size and location, it also plays a vital part in controlling the world's climate. It does this by taking



in carbon dioxide and releasing oxygen. Recently large areas of the Amazon rainforest have been cut down to make more land for farmers. In the last three years, for example, 70,000 square kilometres have been destroyed – **this** is the same as six football pitches every minute. Much of this destruction, which leaves the land dry and dusty, is illegal.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Where is the rainforest of the Amazon region of Brazil?
2. What percentage of the world's animals and plants live there?
3. How many different groups of people live in the South American rainforest?
4. How does this rainforest play a vital part in controlling the world's climate?
5. What is the negative effect of the cutting down the rainforest?
6. What do the words **its** , **this** refer to?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

7. weather conditions in an area over a period of time
8. against the law
9. extremely important and necessary

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

10. The rainforest of the Amazon region has nothing to do with the world's climate.
11. The Amazon rainforest absorbs oxygen and releases carbon dioxide.
12. People are cutting down the Amazon rainforest to make football pitches.
13. Extra farming land is created when trees are planted.

الاجوبه

1. in South America. 2. 30 % 3. 220.000 people from 180 different tribes. 4. by taking in carbon dioxide and releasing oxygen.
5. It leaves the land dry and dusty. 6. its : rainforest – this:70,000 square km 7. climate 8. illegal 9. vital
10. ~~has nothing to do with~~ plays a vital part in controlling 11. ~~oxygen~~ carbon dioxide – carbon dioxide oxygen
12. ~~football pitches~~ more land for farmers. 13. ~~planted~~ cut down.

**Explanations and Results** • تفسيرات ونتائج:

الكلمة	الترجمة	تستخدم لتعطي	يأتي بعدها
<b>Because</b>	لان	سبب	(. نتمة + فعل + فاعل ) جملة
We need to produce more food <b>because</b> there are more people to feed.			
<b>in order to</b>	لكي	سبب	فعل بالمصدر
Some people move to greener areas <b>in order to</b> survive.			
<b>To</b>	لـ	سبب	فعل بالمصدر
Trees are cut down <b>to</b> make more agricultural land.			
<b>be + the cause of</b>	يكون السبب من	سبب	اسم
The activities of human beings <b>are</b> often <b>the</b> real <b>cause of</b> desertification.			
<b>because of</b>	بسبب	سبب	اسم
Some people may survive by moving, but others may die <b>because of</b> shortages of food and water.			
<b>so that</b>	لذلك	نتيجة	(. نتمة + فعل + فاعل ) جملة
The soil is destroyed <b>so that</b> the land <u>cannot</u> be used for growing crops.			
<b>with the result that</b>	مما نتج عن ذلك	نتيجة	(. نتمة + فعل + فاعل ) جملة
Farmers tend to overcultivate their land, <b>with the result that</b> the soil becomes unproductive.			
<b>lead to</b>	يؤدي إلى	نتيجة	اسم
Wildfires can <b>lead to</b> greater pressure on the Earth`s most precious resource, water.			



1. Some people move to greener areas ( in order to – so that) survive.
2. Trees are usually cut down ( to – for) make more agricultural land.
3. The top layer of soil is destroyed ( in order to –so that) the land can no longer be used for growing crops.
4. The activities of human beings are often the real ( because –cause of ) desertification.
5. (Because –So that) there are growing numbers of people to feed, farmers tend to overcultivate their land.
6. Farmers tend to overcultivate their land, ( in order to- with the result that) the soil becomes poor and unproductive.
7. The people of Tristan da Cunha left ( because of – because ) volcanic activity.
8. The Amazon rainforest has an important effect on the climate of the world ( because – so that ) it covers a large area.
9. Loggers cut down trees in order ( to – not to) sell the wood.
10. Wildfires can lead ( on – to ) greater pressure on the Earth's most precious resource; water.
11. Large areas of forest have been cut down, ( on – with) the result that the soil is now dry and dusty.
12. The rainforest has been cut down ( so that – in order to) make more farmland.
13. Farmers need more land ( in order to – so that) they can grow more soya beans.
14. I went to the post office (to - so that) I could buy stamps.
15. I went to the post office ( in order to - so that) buy stamps.
16. Ahmad went to the airport ( because – in order to ) he had to meet his brother, Khaled.
17. People write things in their diaries ( in order to – in order not to) forget important things.
18. People write things in their diaries ( in order to – so that) they don't forget important things.
19. They need extra farming land ( in order to – in order not to ) grow food for the growing populations.
20. They move away from desert areas ( in order to - so that ) find food and water.
21. We need to protect some animals ( because – so that) they do not become extinct.
22. The purpose of places like the Eden Project is ( to – for ) show our dependence on plants.
23. Some animals like the sand gazelle are under threat(because- so that)people are destroying their habitat.
24. Ice in the polar areas is melting ( because – because of) climate change is causing global warming.
25. In the future, sea levels will rise ( because – so that ) the polar ice is melting.
26. People are cutting down forests ( because – in order to ) have more land for growing food.
27. Many people recycle their rubbish ( in order to - in order not to ) use up the world's resources.
28. Scientists are trying to produce new fuels (so that – to ) people can continue to use their cars without damaging the environment.
29. Some people are moving out of their homes on the coast ( in order to – so that) escape future floods.
30. We should stop burning coal and oil ( in order to – in order not to) cause more global warming.
31. Scientists are worried about climate change ( so that – because) it is a threat to life on Earth.
32. Fadia didn't go to school yesterday ( because – in order to ) she felt ill.
33. Omar's letter was so difficult to read ( because – so that ) he wrote it very quickly.

### الحلول

1. in order to 2. To 3. so that 4. cause of 5. because 6. with the result that 7. because of 8. because 9. to 10. to 11. with 12. in order to 13. so that 14. so that 15. in order to 16. because 17. in order not to 18. so that 19. in order to 20. in order to 21. so that 22. to 23. because 24. because 25. Because 26. in order to 27. in order not to 28. so that 29. in order to 30. in order not to 31. because 32. because 33. because

### البادئات Prefixes

**rewrite** يعيد كتابة / **rebuild** يعيد بناء / **redo** يعيد عمل / **reorganize** يعيد تنظيم / **rewind** يعيد لف الشريط / **reuse** يعيد استخدام

**mishear** يسيئ السمع / **misbehave** يسيئ التصرف / **misuse** يسيئ الاستخدام / **misread** يسيئ قراءة /

**Overcharge** يزيد في السعر / **undercook** لا يطبخ بشكل كافي

1. I spilt tea on the homework, so I had to ( rewrite – miswrite) it.
2. During the storm, three houses were destroyed and had to be ( rebuilt – reheard ).
3. I ( reheard – misheard) you. I thought you said we'd meet at 9.
4. The children were very good. None of them ( misbehaved – misused) in any way.



5. I (reheard – misheard) you. I thought you said you'd prefer tea.
6. I did my homework too quickly, so the teacher asked me to (redo – rewind) it.
7. As we have some new employees, we will have to (reorganise – disorganise) our office.
8. If you (misuse – reuse) the equipment, it will not work properly.
9. I said 9.30, not 8.30. You must have (reread – misread) my e-mail.
10. I haven't got enough left. The shop assistant must have (undercharged – overcharged) me.
11. These potatoes are too hard. We obviously (undercooked – overcooked) them.
12. Those chemicals are only dangerous if you (reuse – misuse) them.
13. I want to listen to that side of the cassette again. I'll have to (rewind – overwind) it.
14. We thought the restaurant bill was too high. We were right – the waiter had (undercharged - overcharged) us.
15. I'm not going to throw my mobile phone away. I'm going to send it to another country where it can be (reused – misused).

### الحلول

1. rewrite 2. rebuilt 3. misheard 4. misbehaved 5. misheard 6. redo 7. reorganise 8. misuse  
9. misread 10. overcharged 11. undercooked 12. misuse 13. rewind 14. overcharged 15. reused

## Climate

1. ( Weather – Climate ) is what happens to the air and the atmosphere outside. It may be cold or ( cloudy – hot ), wet or ( cloudy – dry ), calm or ( sunny – stormy ), clear or ( cloudy – hot ). The atmosphere changes depending on whether it's rainy or ( cloudy – sunny ). Thunder and ( sun – lightning ) are part of weather. Climate is the ( hot – average ) weather in a particular place over a long period of time. A place where it doesn't ( rain – snow ) over many years has a dry climate. Information about climate is useful for ( climate – weather ) forecasting. Information about climate helps farmers to know when it is the best time to plant their ( crops – clouds ).
2. A country where the sun always shines has a dry ( climate – weather).
3. You feel cold when the temperature is ( high – low ).
4. When there is no wind, we say the weather is ( calm – stormy).
5. Farmers listen to the ( climate – weather ) forecast to decide when to harvest their crops.

### Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:

(1)1.A: .....?	(2) 1.A:.....?
B: Desertification is the process in which productive land changes into desert.	B : The rainforest of the Amazon is in South America
2.A: .....?	2.A: .....?
B: One billion people suffer from its effects.	B: The rainforest is important because of its size and location.
3.A: .....?	3.A:.....?
B: It usually occurs in dry areas.	B: About 180 different tribes live deep in the forest.
A: What do think about desertification?	4.A:.....?
4.B: .....?	B: It controls the climate by taking in carbon dioxide and releasing oxygen.

### الحلول

- (1)1.A.What is desertification?      2.A.How many people suffer from its effects?      3.A.Where does it occur?      4.B.It affects the climate.  
(2)1.A.Where is the rainforest of the Amazon ?      2.A.Why is the rainforest important?  
3.A.How many tribes live deep in the forest?/ Where do bout 180 different tribes live ?      4.A.How does it control the climate?

### Complete the following sentences using clauses:

- 1- I spilt tea on my homework, so ..... I had to rewrite it.
- 2- If the top layer of soil is destroyed, ..... the land becomes poor.
- 3- Farmers need more land so that ..... they can grow more crops.
- 4- Some people move to greener areas in order to ..... find food and water.
- 5- Trees are cut down to ..... make more farmland.
- 6- Some people die in desert areas because ..... they don't have enough food.



- 7- Forests are cut down so that ..... farmers can have more farmland.  
 8- Forests are cut down because ..... farmers need more farmland.  
 9- We need to protect some animals so that ..... they don't die.  
 10- Because there are growing numbers of people to feed, ..... they tend to overcultivate their land.  
 11- I did my homework too quickly, so ..... the teacher asked me to redo it.  
 12- Fadia didn't go to school yesterday because ..... she felt ill.  
 13- I went to the post office so that ..... I could buy stamps.  
 14- I went to the post office because ..... I needed some stamps.  
 15- Ahmad went to the airport so that ..... he could meet his brother.  
 16- Ahmad went to the airport because ..... he wanted to meet his brother.  
 17- The sky was very clear and ..... I could see the stars.  
 18- People write things in their diaries so that ..... they don't forget important things.  
 19- Omar's letter was difficult to read because ..... he wrote it very fast.  
 20- If you misuse the equipment, ..... it will not work properly.  
 21- As we have some new employees, ..... we will have to reorganise our office.

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

Desertification, (1)..... is the process in which productive land changes into desert. (2)..... an increasingly serious problem in over(3)..... hundred countries of the world. One billion people, out(4)..... a total world population of six billion, suffer(5)..... its effects. Desertification usually occurs in dry areas (6)..... there is no rain and where the climate is harsh. In these places, (7)..... top layer of soil is destroyed (8)..... that the land can no longer be used for growing crops or grazing animals. This means that people(9)..... depend on the land for food have to move to 'greener' areas (10)..... order to survive. A proportion of the population may survive(11)..... moving, but others may die because(12)..... shortages of food and water.

**الحلول**

1. which 2. is 3. a 4. of 5. from 6. where 7. the 8. so 9. who 10. in 11. by 12. of

Although natural changes in the climate often start (1)..... process, the activities of human beings (2)..... often the real cause of desertification. (3)..... there are growing numbers of people to feed, farmers tend to overcultivate (4)..... land, with the result that the soil becomes poor (5)..... unproductive. Other farmers overgraze their land and this permanently kills off grass and other plants. In addition(6)..... the effects of farming, deforestation – the cutting down of trees – also erodes(7)..... soil. Trees are usually cut down to make more agricultural land, (8)..... once there are no longer trees and plants on(9)..... area of land, there is nothing to stop the wind and rain(10)..... blowing or washing away the top layer (11)..... soil. The dust(12)..... this produces can travel long distances and affect the health of people living(13)..... cities thousands of kilometres away. But this(14)..... not the end of the story: desertification can create conditions which produce strong winds and dangerous wildfires and this leads(15)..... even greater pressure on the Earth's most precious resource, water.

**الحلول**

1. the 2. are 3. Because 4. their 5. and 6. to 7. the 8. but 9. an 10. from 11. of 12. which 13. in 14. is 15. to

Weather(1)..... what happens to the air and the atmosphere outside. It may(2)..... cold or hot, wet or dry. It can be calm or stormy, clear (3)..... cloudy. The atmosphere changes depending(4)..... whether it's rainy or sunny. Thunder and lightning (5)..... also part of weather. Climate, on the other hand, is(6)..... average weather in a particular place over a long period of time. A place where it doesn't rain over many years has a dry climate. A place with low temperatures for most of the year(7)..... a cold climate. Here in Syria we



celebrate wet weather (8)..... we need the rain. Information about climate is useful(9)..... weather forecasting. It also helps farmers to know(10)..... it is the best time to plant 11..... crops.

الحلول

1. is 2. be 3. or 4. on 5. are 6. the 7. has 8. because 9. for 10. when 11. their

One of (1)..... most important issues in the 21st century (2)..... the scarcity of fresh water. A lack of water presents major hurdles to human development. Aside from fulfilling (3)..... need to drink, fresh water also plays (4)..... central role in agricultural production. Water preservation is a major global challenge. Greater development (5)..... a perpetually increasing population has led to unprecedented demands (6)..... all of our resources, which has in turn led to an increased water shortage. This(7)..... prompted Syria to support new water conservation programmes, (8)..... improve the efficiency of irrigation systems in rural areas. This includes empowering local cooperatives in the implementation(9)..... their knowledge to help improve lives through the conservation of water. Ultimately, (10)..... need to curtail the unwarranted consumption of water (11)..... we are to prevail over the challenges facing Syria today. (12)..... you have any suggestions about how average Syrians can contribute to cutting back (13)..... water? Please let me know your ideas.

الحلول

1. the 2. is 3. our 4. a 5. and 6. on 7. has 8. which 9. of 10. we 11. if 12. Do 13. on

The rainforest of the Amazon region of Brazil(1)..... South America covers five percent of the world's land surface and is home to (2)..... least 30 percent of the world's animals and plants. The area(3)..... also the home of 220,000 people from about 180 different tribes(4)..... live deep in the forest. The rainforest itself is an important environment but, because(5)..... its size and location, it also plays (6)..... vital part in controlling the world's climate. It does this (7)..... taking in carbon dioxide and releasing oxygen. Recently, however, large areas of the Amazon rainforest have (8)..... cut down to make more land for farmers. In the last three years, for example, 70,000 square kilometres(9)..... been destroyed – this is the same as six football pitches every minute. Much of this destruction, (10)..... leaves the land dry and dusty, is illegal.

الحلول

1. in 2. at 3. is 4. who 5. of 6. a 7. by 8. been 9. have 10. which

Farmers use most of the new land to grow soya beans, (1)..... they export to other parts of the world to(2)..... used as animal food. Millions of chickens in western European countries are fed (3)..... South American soya beans. Increasingly, some soya beans are also(4)..... turned into food for human consumption; many vegetarian foods are based on soya beans. Other areas of the rainforest are cleared (5)..... ranchers who use the land for their cattle, by loggers (6)..... sell the valuable tropical hardwood from the trees (7)..... cut down, or by oil companies who are trying to find more oil. These activities help to improve(8)..... economy of the region, but at the expense of the future(9)..... the global environment. In addition to destroying ancient forests (10)..... changing the world's climate, deforestation is having (11)..... devastating effect on native populations who are dependent(12)..... the rainforest for everything they need, from food and tools(13)..... medicines and shelter.

الحلول

1. which 2. be 3. on 4. being 5. by 6. who 7. they 8. the 9. of 10. and 11. a 12. on 13. to

**Translate into English:**

1. التصحر هو العملية التي فيها تتغير الأرض المنتجة إلى صحراء
2. يحدث التصحر عادة في مناطق جافة حيث لا يوجد مطر وحيث يكون المناخ قاسيا



3. يمكن للتصحّر ان يخلق حالات التي تنتج رياح قوية و حرائق برية خطيرة
4. بلدا حيث تشرق الشمس دائما يمتلك مناخا جافا
5. يستمع المزارعون للنشرة الجوية ليقررروا متى يحصدوا محاصيلهم
6. تمتلك غابة الامازون تأثيرا مهما على مناخ العالم
7. تقطع الغابة المطرية لصنع اراضي زراعية اكثر
8. يحتاج المزارعون ارض اكثر وبذلك يمكنهم ان يزرعوا فول صويا اكثر
9. يقطع الحطابين اللصوص الأشجار لكي يبيعوا الاخشاب
10. إحدى اهم القضايا في القرن الحادي والعشرين هي ندرة الماء العذب

- 1- Desertification is the process in which productive land changes into desert.
- 2- Desertification usually occurs in dry areas where there is no rain and where the climate is harsh.
- 3- Desertification can create conditions which produce strong winds and dangerous wildfires.
- 4- A country where the sun always shines has a dry climate.
- 5- Farmers listen to the weather forecast to decide when to harvest their crops.
- 6- The Amazon rainforest has an important effect on the climate of the world.
- 7- The rainforest has been cut down to make more farmland.
- 8- Farmers need more land so that they can grow more soya beans.
- 9- Loggers cut down trees in order to sell the wood.
- 10- One of the most important issues in the 21st century is the scarcity of fresh water.

You are going to write a reply to an email on water shortage, suggesting ways of consuming less water.

(Student Book P: 39 )

### Ways of Consuming Less Water

Dear Jan ,

Water is very important in our lives. It is necessary for drinking, cooking, growing, and caring for animals. Anyway, we waste a lot of water every day. Some people wash their cars in the streets, wasting too much water. As a result, this leads to a serious water shortage. So we need to save water and use less of it. Moreover, the government should put new plans to conserve water and prevent people from wasting it by paying big fines. Finally, we can recycle water and tell our children how important it is.

سوف تكتب رداً لبريد إلكتروني عن نقص الماء، مقترحاً طرقاً لإستهلاك أقل للماء. (كتاب الطالب ص 39)

### طرقاً لإستهلاك أقل للماء

عزيزي جان :

الماء هامة جداً في حياتنا. إنها هامة جداً من أجل الشرب، الطبخ، الزراعة والعناية بالحيوانات. على أي حال، نحن نهدر الكثير من الماء كل يوم. بعض الناس يغسلون سياراتهم في الشوارع كل يوم، مهدرين الكثير من الماء. بالنتيجة هذا يؤدي إلى نقص خطير في الماء. لذلك، نحن بحاجة لتوفير الماء وإستعمالها بشكل أقل. علاوة على ذلك، ينبغي على الحكومة أن تضع خطط جديدة للحفاظ على الماء وتمنع الناس من الإسراف بواسطة دفع غرامات كبيرة. أخيراً، نحن نستطيع إعادة إستخدام الماء وإخبار اطفالنا كم الماء هامة



Write a description of a photograph or photographs you have seen. (Activity book.P.26)

### A Photograph

One day I went to a nice museum in Aleppo. I saw many exciting things. One of these things was a photograph. It was a photograph of Aleppo city in the year 1970. It was in black and white. It was taken in Bab Al Faraj. In the middle of this photograph, there were many people with old clothes and they were walking to their work. In the background, there were few buildings and some animals. There were also few old cars and the street was very narrow. It was great and I felt so happy.

اكتب وصفاً لصورة أو صور أنت قد رأيت. (كتاب النشاط ص 26)

#### صورة

يوماً ما أنا ذهبت إلى متحفاً جميلاً في حلب. أنا رأيت أشياء مثيرة جداً. إحدى هذه الأشياء كانت صورة لمدينة حلب عام 1970. إنها كانت أسود وأبيض. إنها التقطت في باب الفرج. في وسط هذه الصورة يوجد العديد من الناس بملابس قديمة وكانوا يمشون إلى عملهم. في خلفية الصورة هناك بضع أبنية وبعض الحيوانات. كان يوجد أيضاً بضع سيارات قديمة والشارع كان ضيق جداً. إنها حقاً كانت عظيمة وأنا شعرت بالسعادة.



## Unit 5

## Students` Book ( Unit 5 )

Students` Book ( Unit 5 )			
Whole	كامل - كلي	Enormous	ضخم
Project	مشروع	Columns	أعمدة
Museum	متحف	Scorching	خانق / لاذع
Countryside	ريف	Amazing	مدهشة
The south-west	الجنوبي الغربي	Climb up	تسلق
Popular	مشهور	Walls	جدران
Attraction	معلم	Attention	الانتباه
Specially-built	مبنى خصيصا	Tropics	استوائية- مدارية
Domes	قباب	Harm/damage	ضرر- أدى
Biomes	مناطق	Flow	يتدفق- يسيل- متدفق
Carefully	بحذر	Stream	جدول- نهر
Controlled	تحكم- سيطر	Height	ارتفاع
Giant	هائل- عملاق	Unusual	غير عادي
Contain	يحتوي	Foreign	اجنبي- غريب
Exotic	غريب	Busy	مشغول- مزدحم
Purposes	أهداف	Return	يعود- العودة
Dependant	تابع- عالة على غيره	Camp	مخيم
Educate	يتقن- يعلم	Biology	علم الأحياء
Preserve	يحافظ على- يحتكر	Rainforest	غابة مطرية
Fascinating	ساحرة- فائنة	Middle	منتصف
Interactive	تفاعلي	Cross	يعبر
Exhibits	معارض- يعرض	Bridge	جسر
Combine	يضم- يوحد- يدمج	Aubergine	الباذنجان
Educational	تربوي- تعليمي	Peanuts	فستق
Value	قيمة	Pineapple	أناناس
Scientific	علمي	Dependent on	معتمد على
Interest	اهتمام	Interested in	مهتم بـ
Variety	تنوع- تشكيلية	Keen on	متحمس لـ
Spectacular	مدهش	Different from	مختلف عن
Evaluate	يتمن- يقيم	Full of	مليء بـ
Attract	يجذب	Aware of	واعي لـ مدرك لـ
hill	هضبة	Famous for	مشهور بـ
Medieval	من القرون الوسطى	Satisfied with	راضي- مقتنع بـ
Citadel	قلعة	Crowds	حشود- جماهير
Views	مناظر- وجهات نظر	Spoil	يتلف- يفسد- ينهب
In credible	بشكل كبير- لا يصدق	Sample	عينة- يختبر
Plain	سهل	Account	حساب- وصف
Dark	ظلام- غامق	Positive	إيجابي
Pink	وردي	Negative	سلبى
Purple	ارجواني	Ancient	قديم
Sight	منظر- روية	Site	موقع
bank	ضفة- مصرف	Tourists	سياح
The Orontes River	نهر العاصي	Civilizations	حضارات
Extensive	هائل- شامل- واسع	Set up	ينظم / يؤسس
Ruins	آثار		



Activity Book ( Unit 5 )			
Trunk	جذع	Engine	محرك
Sharp	حادّة	Switch on/off	يشعل / يطفى
Pointed	أبرية / مذبذب	Civilization	حضارة
Stem	ساق النباتية	Grades	علامات
Enemies	أعداء	Seeds	بذور
Attack	يهاجم	Thorn	شوكة
Insects	حشرات	Disturb	يزعج
Acacia	الأكاسيا	Populated	مأهول
Nightshade	عنب الثعلب	Graduate	يتخرج
Chestnut	الكستناء	Species	أنواع / أنواع
Nettle	القريص	Spotted	لمح - لاحظ
Cactus	الصبار	Colourful	ملون
Strange	غريب	Close to	قريب من
Roots	جذور	Underwater	تحت الماء
Constant	متواصل	Trip	رحلة
Stings	يلدغ - يلسع - لسعة - لدغة	Shipwreck	حطام سفينة
Quantities	كميات	wrecked	محطم
Inject	يحقن	Boat	قارب
By means	بواسطة	Wetsuits	بدلات سباحة
Poison	سم	Nesting	ماوى - ياوى
Berries	التوت	Shore	شاطئ
Ants	نمل	Lay	يستلقي - يضع
Branches	اعصان	Eggs	بيض
Sticky	لزج - دبق	Approach	تدنو / تقترب
Gum	صمغ	Postman	السامعي البريد
Paint	طلاء	Encyclopedia	موسوعة
Prevent From	يمنع من	Doorbell	جرس الباب
Feet	اقدام	Waves	أمواج
Wings	اجنحة	Accent	لهجة
Get stuck	يلق	Neighborhood	الجوار / همي
Escape From	يهرب من	Turnips	اللفت
Chewing gum	علكة	Lentils	العدس

### A whole planet under glass

The Eden Project, which opened in the year 2000, is a living plant museum in the countryside in the south-west of England. It is a very popular attraction and millions of visitors come every year to see plants from all over the world growing in this special environment. Some plants grow outside, but many are in specially-built domes, called 'biomes' where the temperature and humidity are carefully controlled. The biomes are like giant greenhouses and one, the Humid Tropics biome, is the largest greenhouse in the world. It is over 55m high and 200m long and contains many thousands of exotic plants not found in England. One of the purposes of the project is to show how dependent human beings are on plants and to educate people on the importance of preserving our natural environment. Aside from the plant life, the Eden Project has fascinating interactive exhibits for people of all ages. Many of the visitors are groups of school children and the Eden Project combines educational value with scientific interest and a huge variety of spectacular plant life.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. Where is the Eden Project?
2. What is special about the Eden Project?
3. Why do people visit the Eden Project?



4. What can people see in the Humid Tropics biome?
5. What is the educational purpose of the Eden project?
6. What does the word **It** refer to?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

7. unusual, foreign
8. joins together
9. liked, admired or enjoyed by many people

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

10. Only few people visit the Eden Project every year.
11. Small greenhouses are like biomes.
12. One of the purposes of the project is to show how plants depend on humans beings.
13. The exhibits can be visited by children only.

**الاجوبه**

1. It is in the countryside in the south-west of England. 2. It is a living plant museum. 3. To see plants from all over the world.
4. Many thousands of exotic plants not found in England. 5. To educate people on the importance of preserving our natural environment.
6. the Humid Tropics biome 7. exotic 8. combines 9. popular 10. ~~Only few~~ Millions of 11. Biomes are like giant greenhouses.
12. ~~plants depend on human beings~~ human beings depend on plants. 13. ~~children only~~ people of all ages.

**Our Visit to Apamea**

Ahmad and I have just got home from a two-day visit to Apamea. It was only a short visit but I will remember it forever. Apamea is an ancient site on the bank of the Orontes River. There are extensive ruins which tourists can walk around and where they can learn about many different civilisations. We arrived on Tuesday evening and the first thing we did was set up our camp. The sky was very clear and we could see millions of stars. The next morning was very hot but we visited the Roman city. There were enormous columns and high walls which I thought were amazing. The next day was another scorching hot day and we climbed up the hill to the medieval citadel. I didn't think the ruins were as interesting, but the views from the top were incredible and we could see a long way across Syria. As the sun went down over the plain, we saw the buildings change colour, from a dark red to pink and purple. It was an amazing sight I will never forget.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. How many people were on the trip?
2. How long did they stay in Apamea?
3. Where is Apamea located?
4. What did they see in the Roman city?
5. How did they get to the medieval citadel?
6. What view could they see from the top of the hill?
7. When could they see the buildings change colour?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

8. very old
9. the part of a building that is left after the rest has been destroyed
10. land along the side of a river or lake

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

12. It was very cold in Apamea.
13. The citadel they visited is modern.

**الاجوبه**

1. two 2. two days 3. on the bank of the Orontes River. 4. They saw enormous columns and high walls. 5. They climbed up the hill. 6. a long way across Syria 7. as the sun went down. 8. ancient 9. ruins 10. bank 12. ~~cold~~ hot 13. ~~modern~~ ancient

**How plants protect themselves from their enemies?**

It may seem very strange, but plants are always in danger from animals which want to feed on them. If this happens, the plant can be damaged or even killed. So, because their roots, trunks, leaves, flowers, fruits and seeds are under constant attack from mammals, insects or birds, plants have developed ways of protecting themselves



from these enemies. Here are some of the ways plants stop animals from attacking and eating them. Sharp thorns and stings: Some plants which grow in dry climates, for example cactuses, store large quantities of water in their stems. To protect themselves, they have sharp thorns. Animals will hurt themselves if they try to get to the water from these plants. Other plants, like stinging nettles, can 'inject' painful or irritating substances into their enemies by means of the sharp hairs on their leaves.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do plants need to protect themselves?
2. What are the enemies of plants?
3. How can cactuses protect themselves?
4. Which part of a nettle can hurt enemies?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. a living thing that has leaves and roots and grows in earth
6. to stop harm or damage
7. without water inside or on the surface

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. Cactuses are found in wet places and store water in their thorns.
9. Stinging nettles have soft hairs on their stems, which help them attack animals.

**الاجوبه**

1. Because they are always in danger from animals which want to feed on them.
2. mammals, insects and birds
3. They have sharp thorns; animals will hurt themselves if they try to get to the water from these plants.
4. the hairs on its leaves.
5. plant
6. protect
7. dry
8. ~~wet~~ dry - ~~thorns~~ stems
9. ~~soft~~ sharp - ~~stems~~ leaves - ~~attack~~ protect themselves from

.....  
**Poison :** There are many plants which protect themselves by poisoning their enemies. In some cases the poison they contain is so powerful that it can kill any living thing which touches or eats them. The poison can be in the leaves, the seeds or berries, or in other parts of the plant.

**Insects:** Some acacia trees in hot African countries are protected by ants which live permanently on their branches. If an animal starts to eat the tree's leaves, the ants attack it.

**Sticky gum:** Some plants, such as horse chestnut trees, are covered with a sticky substance, like wet paint, which can prevent insects from eating them. Sometimes this substance is so strong that insects' feet or wings get stuck and they cannot escape.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Mention two ways by which plants stop animals from attacking them.
2. Where can the poison be found in plants?
3. Why do plants need to protect themselves against insects?
4. Which plant is protected by a kind of insect?
5. What can happen to insects which attack horse chestnut trees?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. a substance that can cause death or serious illness
7. having a very strong effect
8. to get away from a dangerous or bad situation

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

9. Ants stay on the roots of some acacia trees for a short time.
10. Horse chestnut trees can't protect themselves because they have thorns.

**الاجوبه**

1. poison - insects
2. in many parts, including the leaves, the seeds and the berries.
3. Because the insects want to eat them.
4. some acacia trees in Africa.
5. Their feet or wings get stuck and they can't escape.
6. poison
7. powerful
8. escape
9. ~~roots~~ branches - ~~for a short time~~ permanently
10. ~~can't~~ can - ~~have thorns~~ are covered with a sticky substance.

.....  
Dear Mike

I'm Donald. We're really enjoying our holiday in Lattakia. Yesterday we went swimming in the Mediterranean. It was the first time I had swum in the sea and it was really exciting! There are hundreds of species of fish and



plants. We spotted some really colourful fish. We swam close to them and took photos with our underwater camera. This was the best moment of my trip. I'll show you the photos when I get home. Near Lattakia there is a shipwreck. We swam over the wrecked boat and we saw many sea creatures swimming around it; it was one of the most interesting things I've ever seen! We wore wetsuits, which I found a little uncomfortable, although they meant we didn't feel the cold at all. We visited the nesting site of the green sea turtles that come to the shore in Lattakia to lay their eggs. Turtles are very rare in this part of the world so we had to be really quiet so we didn't disturb them! Unfortunately the day was too short, and there was so much more to see. We're leaving tomorrow, but if we come to Syria again, I'm going to go back to Lattakia.

Donald

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Who writes the letter and to whom?
2. What did Donald enjoy most about his visit?
3. Why didn't they feel the cold at all?
4. Why was Donald disappointed at the end of the day?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. unluckily
6. a living thing / animal
7. not long

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. Donald had very often swum in the sea before he went on his trip.
9. Donald sent the photos to Mike.
10. They were quiet when they saw the turtles because they were afraid.

**الاجوبه**

1. Donald writes the letter to Mike. 2. swimming close to the fish and taking photos of them. 3. Because they wore wetsuits.
4. Because the day was too short and there was much more to see. 5. unfortunately 6. creature 7. short
8. ~~very often~~ never 9. Donald would show Mike the photos when he got back. 10. ~~were afraid~~ didn't want to disturb them.

**Explaining Possibilities شرح الاحتمالات: نستخدم**

- ( **must / can't / might + V1** ) لنشرح حقائق ممكنة او احتمالات بنسب معينة في زمن الحاضر

- ( **must / can't / might + have + V3** ) لنشرح حقائق ممكنة او احتمالات بنسب معينة في زمن الماضي او الحاضر التام

1 نستخدم ( **must / must + have + V3** ) عندما نكون متأكدين تقريبا ان شيء ما صحيح في حال الاثبات ( **اكيد نعم** )

مع الكلمات الاحتمالية التالية: ( **sure - certain - certainly - true - know** )

2 نستخدم ( **can't / can't + have + V3** ) عندما نكون متأكدين تقريبا ان شيء ما صحيح في حال النفي ( **اكيد لا** )

مع الكلمات الاحتمالية التالية: ( **not** ) **جملة نفي** ( **sure - certain - certainly - true - know** )

3 نستخدم ( **might / might + have + V3** ) عندما لا نكون متأكدين فيما إذا شيء ما صحيح او غير صحيح ( **إما نعم او لا** )

مع الكلمات الاحتمالية التالية: ( **not sure - think - probably - may be - perhaps - look like** )

- **كيفية إكمال جمل الاحتمالات:** عادة يكون لدينا جملتين الأولى تمهيدية والثانية تحتوي على إحدى الكلمات الاحتمالية فإننا نكتب

الجملة الثانية التي تحتوي على الكلمة الاحتمالية لكن نحذف الرأي الشخصي إن وُجد والكلمة الاحتمالية ونضع بدلا منها ما يناسبها اما

( **must / can't / might** ) بحسب الكلمة الاحتمالية ونضع نفس الفاعل مع مراعاة زمن الجملة أي :

إذا كانت الجملة في زمن الحاضر البسيط نستخدم التركيب ( **must / can't / might + V1** )

وإذا كانت الجملة في زمن الماضي او الحاضر التام نستخدم التركيب ( **must / can't / might + have + V3** )



أمثلة:

الجملتان الأولى تمهيدية      الجملتان الثانية زمنها حاضر  
The phone is ringing. It is probably your brother. → It might be your brother.  
فاعل      فعل      فاعل      فعل

الجملتان الأولى تمهيدية      الجملتان الثانية زمنها ماضي بسيط  
Omar's car lights were on all night. I am sure he forgot to switch the light off. →  
فاعل      رأي شخصي      فاعل      فعل

→ He must have forgotten to switch the lights off.  
فاعل      فعل

الجملتان الثانية زمنها حاضر بسيط      الجملتان الأولى تمهيدية  
I'm sure that bats aren't birds – they don't have feathers. → Bats / They can't be birds.  
فاعل      رأي شخصي      فاعل      فعل      فاعل      فعل

**A. Choose the correct words in brackets:**

1. It ( must – can't ) be an interesting place to work. I feel **sure** it **is** .
2. It ( must – can't ) be an interesting place to work. I feel **sure** it **isn't**.
3. The crowds ( must – might ) spoil it for me. I **think** it is **possible**.
4. It ( must – can't ) be the postman at the door. He always comes at this time.
5. Tareq wants to be a teacher when he graduates from university. He ( must – can't ) be interested in education.
6. I ( may – must ) be coming next month. If I do, I'll let you know.
7. She ( must – can't ) have got good grades in her exams. She has worked very hard.
8. It ( must – can't ) be easy building bridges - they're complicated structures.
9. Khaled has a very good English accent. He ( must – can't ) have lived with an English family.
10. You ( must – can't ) be exhausted. You've been working very hard recently.
11. Faisal's car lights were on all night. Faisal ( must – can't ) have forgotten to switch the lights off.
12. He's not usually this late. He ( must – can't ) have got stuck in heavy traffic.
13. He ( must – can't ) have phoned me this morning. I was at home and I would have heard the telephone.
14. Ahmad's looking at the engine of his car. His car ( must - can't ) have broken down.
15. It looks like your friend's father's car. It ( might – can't ) be your friend's father's car.
16. Ali has just drunk two litres of water. He ( must – can't ) have been very thirsty.
17. He ( must – can't ) earn a lot of money to be able to afford that car.

**الحلول**

1. must 2. can't 3. might 4. must 5. must 6. may 7. must 8. can't 9. must 10. must 11. must 12. must 13. can't 14. Must 15. might  
16. must 17. must

**B. Correct the verbs in the brackets:**

1. She can't ..... ( forget ) to phone me. I'm sure she **hasn't forgotten**.
2. Khaled has a very good English accent. He must be ..... ( live ) with an English family.
3. Khaled has a very good English accent. He must have ..... ( live ) with an English family.
4. Faisal's car lights **were** on all night. Faisal must ..... ( forget ) to switch the lights off.
5. Ahmad's looking at the engine of his car. It must have ..... ( break down ).
6. The roads might ..... ( be ) very busy tonight. There's an important football match in town.
7. I've looked everywhere for the letter I wrote. If it isn't here, I must have ..... ( post ) it.
8. I may be ..... ( come ) next month. .

**الحلول**

1. have forgotten 2. living 3. lived 4. have forgotten 5. broken down 6. be 7. posted 8. coming



**C: Rewrite the following sentences ( use modal verb phrases ) – ( express possibility )**

1. I'm not sure but I think some parts of the desert were covered in plants and trees.  
.....
2. I'm sure that bats aren't birds – they don't have feathers. ....
3. These people are very thin, that's why I'm certain they haven't eaten much food lately.  
.....
4. I know it's true that the world is getting warmer, because the polar ice is melting.  
.....
5. The ground is wet here. That means this was almost certainly a lake once.  
.....
6. It's probably my brother. He usually rings at this time. ....
7. I'm sure it's the postman. He always comes at this time. ....
8. There's an important football match in my town tonight. I think the roads will probably be very busy.  
.....
9. My friend said she would phone me, but she hasn't. I'm sure she has not forgotten.  
.....
10. I feel sure that she has got good grades in her exams.  
.....
11. It isn't my uncle's car because it doesn't sound the same.  
.....
12. A new building is going up in our neighbourhood. I think it is probably a school.

**الحلول**

1. Some parts of the desert might have been covered in ...
2. Bats can't be birds – they don't have feathers.
3. These people are very thin. They can't have eaten much ...
4. The polar ice must be melting, because the world is getting warmer.
5. The ground is wet here. This must have been a.....
6. It might be my brother. He usually rings at this time.
7. It must be the postman. He always comes at this time.
8. There's an important football match in my town tonight. The roads might be very busy.
9. My friend said she would phone me, but she hasn't. She can't have forgotten.
10. She must have got good grades in her exams.
11. It can't be my uncle's car because it doesn't sound ....
12. A new building is going up in our neighbourhood. It might be a school. / They might be building a new school.

**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

<p><b>(1)1.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>2.B:</b> The Eden Project opened in the year 2000.</p> <p><b>A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> It is in the south-west of England.</p> <p><b>3.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> Millions of visitors come every year to see it.</p> <p><b>4.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> It has exotic plants.</p>	<p><b>(2)1.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B :</b> It is over 55m high.</p> <p><b>2.A:</b>.....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> It is 200m long.</p> <p><b>3.A:</b> .....?</p> <p><b>B:</b> It contains many thousands of exotic plants.</p> <p><b>A:</b> Would you like to visit the Eden Project? Why?</p> <p><b>4.B:</b> .....</p>
--	---



<p>(3)1.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> We arrived on Tuesday evening            2.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> the first thing we did was set up our camp.            3.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> The sky was very clear.            4.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> we could see millions of stars.</p>	<p>(4)1.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> Some plants grow in dry climates.            2.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> They store large quantities of water in their stems.            3.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> Plants have sharp thorns to protect themselves.            4.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> Some plants are protected by ants.</p>
<p>(5)1.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> Yesterday we went swimming.            2.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> We swam in the sea.            3.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> There are hundreds of species of fish and plants.            4.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> We spotted some really colourful fish.</p>	<p>(6)1.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> We visited the nesting site of the green sea turtles.            2.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> They come to the shore to lay their eggs.            3.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> We took photos with our underwater camera.            4.A: ..... ?  <b>B:</b> We're leaving tomorrow.</p>
<p><b>الحلول</b></p> <p>(1)1.A. When did the Eden Project open?      2.A. Where is it?      3.A. How many visitors come every year to see it? / Why do millions of visitors come every year? / When do millions of visitors come to visit it?      4.A. What does it have?            (2)1.A. How high is it?      2.A. How long is it?      3.A. What does it contain? / How many exotic plants does it contain            4.B. Yes, I would because it is educational.            (3)1.A. When did you arrive?      2.A. What was the first thing you did?      3.A. How was the sky?      4.A. What could you see?            (4)1.A. Where do some plants grow?      2.A. Where do they store large quantities of water? / What do they store?            3.A. Why do plants have sharp thorns?      4.A. How are some plants protected?            (5)1.A. When did you go swimming?      2.A. Where did you swim?      3.A. How many species of fish and plants are there?      4.A. What did you spot?            (6)1.A. What did you visit?      2.A. Why do they come to the shore?      3.A. How did you take photos?      4.A. When are you leaving?</p>	

**Complete the following sentences using clauses:**

- 1- I'm sure that ..... bats aren't birds.
- 2- Faisal's car lights were on all night. He must ..... have forgotten to switch the lights off.
- 3- Ahmad's looking at the engine of his car. his car must ..... have broken down.
- 4- Khaled has a very good English accent. He might ..... live with an English family.
- 5- Tareq wants to be a teacher when he graduates from university ..... He must be very interested in education.
- 6- Ali has just drunk two liters of water. He must ..... have been thirsty.

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

The Eden Project, (1)..... opened in the year 2000, is (2)..... living plant museum in the countryside in the south-west of England. (3)..... is a very popular attraction and millions of visitors come every year (4)..... see plants from all over the world growing in this special environment. Some plants grow outside, (5)..... many are in specially-built domes, called 'biomes', (6)..... the temperature and humidity are carefully controlled. The biomes (7)..... like giant greenhouses and one, the Humid Tropics biome, is (8)..... largest greenhouse in the world. It is over 55m high and 200m long (9)..... contains many thousands of exotic plants not found (10)..... England. One of the purposes of the project is to show how dependent human beings are (11)..... plants and to educate people on the importance of preserving our natural environment. Aside from the plant life, the Eden Project has fascinating interactive exhibits (12)..... people of all ages. Many of the visitors are groups of school children and the Eden Project combines educational value (13)..... scientific interest and a huge variety of spectacular plant life.



## الحلول

1. which 2. a 3. It 4. to 5. but 6. where 7. are 8. the 9. and 10. in 11. on 12. for 13. with

Ahmad and I have just got home from (1)..... two-day visit to Apamea. It was only a short visit (2)..... I will remember it forever. Apamea is an ancient site (3)..... the bank of the Orontes River. There (4)..... extensive ruins which tourists can walk around and (5)..... they can learn about many different civilisations. We arrived (6)..... Tuesday evening and the first thing we did (7)..... set up our camp. The sky was very clear (8)..... we could see millions of stars. The next morning was very hot but (9)..... visited the Roman city. There (10)..... enormous columns and high walls (11)..... I thought were amazing. The next day was another scorching hot day and we climbed up (12)..... hill to the medieval citadel. I didn't think the ruins were as interesting, but the views (13)..... the top were incredible and we could see (14)..... long way across Syria. As the sun went down over the plain, we saw the buildings change colour, from a dark red (15)..... pink and purple. It was (16)..... amazing sight I will never forget.

## الحلول

1. a 2. but 3. on 4. are 5. where 6. on 7. was 8. and 9. we 10. were 11. which 12. the 13. from 14. a 15. to 16. an

Some plants (1)..... grow in dry climates, for example cactuses, store large quantities of water (2)..... their stems. To protect themselves, (3)..... have sharp thorns. Animals will hurt themselves (4)..... they try to get to the water (5)..... these plants. Other plants, like stinging nettles, can 'inject' painful or irritating substances into their enemies (6)..... means of the sharp hairs on their leaves. Poison There (7)..... many plants which protect themselves by poisoning (8)..... enemies. In some cases the poison they contain (9)..... so powerful that it can kill any living thing which touches or eats them. The poison can (10)..... in the leaves, the seeds or berries, or in other parts of (11)..... plant.

## الحلول

1. which 2. in 3. they 4. if 5. from 6. by 7. are 8. their 9. is 10. be 11. the

It may seem very strange, (1)..... plants are always in danger from animals (2)..... want to feed on them. If this happens, the plant can (3)..... damaged or even killed. So, because their roots, trunks, leaves, flowers, fruits and seeds are under constant attack (4)..... mammals, insects or birds, plants (5)..... developed ways of protecting themselves from these enemies. Here are some of (6)..... ways plants stop animals from attacking (7)..... eating them. Some acacia trees in hot African countries are protected (8)..... ants which live permanently on their branches. If (9)..... animal starts to eat the tree's leaves, the ants attack (10)..... . Some plants, such as horse chestnut trees, are covered (11)..... a sticky substance, like wet paint, which can prevent insects from eating them. Sometimes this substance (12)..... so strong that insects' feet or wings get stuck and they cannot escape.

## الحلول

1. but 2. which 3. be 4. from 5. have 6. the 7. and 8. by 9. an 10. it 11. with 12. is

We (1)..... really enjoying our holiday in Lattakia. Yesterday we went swimming in (2)..... Mediterranean. It was the first time I (3)..... swum in the sea and it was really exciting! There are hundreds of species of fish (4)..... plants. We spotted some really colourful fish. We swam close to (5)..... and took photos with our underwater camera. This was the best moment (6)..... my trip. I'll show you the photos (7)..... I get home.

## الحلول

1. are 2. the 3. had 4. and 5. them 6. of 7. when



Near Lattakia there is(1)..... shipwreck. We swam over the wrecked boat(2)..... we saw many sea creatures swimming around it; it was one of (3)..... most interesting things I have ever seen! We wore wetsuits, (4)..... I found a little uncomfortable, although they meant(5)..... didn't feel the cold at all. We visited the nesting site (6)..... the green sea turtles that come to the shore in Lattakia to lay (7)..... eggs. Turtles are very rare in this part of the world so we had (8)..... be really quiet so we didn't disturb (9).....! Unfortunately the day (10)..... too short, and there was so much more to see. We are leaving tomorrow, (11)..... if we come to Syria again, I'm going to go back to Lattakia.

## الحلول

1. a 2. and 3. the 4. which 5. we 6. of 7. their 8. to 9. them 10. was 11. but

1. The Eden project, ..... opened in the year 2000, is a living plant museum in the countryside in the south-west of England.
2. Human beings are dependent ..... plants.
3. While she was at the Eden Project one girl became very interested..... biology.
4. I've never been keen..... museums.
5. The Eden Project is quite different..... a normal Museums.
6. On wet days the biomes are full..... visitors sheltering from rain.
7. Visiting the Eden Project makes you aware..... importance of plants.
8. The Eden Project is particularly famous..... its huge biomes.
9. It's expensive to get into the Eden Project, but we were very satisfied..... our visit.
10. It is..... interesting place to visit.
11. Ahmad and I have just got home from a two-day visit..... Apamea.
12. It was only a short visit..... I will remember it forever.
13. Apamea is..... ancient site on the bank of the Orontes River.
14. There are extensive ruins..... tourists can walk around and where they can learn about many different civilisations.
15. We arrived..... Tuesday evening and the first thing we did was set up our camp. The sky was very clear and we could see millions of stars. The next morning was very hot but we visited the Roman city.
16. There were enormous columns..... high walls which I thought were amazing.
17. The next day was another scorching hot day..... we climbed up the hill to the medieval citadel.
18. I didn't think the ruins were as interesting..... the views from the top were incredible and we could see a long way across Syria. As the sun went down over the plain, we saw the buildings change colour, from a dark red to pink and purple.
19. It was..... amazing sight I will never forget.

## الحلول

1. which 2. on 3. in 4. on 5. from 6. of 7. of 8. for 9. with 10. an 11. to 12. but 13. an 14. which 15. on 16. and 17. and 18. but 19. an

**Translate into English:**

1. إحدى أهداف المشروع هو لتعرض كم الكائنات البشرية تكون معتمدة على النباتات
2. في الأيام الماطرة تكون القباب مليئة بالزوار المحتمين من المطر
3. زيارة مشروع عدن تجعلك واعيا من أهمية النبات
4. مشروع عدن مشهور خصوصا بقببه الضخمة
5. لقد طورت النباتات طرقا لحماية انفسهم من الأعداء
6. يوجد نباتات عديدة التي تحمي انفسهم بواسطة تسميم اعدائهم



10. تُحمى بعض أشجار الاكاسيا في البلدان الافريقية بواسطة النمل  
11. أشجار الاكاسيا مشهورة بكونها محمية بواسطة النمل

- 1- One of the purposes of the project is to show how dependent human beings are on plants.
- 2- On wet days, the biomes are full of visitors sheltering from the rain.
- 3- Visiting the Eden Project makes you aware of the importance of plants.
- 4- The Eden Project is particularly famous for its huge biomes.
- 5- Plants have developed ways of protecting themselves from these enemies.
- 6- There are many plants, which protect themselves by poisoning their enemies.
- 7 - Some acacia trees in hot African countries are protected by ants
- 8 - The acacia tree is famous for being protected by ants.

\*Write an informal letter describing a visit. (Activity book.P.31)

\*Write your own letter to a friend, describing an interesting place you have visited. (Activity book.P.32)

\*You are going to write an account of a visit you made. (Student Book. P. 45)

**A Significant Event / An interesting Place / An interesting Story**

Dear Ali ,

I am enjoying my holiday in London. I am with my family. We visit wonderful places every day. we go to nice restaurants and have delicious food . We also go shopping and spend great time. Three days ago, I met a pretty girl. Her name was Hiba. I loved her very much and we would marry next year. Anyway, tomorrow, we will visit the British Museum and enjoy wonderful views from the London Eye. We will come back after a week. It`s really an interesting journey that I will never forget.

\*أكتب رسالة غير رسمية تصف زيارة. (كتاب النشاط ص 31)

\*أكتب رسالة خاصة بك لصديق واصفها مكاناً ممتعاً قد زرتة. (كتاب النشاط ص 32)

\*ستكتب وصفاً لزيارة قمت بها. (كتاب الطالب ص 45)

حدثاً هاماً / مكان ممتع / قصة ممتعة

عزيزي علي:

إننا أستمتع بعطلتي في لندن، إنني مع عائلتي، نحن نزور أماكن رائعة كل يوم، نذهب إلى مطاعم جميلة ونتناول طعاماً لذيذاً، نحن أيضاً نذهب للتسوق ونمضي وقتاً رائعاً، منذ ثلاثة أيام قابلت فتاة جميلة اسمها هيبه، أنا أحببتها كثيراً ونحن سوف نتزوج العام القادم، على أي حال، غداً سوف نزر المتحف البريطاني وسنستمتع بالمناظر الرائعة من عين لندن، سوف نعود بعد إسبوع ، إنها حقاً رحلة ممتعة التي أنا سوف لن أنسى



## Unit 6

## Students` Book ( Unit 6 )

Sand	رمل	Mammals	ثدييات
Gazelles	غزلان	Weigh	يزن
High	عالي	Speeds	سرعان
Horned	له قرون	Per hour	بالساعة
Extinct	منقرض	Jumpers	قافزون
Months	أشهر	Agility	رشاقة- خفة الحركة
Individuals	أفراد	Evade	يتجنب- يهرب
Congregate	يجمع	Consuming	يستهلك
Herds	قطعان	Shoots	نباتات
Ideally	بشكل مثالي	Roots	جذور
Suited	ملائم- مناسب	Leaves	أوراق
Heads	رؤوس	Stems	جذوع
Sand colored	بلون الرمال	Overall	إجمالي
Bodies	أجسام	Bodyweight	وزن الجسم
Blend into	ممزوج الي- مندمج الي	Camouflaging	تمويه
		Predators	حيوانات مفترسة
Shallow	سطحي	The hottest	الأكثر حرارة- الأحر
Pits	حفرات- يحفر	Season	فصل
Lie	يتمدد- يكذب	Dig	يحفر
Cooler	أبرد	Soil	تربة
Loss	خسارة	Windfall	هبوب الريح
Habitat	موطن	Extra	إضافي
Hunting	الصيد	Extinct	منقرض
Efforts	جهود	Polar	قطبي
Breeding	تكاثر	Melting	يذوب- ذوبان
Release into	يتحرر الي- ينطلق الي	Global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
Wild	بري	Ice	جليد
Battle	معركة	Bats	خفافيش
Abilities	مقدرات	Feathers	ريش
Location	موقع	Thin	رقيق- نحيف
Typical	نموذجي	Different from	مختلف عن
Lifestyle	نمط حياة	Dependent on	معتمد على
Diet	حمية/ غذاء	Aware of	واعي لـ
Warm	دافئ	Famous for	مشهور بـ
Blood	دم	Interested in	مهتم بـ
Fur	فرو	Located	واقع - متموضع
Hair	شعر	The capital	العاصمة
Skin	جلد	Link	رابط - يربط - يصل
Lay	يتمدد - يستلقي	Motorways	طرق سريعة
Eggs	بيض	Airport	مطار
Soft	ناعم	Passengers	مسافرين
Shells	قشور	Watering	سقاية
Feathers	ريش	Directed	موجه
Birds	طيور	Man-made	مصنوع يدويا
Reptiles	زواحف	Tunnels	أنفاق
Vulture	نسر	Farms	مزارع



Snake	أفعى	Six-lane	سنة مسارات
Bat	خفاش	Roads	طرق
Camel	جمل	Mixture	مزيج
Eagle	نسر	Desalinated	تحلى - محلى
Lizard	سحلية	Include	تتضمن
Mouse	فأر	Tomatoes	الطماطم - البندورة
Owl	بومة	Cucumbers	خيار
Parrot	ببغاء	Lettuce	خس
Rabbit	أرنب	Strawberries	الفراولة - الفريز
Turtle	سلحفاة	Alone	وحيدا
Report	تقرير	Permanent	دائم
Owners	مالكين - أصحاب	Damaged/ harmed	أضر - أذى
In favour of	لصالح - مؤيد لـ	Opposite	ضد - معاكس
Wetlands	أهوار	Temporary	موقت
Suitable	مناسب	Misread	يسىء قراءة
Titles	عناوين	Reread	يعيد القراءة
Comment	تعليق	Left	متبقي
Respect	يحترم	Assistant	مساعد محل
Community	مجتمع	Overcharge	يطلب زيادة
In particular	بالتحديد	Undercharge	يطلب أقل
Burgeoning	يزدهر - ازدهار	Overcooked	مطبوخ كثير (مبالغ بطبخه)
Consensus	اجتماع - اتفاق - جماعي	Undercooked	نبي (غير مطبوخ جيدا)
Convinced with	مقتنع بـ	Obviously	بوضوح
Utilize	يستخدم - يستفيد	Be careful	كن حذرا
Chemicals	مواد كيميائية	Cassette	كاسيت
Misuse	يسىء استخدام	Overwind	يلف كثيرا (ينعطف كثيرا)
Reuse	يعيد استخدام	Rewind	يعيد لف
<b>Activity Book ( Unit 6 )</b>			
Common	شائع - مشهور	Emperor	إمبراطور
Icebergs	جبال جليدية	Penguins	بطاريق
Kangaroos	الكنغر	Lizards	سحليات
Relatives	أقارب	Arctic	القطب الشمالي
Wallabies	صغار الكنغر	Particular	محدد
Wombats	ومبات (حيوان جرابي)	Habitats	مواطن
Bears	دببة	Terrain	تضاريس / منطقة
Marsupials	جربيات	Survive	ينجو - يبقى حيا
Pouch	كيس - جراب	Pocket	جيب - كيس
Plains	سهول	Skin	جلد
Rocky	صخري	Landscape	منظر طبيعي
Remote	بعيد	Suited	ملائم
Regions	مناطق	Flat	شقة - مسطح
Jerboas	جربوع	Block	إنهاء / مجمع
Extremely	للغاية	Float	يعوم - يطفو - عربات
Front	امامي	Lay	يتمدد
Blood	دم	Mining	التعدين (استخراج المعدن)
Nests	اعشاش	Coast	ساحل
Grass	عشب	Wildlife	حياة برية
Twigs	اغصان صغيرة - عيدان	Present	يقدم



Feathers	ريش	Sides	جوانب
Steal-stole - stolen	يسرق	Argument	نقاش / جدال
Hunted	إصطاد	Exist	يوجد
Tusk	انياب	Zoos	حدائق حيوانات
Paths	طرق ترابية	Keeping	يبقى- إبقاء
Fur	فراء	Cruel	قاسي - وحشي
Bred	تكاثر - تناسل	Curious	فضولي
Giant	عملاق	Placed/ situated	متموضع - متوضع
Observe	يراقب	Greenhouses	بيت زجاجي
Behavior	سلوك - تصرف	Gases	غازات
Captivity	اسر	Harmful	مؤذي/ضار
Cages	أقفاص	Mars	المريخ
Legs	ساقين	Methane	غاز الميثان
Enable	يتمكن	Keep	يبقى - يحفظ
Hop	ينط - يقفز	The heat	الحرارة
Predators	مفترسون	Planet	كوكب
Nocturnal	ليلي	Freezing	متجمد
Half	نصف	Enormous	ضخم
Conditions	ظروف	Quantities	كميات
Far	بعيد	Fossil	مستحاثة
Fuels	وقود	Melting	يذوب - ذائب
Coal	فحم	Burning	يحترق - احتراق
burn	يحرق	Worried about	قلق بشأن
Rising	مرتفعة	Posted	مرسلة
Heavy	غزيرة - كثيفة - ثقيلة	Exhausted	منهك - متعب
Released	منطلق - منبعث	Meeting	مقابلة - اجتماع
Atmosphere	الجو	Occupy	يحتل مساحة - يشغل
The ice	الجليد	Capital	عاصمة
Eventually	أخيرا	Popular	شعبي - مشهور
Coast	ساحل	Tourist	سائح
Flooded	مغمور بالماء	Attraction	معلم سياحي
Warning	تحذير	Destination	وجهة - مكان مقصود
authorities	سلطات	Monuments	نصب تذكارية ( اضرحة )
Introduce	يقدم	Jewelry	مجوهرات
Human beings	البشر	Lucky	محظوظ
Poles	القطبين	Panda	دب الباندا
Individual	فردى	Display	يعرض - معرض
Immediate	مباشر - حالى	Hardly	بصعوبة - بحدّة
The waiter	النادل - الخادم	Temporary	مؤقت
Throw away	يرمي	Permanent	دائم
Bananas	موز	Career	مهنة
Survival	البقاء	Engineer	مهندس
Historical	تاريخي	Bill	فاتورة
Objection	اعتراض	Country of origin	بلد المنشأ
Captivity	اسر - سجن	Mining	استصلاح - استخراج - تنقيب
Cage	قفص	Path	طريق ترابي
Move a bout	يتجول	By means	بواسطة
Stare at	يحدق	Cruel	وحشي - قاسي



Examine	يفحص	Bred	متكاثر - متوالد
Curious	فضولي	Breeding	تكاثر - توالد
Greenhouse gases	غازات بيوت بلاستيكية	Giant	عملاق
Mars	المريخ	Set free	يحرر - يطلق سراح
Heat	الحرارة	Freely	بحرية
Extreme	شديد - قاسي	Observe	يراقب
Floods	فيضانات	Fossil fuels	وقود مستحاثات
Worse	أسوء	Leading scientists	العلماء القادة - الرواد

### The Sand Gazelle

The sand gazelle, or goitered gazelle, is a horned animal that lives across the Arabian Gulf and North Africa. Originally found in all Arab countries, it is now extinct in Iraq, Kuwait and Yemen and endangered everywhere else, including Syria. In the summer months, sand gazelles live in small family groups of around ten individuals. During the winter, they congregate in larger herds. They are ideally suited to the desert environment with their white heads and sand-coloured bodies. This allows them to blend into the desert, camouflaging them from predators. Sand gazelles are small mammals, weighing only 20 kg. However, they are very quick and have been known to reach speeds of almost 100 km per hour. They are excellent jumpers and use their speed and agility to evade the attention of predators.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. Which regions does the sand gazelle live in?
2. How do sand gazelles change their habits in different seasons?
3. What do sand gazelles look like?
4. How does the body of the sand gazelle protect it from harm in the desert?
5. What helps sand gazelles to camouflage?
6. How much does the sand gazelle weigh?
7. What is the top speed of sand gazelles? ( How fast are sand gazelles?)
8. What does **their** refer to ?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

9. groups of animals which feed their young with milk
10. no longer alive or in existence
11. the ability to move quickly and easily

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:

12. Sand gazelles have no horns.
13. Sand gazelles are extinct in Syria and endangered in Iraq.
14. Sand gazelles are large reptiles.
15. The sand gazelle's natural habitat is the forest.
16. The agility of sand gazelles helps them to run slowly and attack predators.

#### الاجوبه

1. the Arabian Gulf and North Africa. 2. In the summer, they live in small family groups of around ten individuals and during the winter, they congregate in larger herds. 3. They have white heads and sand-coloured bodies. 4. They are ideally suited to the desert environment with their white heads and sand-coloured bodies. This allows them to blend into the desert, camouflaging them from predators. They use their speed and agility to evade the attention of predators. 5. their white heads and sand-coloured bodies. 6. 20 kg 7. almost 100 km / h 8. sand gazelles. 9. mammals 10. extinct 11. agility 12. no 13. ~~extinct~~ endangered - ~~endangered~~ extinct 14. ~~large reptiles~~ small mammals 15. ~~forest~~ desert 16. ~~slowly~~ quickly - ~~attack~~ evade the attention of

Sand gazelles eat around 6 kg of plants per day – consuming the shoots, roots, leaves and stems of desert plants – around a third of their overall bodyweight. They drink 3 litres of water per day and in the hottest season dig shallow pits and lie on the cooler soil. The sand gazelle is in danger of extinction, mainly due to habitat loss and hunting. However, there have been some efforts to save them, and some countries have begun breeding them for release into the wild. There have been some successes, but the battle to save them and other native species continues. In Syria, there is an increasing awareness about the importance of saving wild animals.



**Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the natural diet of a sand gazelle?
2. What are the two main threats to a sand gazelle?
3. Is anything being done to save the gazelles? Explain.

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

4. holes in the ground
5. without depth – not deep
6. eating

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

7. Sand gazelles feed on small mammals and drink three litres of water per hour.
8. The sand gazelle digs deep holes in the ground and lies on the warmer soil.
9. The efforts to save endangered sand gazelles have stopped.

الاجوبه

1. desert plants 2. habitat loss and hunting 3. Yes, some countries have begun breeding them for release into the wild.
4. pits 5. shallow 6. consuming 7. ~~small mammals~~ desert plants ~~hour~~ day 8. ~~deep~~ shallow - ~~warmer~~ cooler 9. ~~have stopped~~ continue

Al Ain, an ancient oasis city, is the second biggest city in Abu Dhabi. It is located 160 km east of the capital and is linked to Abu Dhabi City by fast motorways. It takes about 90 minutes to drive between the two cities. Al Ain's International Airport, which was opened in 1994, has over half a million passengers each year. In the past, Al Ain was famous for its traditional system of watering the land. Water was directed through man-made tunnels to local farms. Now, its modern system ensures that an area of 100 square km around Al Ain is covered in trees and other plants. Even the six-lane roads in the city are lined with many different kinds of trees and other plants. Everything is watered by a mixture of recycled waste water and desalinated water. Many salad crops are produced by farmers in the area around the city. These include tomatoes, cucumbers, lettuce and strawberries.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What links Al Ain to Abu Dhabi City?
2. How far is Al Ain from the capital?
3. Describe the traditional system of irrigation in Al Ain.
4. Where does the water that irrigates trees and other plants come from?
5. Where are the salad crops planted?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. a place with water and plants in a desert
7. very wide roads
8. people who are travelling

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

9. Al Ain has no airport.
10. Al Ain still uses the traditional system of irrigation.

الاجوبه

1. fast motorways 2. 160 km 3. Water was directed through man-made tunnels to local farms. 4. It is a mixture of recycled waste water and desalinated water. 5. in the area around the city of Al Ain. 6. oasis 7. motorways 8. passengers
9. ~~no~~ an 10. Al Ain used the traditional system of irrigation in the past.

**Animals and their habitats**

Animals live everywhere on Earth, in every terrain and in all climates. The place where an animal lives is called its habitat and most animals can only survive in one or two different habitats. For example, whales are sea creatures and cannot live in fresh water; lizards live in hot climates and would die if **they** were moved to the Arctic. Some animals migrate between two habitats at different times of the year. In this article, you'll find about two animals which can live in different habitats, and one which has adapted to a particular environment. There are seventeen different species of penguins, including the famous Emperor penguins and the common Chinstrap penguins. All of these live in the southern hemisphere – many in Antarctica around the South Pole. But some live in warmer places, for example on the coasts



**Answer the following questions:**

1. In which kind of habitat can whales live?
2. Name two species of penguins?
3. How are penguins different from many other animals?
4. What do all penguins have in common?
5. How many Chinstrap penguins are there?
6. What does **they** refer to ?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

7. the third planet in the solar system
8. not salty
9. move to a different place and return again to the original home

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

10. All animals are adapted to life in one or two different habitats.
11. Lizards have adapted to life in cold places and would survive in the Arctic.

**الاجوبه**

1. in the sea 2. Emperor penguins and Chinstrap Penguins. 3. They can live in different habitats. 4. They live in the southern hemisphere.
5. 13 million 6. lizards. 7. Earth 8. fresh 9 migrate 10. ~~All~~ Most 11. ~~cold~~ hot ~~survive~~ die

and their close relatives, wallabies, are only found naturally in Australia and Papua New Guinea. Like wombats and koala bears, kangaroos are marsupials, which means that when young are born they are carried by their mothers in a pouch. There are forty-five species of kangaroos and wallabies and they live in every kind of habitat, from open plains to forests and rocky deserts. Tree kangaroos live in remote and mountainous forest regions and have adapted to life in trees. Unlike other kangaroos, they cannot move very fast on the ground. The jerboa lives all over Asia and Northern Africa. This animal lives in hot desert climates and is common in the Syrian Desert. There are 25 different species of jerboa and they are specially adapted to live in extremely dry climates. They have very short front legs and long back legs which enable them to hop quickly over the ground to escape predators. They are nocturnal animals, which means they sleep during the day.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What is special about kangaroos and similar animals?
2. Define a marsupial.
3. How are kangaroos different from many other animals?
4. Where do tree kangaroos live?
5. In what ways have jerboas adapted to their environment?
6. What kind of climate do Jerboas live in?
7. What do jerboas do during the day?
8. Which type of animals has the most different species: Penguins, Kangaroos or Jerboas?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

9. changed to be better suited to a situation
10. happening often or existing in many places
11. a bag or pocket of skin

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

12. Tree kangaroos can run very quickly like all other kangaroos.
13. Jerboas are rarely found in the Syrian desert.
14. Jerboas can hop very slowly because they are nocturnal animals.

**الاجوبه**

1. They are marsupials. 2. It is an animal that carries its young in a pouch.
3. They live in every kind of habitat, from open plains to forests and rocky deserts. (They have adapted to life in different habitats.)
4. They live in remote and mountainous forest regions and have adapted to life in trees.
5. They have very short front legs and long back legs which enable them to hop quickly over the ground to escape predators.
6. hot, desert climate 7. They sleep. 8. kangaroos. 9. adapted 10. common 11. pouch
12. ~~can~~ can't - ~~like~~ unlike 13. ~~rarely~~ commonly 14. ~~slowly~~ quickly - ~~are nocturnal animals~~ - have very short front legs and long back legs.



Tree kangaroos, which are found only in the rainforests of Australia and West Papua, are in danger of becoming extinct for two main reasons. Firstly, they are hunted for their meat and fur, and secondly their natural habitat is being destroyed by human activities such as **mining** and farming. For several years, the Tree Kangaroo Conservation Programme has been working hard to protect a particular species, Matschie's tree kangaroo, which lives only on the northeast coast of Papua New Guinea. As part of their work, special protected wildlife areas have been created by the organisation, and the people who live here have been taught how to protect tree kangaroos and other rare animals in their region.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What's wrong with tree kangaroos?
2. Why are tree kangaroos threatened with extinction?
3. Why are tree kangaroos hunted?
4. Where can Matschie's tree kangaroos be found?
5. How are rare animals protected by the Tree Kangaroo Conservation Programme?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. no longer alive or in existence
7. to stop harm or damage
8. not seen or found often

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

9. Activities like mining are preserving the natural habitat of tree kangaroos.
10. The Tree Kangaroo Conservation Programme teaches people how to hunt common animals.

الاجوبه  
 1. They are in danger of extinction. 2. They are hunted for their meat and fur and their natural habitat is being destroyed by human activities such as mining and farming. 3. They are hunted for their meat and fur. 4. on the northeast coast of Papua New Guinea. 5. Special protected wildlife areas have been created by the organisation and the people who live here have been taught how to protect tree kangaroos and other rare animals in their region. 6. extinct 7. protect 8. rare 9. ~~preserving~~ destroying 10. ~~hunt~~ protect – ~~common~~ rare

**The arguments with and against zoos**

Zoos exist all over the world because people want to see animals that they cannot see in their own country. They have always been popular, especially with children. However, some people believe that they are unnatural habitats and that keeping animals in zoos is cruel. I will start by considering two arguments in favour of zoos. First of all, many people, including environmentalists, believe that zoos help to protect animals which are endangered. In zoos all around the world, rare animals are bred so they increase in number and are saved from extinction. In China, numbers of the endangered giant panda have begun to increase following successful breeding in zoos. Eventually animals can be set free to live in the wild again. Secondly, zoos are educational. People who visit zoos can observe unusual animals up close and learn about their behaviour. I will now move on to the arguments against zoos. The main objection to zoos is that it is unnatural for wild animals to be kept in captivity. They often have to live in small cages where they cannot move about freely. Another argument against zoos is that they may be located in places where the climate is very different from the climate of the animal's country of origin. Personally, I do not have strong feelings about zoos. I believe that they can help to protect and preserve endangered species, but I also think that it is wrong to force animals to live in unnatural conditions simply so that curious human beings can stare at them.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do people visit zoos?
2. How do zoos help to protect rare animals?
3. How do zoos have an educational purpose?
4. Where are animals often put in zoos?
5. What is the writer's opinion about zoos?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. an argument against
7. examining and discussing
8. having a strong desire to know about something

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**



9. The endangered giant pandas have become extinct after they were put in zoos.
10. It is unnatural for a wild animal to live in the wild.
11. The climate in the places where zoos are located is always similar to that of the animals' habitat.

#### الاجوبه

1. To see animals they can't see in their own country. 2. In zoos, rare animals are bred so they increase in number and are saved from extinction. 3. People can observe unusual animals up close and learn about their behaviour. 4. in small cages. 5. He is not with, not against zoos. He doesn't not have strong feelings about zoos. 6. objection 7. considering 8. curious
9. ~~become extinct~~ begun to increase 10. ~~the wild~~ small cages 11. ~~is always similar to~~ may be very different from

### Greenhouse gases : good or bad?

We usually think that greenhouse gases are harmful, but without these gases the climate of the Earth would be like the climate of Mars: too cold for human beings to survive. Greenhouse gases, which include carbon dioxide and methane, keep the heat of the sun in and prevent our planet from freezing. However, for the last 200 years people have been using enormous quantities of fossil fuels like coal, gas and oil. When these fuels are burnt, they produce large amounts of carbon dioxide and this keeps more of the sun's heat in. The result is that the temperature of the Earth is rising year by year. This is leading to more extreme weather high winds and heavy rain, which produce storms and floods. The problem is made worse by the fact that we are destroying the world's rainforests. Trees naturally consume carbon dioxide, but because there are fewer trees, more carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere. Because of the increase in the Earth's temperature, the ice at the north and south poles is melting, and this is causing sea levels to rise. Eventually, many areas of land which are now on the coast will be flooded. Leading scientists are warning that if the authorities don't introduce new laws to reduce greenhouse gas increases now, the results could be disastrous for life on Earth.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. What would happen if there were no greenhouse gases?
2. How do greenhouse gases prevent the Earth from freezing?
3. How long have human beings been using large amounts of fossil fuels?
4. Where do large amounts of carbon dioxide come from?
5. What happens when carbon dioxide keeps more of the sun's heat in?
6. Give two examples of extreme weather.
7. Why shouldn't we destroy the world's rainforests?
8. What is the effect of the rise in the Earth's temperature?
9. What could happen if no immediate action was made?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

10. weather conditions in an area over a period of time
11. make something less
12. causing damage or injury

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:

13. Human beings can live on Mars because of greenhouse gases.
14. The temperature of the Earth is decreasing because the sun is getting hotter.
15. Flooding is an example of extreme weather.
16. Trees and forests produce greenhouse gases like carbon monoxide.
17. Sea levels will go down if the ice at the poles melts.
18. Scientists want every individual to take immediate action.

#### الاجوبه

1. The climate of the Earth would be like the climate of Mars: too cold for human beings to survive. 2. They keep the heat of the sun in.
3. for the last 200 years. 4. burning fossil fuels. 5. The temperature of the Earth rises. 6. high winds and heavy rain 7. Trees naturally consume carbon dioxide, but because there are fewer trees, more carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere. 8. The ice at the north and south poles is melting, and this is causing sea levels to rise. Eventually, many areas of land which are now on the coast will be flooded.
9. The results could be disastrous for life on Earth. 10. climate 11. reduce 12. harmful 13. ~~can~~ can't - of greenhouse gases it is too cold.
14. ~~decreasing~~ increasing - ~~the sun is getting hotter~~ more of the sun's heat is being kept in by greenhouse gases.
15. ~~an example~~ the result 16. ~~produce~~ consume - ~~monoxide~~ dioxide 17. ~~down~~ up 18. ~~every individual~~ authorities



• **Passive Voice المبنى للمجهول**: نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون الفاعل مجهولا او عندما نركز على النشاط فقط او على

المفعول به ولتحويل الجملة من المعلوم إلى المجهول نقوم بما يلي:

- 1- نحذف الفاعل من اول الجملة
- 2- نضع المفعول به في اول الجملة
- 3- نضع فعل الكون المناسب لزمن الجملة
- 4- نحول الفعل إلى اسم المفعول ( P.P ( V3 )
- 5- إذا كان الفاعل هاما او اذا كان اسما ظاهرا وليس ضمير شخصي نضع ( by بواسطة ) ثم الفاعل

	( Active ) مبنى للمعلوم		( Passive ) مبنى للمجهول
الزمن	مفعول به + فعل + فاعل S + V + O.	→	V3. + فعل كون + مفعول به O + be + V3.
حاضر بسيط مثال	S + V1 / ( V1)s + O. The boy eats the apple.	→ →	O + am / is / are + V3. The apple is eaten.
ماضي بسيط مثال	S + V2 + O. The boy ate the apple.	→ →	O + was / were + V3. The apple was eaten.
حاضر مستمر مثال	S + am / is / are + (V1) ing + O. The boy is eating the apple.	→ →	O + am / is / are + being + V3. The apple is being eaten.
ماضي مستمر مثال	S + was / were + (V1) ing + O. The boy was eating the apple.	→ →	O + was / were + being + V3. The apple was being eaten.
حاضر تام مثال	S + have / has + V3 + O. The boy has eaten the apple.	→ →	O + have / has + been + V3. The apple has been eaten.
ماضي تام مثال	S + had + V3 + O. The boy had eaten the apple.	→ →	O + had + been + V3. The apple had been eaten.
مستقبل بسيط مثال	S + will / must / .... + V1 + O. The boy will eat the apple.	→ →	O + will / must ... + be + V3. The apple will be eaten.
مستقبل تام مثال	S + will / must .... + have + V3 + O. The boy will have eaten the apple.	→ →	O + will / must ... + have + been + V3. The apple will have been eaten.

- **ملاحظه:** للانتقال من زمن الى زمن فقط يتغير شكل فعل الكون ويجب الانتباه للمفعول به اذا كان مفرد او جمع وليس بالضرورة ان يكون مثل الفاعل مفرد او جمع

- ( V3 ) اسم المفعول - ( V2 ) ماضي بسيط - ( V1 ) فعل مصدر - ( O ) مفعول به - ( S ) فاعل

- had to → ماضي → have to / has to / must



**A. Rewrite the following sentences ( change into the passive voice)**

1. In some countries, law protects the nests of rare birds.  
.....
2. Throughout history people have hunted elephants for their tusks.  
.....
3. People have turned their natural habitats into farmland or building land.  
.....
4. Elephants have changed the natural environment.  
.....
5. Elephants make paths through the areas where they live and other animals have used these.  
.....
6. Many thousands of people visit Damascus to see historical monuments from different periods of history.  
.....
7. Camouflage protects sand gazelles from predators.  
.....
8. They opened Al Ain's International Airport in 1994.  
.....
9. Fast motorways link Al Ain to Abu Dhabi City.  
.....
10. Farmers produce many salad crops in the area around the city.  
.....
11. The organisation has created special protected wildlife areas.  
.....
12. People hunt tree kangaroos for their meat and fur.  
.....
13. Human activities are destroying their natural habitat.  
.....
14. Many peoples occupied Damascus before becoming the Syrian capital.  
.....

**الحلول**

1. In some countries, the nests of rare birds are protected by law. 2. Throughout history elephants have been hunted for their tusks.
3. Their natural habitats have been turned into farmland..... 4. The natural environment has been changed by elephants.
5. Paths are made by elephants through the areas where they live and these have been used by other animals.
6. Damascus is visited by many thousands of people to see historical ..... 7. Sand gazelles are protected from predators by camouflage. 8. Al Ain's International Airport was opened in 1994. 9. Al Ain is linked to Abu Dhabi City by fast motorways.
10. Many salad crops are produced by farmers in the .... 11. Special protected wildlife areas have been created by the organisation.
12. Tree kangaroos are hunted (are being hunted – have been hunted) for their meat and fur. 13. Their natural habitat is being destroyed (has been destroyed) by human activities. 14. Damascus was occupied by many peoples before becoming the Syrian capital.

**B. Rewrite the following sentences ( change into the active voice)**

1. Sand gazelles are protected from predators by camouflage.  
.....
2. They are excellent jumpers and their speed and agility are used to evade the attention of predators.  
.....
3. If sand gazelles are being threatened, they can run away.  
.....
4. In recent decades, efforts have been made to save endangered species in Syria.  
.....
5. Al Ain is linked to Abu Dhabi City by fast motorways. ....
6. Al Ain's International Airport was opened in 1994. ....
7. Everything is watered by a mixture of recycled waste water and desalinated water.



8. In some countries, the nests of rare birds are protected by law.

9. Elephants have been prevented from migrating to find food and water.

10. Tree kangaroos are hunted ( are being hunted – have been hunted ) for their meat and fur.

11. Their natural habitat is being destroyed ( has been destroyed ) by human activities.

### الحلول

1. Camouflage protects sand gazelles from predators. 2. They are excellent jumpers, and they use their speed and agility to evade the .....  
 3. If enemies are threatening sand gazelles, they can run away. 4. In recent decades, they have made efforts to save .....  
 5. Fast motorways link Al Ain to Abu Dhabi City. 6. They opened Al Ain's International Airport in 1994.  
 7. A mixture of recycled waste water and desalinated water waters everything. 8. In some countries, law protects the nests of rare birds.  
 9. They have prevented elephants from migrating to find food and water. 10. They hunt ( are hunting – have hunted ) tree kangaroos for their meat and fur. 11. Human activities are destroying (have destroyed) their natural habitat.

### C. Correct the verbs in brackets:

- Al Ain's International Airport..... ( open ) in 1994.
- Yesterday he ..... ( be offered ) two jobs.
- My family lived in a lovely apartment, which was ..... ( provide ) by my father's job.
- After the earthquake of Agadir in 1960, the city ..... ( evacuate ).
- Throughout history elephants **have been** ..... ( hunt ) for their tusks.
- Sand gazelles ..... ( protect ) from predators **by** camouflage.
- They are excellent jumpers and their speed and agility ..... ( use ) to evade the attention of predators.
- Elephants **have been** ..... ( prevent ) from migrating to find food and water.
- In **recent** decades, efforts ..... ( make ) to save endangered species in Syria.
- Al Ain ..... ( link ) to Abu Dhabi City **by** fast motorways.
- Al Ain ..... ( locate ) 160 km east of the capital.
- In the past, water ..... ( direct ) through man-made tunnels to local farms.
- Now, an area of 100 square km around Al Ain ..... ( cover ) in trees and other plants.
- The six-lane roads in Al Ain..... ( line ) with many different kinds of trees and other plants.
- Everything ..... ( water ) **by** a mixture of recycled waste water and desalinated water.
- Many salad crops ..... ( produce ) **by** farmers in the area around the city.
- Birds' nests ..... ( often build ) at the top of trees where the eggs will be safe.
- Many nests ..... ( make ) from grass, twigs or feathers.
- If the nests of rare birds ..... ( damage ), or their eggs ..... ( steal ), the people who do the damage have to pay a large fine.
- In some countries, the nests of rare birds ..... ( protect ) **by** law.
- Tree kangaroos ..... ( find ) in the rainforests of Australia.
- Tree kangaroos ..... ( hunt ) for their meat and fur.
- The natural habitat of kangaroos **is being** ..... ( destroy ) by human activities.
- The people **have been** ..... ( teach ) how to protect tree kangaroos.
- Damascus ..... ( be ) located in the south-west of Syria.
- Damascus ..... ( occupy ) **by** many peoples before becoming the Syrian capital.
- A huge variety of items ..... ( sell ) in the souks of Damascus.

### الحلول

1. was opened 2. was offered 3. provided 4. was evacuated 5. hunted 6. are protected 7. are used 8. prevented 9. have been made  
 10. is linked 11. is located 12. was directed 13. is covered 14. are lined 15. is watered 16. are produced 17. are often built 18. are made  
 19. are damaged – are stolen 20. are protected 21. are found 22. are hunted 23. Destroyed 24. taught 25. is 26. was occupied 27. is sold



## ازمنة متنوعه

1. Thunder and lightning .....( be ) part of weather.
2. It .....( take) 90 minutes to drive between the two cities.
3. Al Ain's International Airport .....( have) over half a million passengers **each year**.
4. Now, its modern system .....( ensure) that an area around Al Ain is covered in trees.
5. Salad crops.....(include) tomatoes, cucumbers, lettuce and strawberries
6. Matschie's tree kangaroo .....( live) on the northeast coast.
7. The place where an animal .....( live ) is called its habitat.
8. You must be exhausted. You.....( work) very hard recently.
9. Damascus is a popular tourist destination; thousands of people .....(visit) the city to see historical monuments from different periods of history.
10. The famous Hejaz train station .....( transport) passengers to Amman.
11. In **recent** years many companies .....( build) their offices in the new part of the city.

## الحلول

1. are 2. takes 3. has 4. ensures 5. include 6. lives 7. lives 8. have been working 9. visit 10. transports 11. have built

## Animals

1. A bat is a ( reptile – **mammal** ), a camel is a ( bird – **mammal**) and an eagle is a ( **bird** – reptile ).
2. A lizard is a ( **reptile** – mammal) , a mouse is a ( bird – **mammal**) and an owl is a ( **bird** – mammal).
3. A rabbit is a ( **mammal** – reptile), a snake is a ( **reptile** – bird) and a turtle is a ( **reptile** – bird ).
4. A vulture is a ( reptile – **bird**). 5. (**Mammals** – Reptiles ) feed their young with milk.
6. Both reptiles and birds ( fly – **lay eggs**). 7. ( Mammals – **Reptiles** ) have dry skin and cold blood.
8. ( **Mammals** – Reptiles) have warm blood. 9. Bats, eagles and owls have ( dry skin – **wings** ).
10. A ( **deer** - vulture ) is not a bird.

## متنوعات

1. ( Originally – Last ) means at first or in the beginning.
2. If we ( protect – attack ) something or someone, we stop it from being harmed or damaged.
3. The opposite of temporary is ( rare – permanent).
4. The area where an animal normally lives and sleeps is called its ( zoo – habitat).
5. To ( die – survive ) means to stay alive, especially in difficult situations.
6. Animals ( consume – produce ) only as much food as they need.
7. Plants grow in ( soil – dust ).
8. If you are very lucky, you may see the giant panda in its natural (display - habitat).
9. Most of Africa has a very hot, dry (climate - weather).
10. Some plants grow well here even though the (dust - soil ) is poor and it hardly ever rains.
11. Ali doesn't want a (permanent - temporary) job – he wants a serious career as an engineer.
12. We must do something about climate change to ( protect - survive) our way of life.

## الحلول

1. Originally 2. protect 3. permanent 4. habitat 5. survive 6. consume 7. soil 8. habitat 9. climate 10. soil 11. temporary 12. protect

**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

(1)1.A: .....	(2) 1.A: .....
B: The sand gazelle is a horned animal.	B : The sand gazelle is in danger due to habitat loss and hunting.
2.A: .....	2.A: .....
B: It lives across the Arabian Gulf and North Africa.	B: During the winter, they congregate in larger herds.
3.A: .....	3.A: .....
B: They drink 3 litres of water per day.	B: They dig shallow pits to lie on the cooler soil.
4.A: .....	A: Which animal do you like ? Why ?
B: Sand gazelles eat around 6 kg of plants per day.	4.B: .....



<p>(3)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Al Ain is the second biggest city in Abu Dhabi.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: It is located 160 km east of the capital.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: It is linked to Abu Dhabi City by fast motorways.</p> <p>4.A: .....?</p> <p>B: It takes about 90 minutes to drive between the two cities.</p>	<p>(4)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: There are seventeen different species of penguins.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: All penguins live in the southern hemisphere.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: The jerboa hops quickly to escape predators.</p> <p>4.A: .....?</p> <p>B: They live in extremely dry climates.</p>
<p>(5)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Birds' nests are often built at the top of trees.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Because the eggs will be safe.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Many nests are made from grass, twigs or feathers.</p> <p>4.A: .....?</p> <p>B: They are protected by law.</p>	<p>(6)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: People have hunted elephants for their tusks.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: Tree kangaroos are found in Australia.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: They are hunted for their meat and fur.</p> <p>4.A: .....?</p> <p>B: They are popular with children.</p>

### الحلول

- (1)1.A.What is the sand gazelle? 2.A.Where does it live? 3.A.(How many litres of water / How much water)do they drink per day ?  
4.A.(How much/How many kilograms of plants) do sand gazelles eat?
- (2)1.A.Why is the sand gazelle in danger? 2.A.When do they congregate in larger herds?/ What do they do during the winter?  
3.A.Why do they dig shallow pits? 4.A.I like the tiger because it is strong.
- (3)1.A.What is Al Ain? / What is the second biggest city in Abu Dhab? 2.A. Where is located? 3.A.How is it linked to Abu Dhabi?/  
Which city is it linked to by fast motorways? 4.A. (How much time / how long )does it take to drive between the two cities?
- (4)1.A.How many different species of penguins are there? 2.A.Where do all penguins live in? 3.A.Why does the jerboa hop quickly?  
How does the jerboa hop to escape predators? 4.A.What kind of climates do they live in?/ Where do they live?
- (5)1.A.Where are birds' nests built? 2.A.Why are birds' nests built at the top of trees? 3.A.What are many nests made from?  
4.A.How are they protected?
- (6)1.A.Why have people hunted elephants? 2.A.Where are tree kangaroos found? 3.A.Why are they hunted? 4.A. Whom are they popular with?

### Complete the following sentences using clauses:

- In the future, sea levels will rise because ..... the polar ice is melting.
- Scientists are worried about climate change because..... it is serious.
- Some plants grow well here even though ..... the soil is poor.
- People are cutting down forests because.....  
they need more land for growing food.
- Many people recycle their rubbish in order not to .....  
use up the world's resources.
- Scientists are trying to produce new fuels so that.....  
people can stop climate change .
- Some people are moving out of their homes on the coast in order to.....  
escape future floods.
- We should stop burning coal and oil in order not to.....  
cause more global warming.
- You must be exhausted because ..... you've been working hard recently.
- Forests are being cut down because..... we need more farming land.
- We need to protect some animals so that.....  
they don't become extinct.
- The ice in the polar areas is melting because.....  
climate change is causing global warming.
- The polar ice must be melting because..... the world is getting warmer.
- Those chemicals are very dangerous .....if you misuse them.



**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

The sand gazelle, or goitered gazelle, is (1)..... horned animal that lives across the Arabian Gulf (2)..... North Africa. Originally found in all Arab countries, (3)..... is now extinct in Iraq, Kuwait and Yemen and endangered everywhere else, including Syria. In (4)..... summer months, sand gazelles live in small family groups of around ten individuals. During the winter, (5)..... congregate in larger herds. They are ideally suited (6)..... the desert environment with their white heads and sand-coloured bodies. This allows (7)..... to blend into the desert, camouflaging them from predators.

الحلول

1.a 2.and 3.it 4.the 5.they 6.to 7.them

Sand gazelles (1)..... small mammals, weighing only 20 kg. However, they are very quick and have (2)..... known to reach speeds of almost 100 km per hour. They are excellent jumpers and use their speed (3)..... agility to evade the attention of predators. Sand gazelles eat around 6 kg (4)..... plants per day – consuming the shoots, roots, leaves and stems of desert plants – around (5)..... third of their overall bodyweight. They drink 3 litres of water per day and in (6)..... hottest season dig shallow pits and lie (7)..... the cooler soil.

الحلول

1.are 2.been 3.and 4.of 5.a 6.the 7.on

The sand gazelle is (1)..... danger of extinction, mainly due to habitat loss (2)..... hunting. However, there have been some efforts to save (3)....., and some countries have begun breeding them (4)..... release into the wild. There (5)..... been some successes, but the battle (6)..... save them and other native species continues. In Syria, there is (7)..... increasing awareness about the importance (8)..... saving wild animals.

الحلول

1. in 2.and 3.them 4.for 5. have 6.to 7.an 8.of

Al Ain, (1)..... ancient oasis city, is the second biggest city in Abu Dhabi. It (2)..... located 160 km east of the capital and is linked (3)..... Abu Dhabi City by fast motorways. It takes about 90 minutes to drive between the two cities. Al Ain's International Airport, (4)..... was opened in 1994, has over half a million passengers each year. In the past, Al Ain was famous (5)..... its traditional system of watering the land. Water (6)..... directed through man-made tunnels to local farms. Now, (7)..... modern system ensures that an area of 100 square km around Al Ain covers (8)..... trees and other plants. Even the six-lane roads in (9)..... city are lined with many different kinds of trees and other plants. Everything is watered (10)..... a mixture of recycled waste water (11)..... desalinated water. Many salad crops are produced by farmers in the area around the city. These include tomatoes, cucumbers, lettuce and strawberries.

الحلول

1.an 2.is 3.to 4.which 5. for 6. was 7.its 8. in 9. the 10.by 11.and

Animals live everywhere (1)..... Earth, in every terrain and in all climates. The place (2)..... an animal lives is called its habitat (3)..... most animals can only survive in one or two different habitats. For example, whales (4)..... sea creatures and cannot live in fresh water; lizards live (5)..... hot climates and would die (6)..... they were moved to the Arctic. Some animals migrate between two habitats (7)..... different times of the year. In this article, you will find (8)..... about two animals which can live in different habitats, and one (9)..... has adapted to (10)..... particular environment.



## الحلول

1. on 2. where 3. and 4. are 5. in 6. if 7. at 8. out 9. which 10. a

There (1)..... seventeen different species of penguins, including (2)..... famous Emperor penguins and the common Chinstrap penguins. All of these live (3)..... the southern hemisphere – many in Antarctica around the South Pole. But some live in warmer places, for example (4)..... the coasts of South America, Africa, Australia, (5)..... the Galapagos Islands. Many (6)..... the 13 million Chinstrap penguins live on large icebergs in the open ocean.

## الحلول

1. are 2. the 3. in 4. on 5. and 6. of

The jerboa lives all over Asia (1)..... Northern Africa. This animal lives (2)..... hot desert climates and is common in the Syrian Desert. There (3)..... 25 different species of jerboa and they are specially adapted (4)..... live in extremely dry climates. They (5)..... very short front legs and long back legs (6)..... enable them to hop quickly over the ground to escape predators. (7)..... are nocturnal animals, which means they sleep during (8)..... day.

## الحلول

1. and 2. in 3. are 4. to 5. have 6. which 7. They 8. the

Kangaroos and their close relatives, wallabies, (1)..... only found naturally in Australia (2)..... Papua New Guinea. Like wombats and koala bears, kangaroos are marsupials, (3)..... means that when young are born they are carried by (4)..... mothers in a pouch. There are forty-five species (5)..... kangaroos and wallabies and they live in every kind of habitat, (6)..... open plains to forests and rocky deserts. Tree kangaroos live in remote and mountainous forest regions and (7)..... adapted to life in trees. Unlike other kangaroos, they cannot move very fast (8)..... the ground.

## الحلول

1. are 2. and 3. which 4. their 5. of 6. from 7. have 8. on

kangaroos, which (1)..... found only in the rainforests of Australia (2)..... West Papua, are in danger of becoming extinct (3)..... two main reasons. Firstly, they are hunted for (4)..... meat and fur, and secondly their natural habitat is destroyed (5)..... human activities such as mining and farming. For several years, the Tree Kangaroo Conservation Programme (6)..... worked hard to protect (7)..... particular species, Matschie's tree kangaroo, (8)..... lives only on the northeast coast of Papua New Guinea. As part of their work, special protected wildlife areas have (9)..... created by the organisation, and the people (10)..... live here have been taught how (11)..... protect tree kangaroos and other rare animals in their region.

## الحلول

1. are 2. and 3. for 4. their 5. by 6. has 7. a 8. which 9. been 10. who 11. to

Zoos exist all over the world (1)..... people want to see animals that they cannot see (2)..... their own country. They (3)..... always been popular, especially with children. However, some people believe that (4)..... are unnatural habitats and that keeping animals in zoos (5)..... cruel. In this essay, I will discuss some of the arguments (6)..... and against zoos. I will start by considering two arguments (7)..... favour of zoos. First of all, many people, including environmentalists, believe (8)..... zoos help to protect animals (9)..... are endangered. In zoos all around the world, rare animals are bred so (10)..... increase in number (11)..... are saved from extinction. In China, numbers of the endangered giant panda have begun to increase following successful breeding in zoos. Eventually animals can (12)..... set free to live in the wild



again. Secondly, zoos are educational. People(13)..... visit zoos can observe unusual animals up close and learn(14)..... their behaviour.

## الحلول

1.because 2. in 3. have 4.they 5. is 6.for 7. in 8.that 9.which 10. they 11. and 12. be 13. who 14. about

I will now move on to the arguments against zoos. The main objection to zoos(1)..... that it is unnatural for wild animals to be kept(2)..... captivity. They often have to live in small cages(3)..... they cannot move about freely. Another argument against zoos is that(4)..... may be located in places where(5)..... climate is very different (6)..... the climate of the animal's country of origin. Personally, I (7)..... not have strong feelings about zoos. I believe that they can help(8)..... protect and preserve endangered species,(9)..... I also think that it is wrong to force animals to live in unnatural conditions simply (10)..... that curious human beings can stare(11)..... them.

## الحلول

1.is 2. in 3. where 4. they 5. the 6.from 7.do 8. to 9. but 10.so 11. at

We usually think that greenhouse gases (1)..... harmful, but without these gases the climate of(2)..... Earth would(3)..... like the climate of Mars: too cold for human beings to survive. Greenhouse gases, (3)..... include carbon dioxide and methane, keep the heat of the sun in and prevent our planet(4)..... freezing. However, (5)..... the last 200 years people have been using enormous quantities of fossil fuels like coal, gas (6)..... oil. When these fuels are burnt, they produce large amounts of carbon dioxide and this keeps more of the sun's heat in. The result(7)..... that the temperature of the Earth is rising year(8)..... year. This is leading to more extreme weather: high winds and heavy rain, (9)..... produce storms and floods.

## الحلول

1.are 2. the 3. be 3.which 4. from 5.for 6.and 7. is 8. by 9.which

The problem (1)..... made worse by the fact that we are destroying(2)..... world's rainforests. Trees naturally consume carbon dioxide, but (3)..... there are fewer trees, more carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere. Because (4)..... the increase in the Earth's temperature, the ice (5)..... the north and south poles is melting,(6)..... this is causing sea levels to rise. Eventually, many areas of land (7)..... are now on the coast will (8)..... flooded. Leading scientists are warning that(9)..... the authorities don't introduce new laws(10)..... reduce greenhouse gas increases now, the results could be disastrous for life(11)..... Earth.

## الحلول

1.is 2. the 3. because 4.of 5.at 6. and 7.which 8.be 9. if 10. to 11. on

1. The sand gazelles are protected from predators..... camouflage.
2. Forests are being cut down..... we need more farming land.
3. The polar ice must be melting..... the world is getting warmer.
4. Al Ain, an ancient oasis city, is the second biggest city..... Abu Dhabi.
5. It is located 160km east of the capital and is linked to Abu Dhabi city..... fast motorways. It takes about 90 minutes to drive between the two cities.
6. Al Ain's international Airport, ..... was opened in 1994, has over half a million passengers each year.
7. In the past, Al Ain was famous..... its traditional system of watering the land.  
Water is directed through man-made tunnels to local farms.



8. Now, its modern system ensures that an area of 100 square km around Al Ain is covered in trees..... other plants. Even the six-lane roads in the city are lined with many different kinds of trees and other plants.
9. Everything is watered..... a mixture of recycled waste water and desalinated water.
10. Many salad crops are produced by farmers in the area around the city. These include tomatoes, cucumbers, lettuce..... strawberries.

**الحلول**

- 1.by 2.because 3.because 4.in 5.by 6.which 7.for 8.and 9.by 10.and

**Translate into English:**

1. في أشهر الصيف تعيش الغزلان الرملية في مجموعات عائلية صغيرة من حوالي عشرة افراد
2. في الفصل الأكثر حرا تحفر الغزلان الرملية حفر ضحلة وتستلقي على التربة الباردة
3. ان الغزال الرملي في خطر الانقراض بشكل رئيسي وفقا لفقدان الموطن والصيد
4. ان البرتقالات مختلفة اللون عن الليمونات
5. ان النباتات و الحيوانات معتمدة على مؤنة منتظمة من الماء
6. ان الناس السوريون واعين من الحاجة لحماية حياتهم البرية
7. الضمير مشهورة بنظام السقاية
8. أناس كثيرون مهتمون بمستقبل الحيوانات المهددة بالخطر
9. المنطقة حيث يعيش حيوان بشكل طبيعي و ينام تسمى موطنه
10. في بعض البلدان تُحمى اعشاش الطيور النادرة بواسطة القانون
11. على مر التاريخ لقد أصطيدت الفيلة لاجل انيابهم
12. بدون غازات البيوت البلاستيكية لا يمكن للبشر ان يعيشوا على الأرض
13. ان الكائنات البشرية قد صار لها تستخدم وقود المستحاثات لأكثر من منتي عام
14. سيرتفع مستوى البحر اذا يذوب الجليد في القطبين
15. في المستقبل سوف يرتفع مستوى البحر لان الجليد القطبي يذوب
16. يقطع الناس الغابات لكي يملكو المزيد من الأرض لزراعة الطعام
17. يكرر العديد من الناس قمامتهم لكي لا تستهلك موارد العالم
18. يحاول العلماء إنتاج وقود جديد وبذلك يمكن للناس الاستمرار باستخدام سياراتهم بدون الإضرار بالبيئة
19. ينتقل بعض الناس خارج بيوتهم على الساحل لكي يهربوا من الفيضانات المستقبلية
20. ينبغي علينا ان نتوقف عن احراق الفحم والنفط لكي لا نسبب المزيد من الاحتباس الحراري
21. ان العلماء قلقون بشأن تغير المناخ لأنه يهدد للحياة على الأرض
22. تنقل محطة القطار الحجاز المسافرين إلى عمان والأردن
23. في السنوات الأخيرة لقد بنت شركات عديدة مكاتبهم في القسم الجديد للمدينة
24. بعض الناس غير واعين من الاختلافات بين الفاكهة والخضار
25. ان التفاح والموز يكونون معتمدين في بقائهم على غازات البيوت البلاستيكية
26. دمشق الحديثة مبنية على موقع للعديد من حضارات قديمة
27. دمشق مشهورة بنصبها التاريخية

- 1- In the summer months, sand gazelles live in small family groups of around ten individuals.
- 2- In the hottest season the sand gazelles dig shallow pits and lie on the cooler soil.
- 3- The sand gazelle is in danger of extinction, mainly due to habitat loss and hunting.
- 4- Oranges are a different colour from lemons.
- 5- Plants and animals are dependent on a regular supply of water.
- 6- The Syrian people are aware of the need to protect their wildlife.
- 7- Dmeir is famous for its watering system.



- 8- Many people are interested in the future of endangered animals.
- 9 -The area where an animal normally lives and sleeps is called its habitat.
- 10- In some countries, the nests of rare birds are protected by law.
- 11-Throughout history elephants have been hunted for their tusks.
- 12- Without greenhouse gases human beings couldn't live on Earth in any country.
- 13- Human beings have been using fossil fuels for more than two hundred years.
- 14- Sea levels will rise if the ice at the poles melts.
- 15- In the future, sea levels will rise because the polar ice is melting.
- 16- People are cutting down forests in order to have more land for growing food.
- 17- Many people recycle their rubbish in order not to use up the world's resources.
- 18- Scientists are trying to produce new fuels so that people can continue to use their cars without damaging the environment.
- 19- Some people are moving out of their homes on the coast in order to escape future floods.
- 20- We should stop burning coal and oil in order not to cause more global warming.
- 21- Scientists are worried about climate change because it is a threat to life on Earth.
- 22- The famous Hejaz train station transports passengers to Amman, Jordan.
- 23- In recent years many companies have built their offices in the new part of the city.
- 24- Some people are not aware of the difference between a fruit and a vegetable.
- 25- Apples and bananas are dependent for their survival on greenhouse gases.
- 26- Modern Damascus is built on the site of many ancient civilisations.
- 27- Damascus is famous for its historical monuments.

You are going to write a report to the council making recommendations about where to build houses.

(Student Book. P.51)

### Building New Houses

Dear council,

There are some recommendations that should be taken into consideration about the housing project. I think it wouldn't be a good idea to build houses near factories because of noise and pollution. Moreover, there are crowded areas like markets. So it's wrong to make people live among them. I suggest the council should choose green and fresh areas out of the town where people can find peaceful and quiet places to live in. At the same time, this may represent a missed opportunity for the town to expand and develop. Finally, local people may find new jobs.



أنت سوف تكتب تقريراً إلى مجلس البلدية مقدماً إقتراحات عن مكان بناء المنازل. (كتاب الطالب ص 51)

### بناء منازل جديدة

عزيزي المجلس،

هناك بعض المقترحات التي يجب أن تؤخذ بعين الإعتبار حول المشروع السكني. أنا أعتقد إنها سوف لن تكون فكرة جيدة لبناء منازل قرب المصانع بسبب الضجيج والتلوث. علاة على ذلك، يوجد اماكن مزدحمة مثل الأسواق. لذلك إنه من خطأ أن نجعل الناس يعيشون بينهم. أنا أقتراح المجلس ينبغي أن يختار مناطق خضراء ونقية خارج البلدة حيث يمكن للناس أن يجدوا أماكن هادنة ومسالمة ليعيشوا فيها. في نفس الوقت هذا ربما يمثل فرصة سانحة للبلدة لتتوسع وتتطور. أخيراً ربما الناس المحليين يجدون فرص عمل جديدة.

Write an essay including arguments for and against. Choose one of these titles: (Activity Book, P. 37)

Protecting wild animals      Keeping household pets      Eating meat

### Protecting Wild Animals

Protecting wild animals is not only a local problem, but also a global issue. Wild animals are in danger of extinction mainly due to hunting. I will discuss some of the arguments for and against protecting animals. First of all, protecting wild animals saves them from extinction, so the government should prevent hunting to save wild animals. In contrast, keeping wild animals in zoos may cause danger to people. In my opinion, all people are responsible for saving wild animals from extinction.

اكتب مقالة تتضمن نقاشات مع أو ضد. اختر أحد هذه العناوين: (كتاب النشاط ص 37)

حماية الحيوانات البرية      تربية حيوانات منزلية أليفة      أكل اللحوم

### حماية الحيوانات البرية

حماية الحيوانات البرية هي ليست فقط مشكلة محلية لكنها أيضا قضية عالمية. الحيوانات البرية تكون بخطر الانقراض بشكل رئيسي بسبب الصيد. سأناقش بعض المسائل مع أو ضد حماية الحيوانات. أول كل شيء حماية الحيوانات البرية يحفظهم من الانقراض، لذلك الحكومة يجب أن تمنع الصيد لتحافظ على الحيوانات البرية. من جهة أخرى الحفاظ على الحيوانات البرية في حدائق الحيوان ربما يسبب خطراً للناس. في رأي كل الناس مسؤولين عن الحفاظ على الحيوانات البرية من الانقراض.



Write a leaflet publicising the problem of climate change and suggesting two or three ways in which ordinary people can reduce the amount of energy they use. (Activity Book. P. 41)

### Saving Energy

Global warming is the most dangerous problem facing our planet now. This leads to climatic changes that affect our lives. Another reason behind the climatic changes is deforestation. When trees are cut down, there is nothing to stop the wind and the rain from washing away the top layer of soil. Personally, I think that recycling saves energy and causes less pollution. For example, recycling papers saves trees and energy. Moreover, people ought to reduce pollution, which affects our climate by riding bicycles instead of cars.

اكتب نشرة إعلامية معمماً فيها مشكلة التغير المناخي ومقترحاً حلين أو ثلاثة حلول حيث يمكن للناس العاديين أن يقللوا كمية الطاقة التي يستخدمونها.

(كتاب النشاط ص 41)

#### الحفاظ على الطاقة

الإحتباس الحراري هي المشكلة الأكبر التي تواجه كوكبنا الآن. هذا يقود إلى تغيرات مناخية التي تؤثر على حياتنا. سبب آخر وراء التغيرات المناخية هو إزالة الغابة. عندما تقطع الأشجار فإنه لا يوجد شيء ليوقف الرياح والمطر من جرف الطبقة العليا للتربة. شخصياً، اعتقد بان إعادة التصنيع توفر الطاقة وتسبب اقل تلوث. على سبيل المثال: تكرير الورق يحفظ الأشجار والطاقة. علاوة على ذلك، يجب على الناس أن يقللوا التلوث الذي يؤثر على مناخنا بواسطة ركوب الدراجات بدلاً السيارات.



## Unit 7

## Students` Book ( Unit 7 )

		Active	نشيط - فعال
Colleague	زميل	Aspects	جوانب
Interact with	يتفاعل مع	Crucial	حاسم - هام
Lifestyle	نمط حياة	Healthy	صحي
Outlook	نظرة	Well-being	رفاهية
Secret	سر	Farther more	الاكثر من ذلك
Socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيا	Recommend	ينصح
Successful	ناجح	Exercise	يتمرن - تمرين
Deserted	مهجور	Mind	عقل
Inhabitant	ساكن	Doing puzzles	حل الالغاز
Overcrowding	ازدحام	Doing crosswords	حل كلمات متقاطعة
Phenomenon	ظاهرة	Chess	شطرنج
Profitable	مفيد / ربح	Keep busy	يبقى مشغول
Public services	خدمات عامة	Related	متعلقة
Stress	توتر - جهد	Associate	تترافق مع
Rural	ريفي	Describe	يصف
Urban	مدني	Interact	يتفاعل
Biography	السيرة الذاتية	Support	يدعم - دعم
Blow	ضربة	Married	متزوج
Bow	قوس - بقوس	Marriage	زواج
Career	مهنة	Soup	حساء
Cookery	الطبخ	Corn	ذرة
Hardworking	مجد - نشيط	Meal	وجبة
Advise	نصيحة	Customers	زبائن
Pluck	يذاعب أوتار	Husband	زوج
Repair	يصلح	Couple	ثنائي
Strum	يعزف على وتر	Daughter	ابنة
Brain	دماغ	in detail	بالتفصيل
Bride	عروس	Wedding	زفاف
Get old	يكبر في العمر	Do paid job	يقوم بعمل مأجور
Rarely	نادرا	land line	الخط الأرضي
Values	قيم	Argue	يجادل - يناقش
Traditional	تقليدي	Punctual	دقيق في المواعيد
Care	عناية	Pass the exam	ينجح في الامتحان
Care for	يعتني بـ	Test	اختبار
Look after	يعتني بـ	Storm	عاصفة
Close	مقرب	Boss	مدير
Honor	يكرم	Must be	لا بد ان يكون
Do shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	Honest	صادق نزيه
Do research	ينجز بحث العلمي	Get rid of	يتخلص من
Do homework	ينجز الوظيفة	Fasten=lie	يربط - يزر
Do experiments	ينجز تجارب	Manage	يتدبر امره
Do a special effort	ينجز جهد خاص	Neighbors	جيران
Make a special effort	ينجز جهد خاص	Suggest	يقترح
Make an excuse	يصنع عذرا	Involved in	مهتم بـ
Make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح	Make a success	يصنع نجاحا



Make money	يكسب مال	Tidy=redecorate	يرتب - يزين
Make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	Do the shoes up	يربط الحذاء
Make friends	يكسب اصدقاء	Do without	يستغني عن
Make a decision	يتخذ قرار	Do the room up	يرتب الغرفة
Make a promise	يقطع وعد	do away with	يتخلص من / يهبط
Did a lot of damage	احدث الكثير من الاضرار	In the long run	على المدى البعيد
Expect	يتوقع	Offer to help	يتقدم لیساعد
Tips	نصائح	Several	عديدة
Suitable	مناسب	Workmates	زملاء العمل
It doesn't matter	لا يهم	Start	يبدأ
Related to	متعلق بـ	Get on well with	يشكل جيد مع
Recommendations	نصائح - توصيات	Titles	عناوين
Make up for the time	يعوض الوقت الفائت	Include	يتضمن
Popular magazine	مجلة شعبية	Which is why	ولهذا السبب
Useful	مفيد	Probably	من المحتمل
<b>Activity Book (Unit 7)</b>			
Alert	يقظ - متنبه	Memory	ذاكرة
Concentrate	يركز	Provide with	يزود
To be deprived of something	يُحرم من شيء ما	A chance	فرصة
Irritable	إنفعالي	Switch off	يطفى
Moody	مزاجي	Mental	عقلية
Gloomy	كئيب	Physical	جسدية
Recharge	يعيد شحن	Perform	يؤدي / يقوم بـ
Shallow	سطحي	Rested	مرتاح
Deep	عميق	Motorists	سائقي درجات
Awake=clear headed	يقظ - صافى الذهن	Fall asleep	ينام
Renew	يجدد	Wheel	عجلة - دولاب
Annoyed	منزعج	Traffic accidents	حوادث مرور
Give all your attention to a subject	تغير انتباهك لموضوع ما	Refreshed	منتعش
Lack of sleep	قلة نوم	Simplest activities	ايسط النشاطات
Adults	بالغين	Least sleep	نوم اقل
Catch upon	يعوض	Old age	شيخوخة
Missed	أضاع - فقد	Active	نشيط - فعال
Other times	مرات أخرى	Gym	نادي جمباز
Rest	باقي - بقية	Join	ينضم
Vary	يتنوع / يتفاوت	Fat	دسم / سمين
Individual	فرد	Balance	توازن
Teenagers	مراهقين	Habits	عادات
An average	وسطيا	Urban life	حياة مدنية
Tend to	يميل إلى	Worrying	قلق
Several	عديدة	Sand	رمل
Factors	عوامل	Getting in	دخول
Genetic make-up	التركيب الوراثي	Make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
Drowsy	نعسان	Do a research	ينجز بحثا
Do up your boots tightly	أربط حذائك بإحكام	Sleep deprivation	حرمان النوم



Do quizzes	يحل اختبارات سريعة	Make excuses	يلفّق أعذار
Delay	يلغي	Do a lot of damage	يسبب الكثير من الضرر
Reply	يجيب	Do experiments	ينجز تجارب
Cousins	أولاد عم	Do shopping	يقوم بالتسوق
Boring	ممل	Do puzzles	يحل ألغاز
Avoid	يتجنب	Make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح
Enjoyable	ممتع	Frequently	بشكل متكرر

In the last hundred years, people have been living longer and longer. Yet, there are still many aspects of our lifestyles that could be improved. Doctors advise that regular exercise and a healthy diet are crucial to our well-being. Furthermore, it is very important to get enough sleep – 8 hours a night is recommended. Getting enough sleep keeps our minds fresh, but we need to exercise our brains, too. This could involve doing puzzles and crosswords, playing chess or reading a book. As we get older, it is even more important that we keep busy, interacting with people of all ages and socialising. We should make plans for the future, keep a positive outlook on life and enjoy the support of the family environment.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. How could we exercise our brains?
2. What do doctors advise us?
3. What should old people do?
4. How can we keep our minds fresh?
5. How many hours should we sleep?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. got better
7. a way of life
8. important
9. a point of view about life

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

10. Old people shouldn't think about the future.
11. Exercising our brains doesn't include doing crosswords.

1. We could exercise our brains by doing puzzles and crosswords, playing chess or reading a book. 2. Doctors advise that regular exercise and a healthy diet are crucial to our well-being. 3. They should keep busy, interacting with people of all ages and socialising. 4. We can keep our minds fresh by getting enough sleep. 5. We should sleep 8 hours a day. 6. improved 7. lifestyle 8. crucial 9. outlook 10. Old people should make plans for the future. 11. Exercising our brains includes doing crosswords.

**How much sleep do we need?**

The amount of sleep human beings need varies from individual to individual. We know that most adults need about 8 hours of sleep a day, but this number can vary greatly; 'short sleepers' may need only 5 hours, whereas 'long sleepers' may need 9 to 10 hours. Babies need about 16 hours a day while many teenagers need an average of 9 hours. As people get older, they tend to need less sleep; some elderly people wake up early in the morning and cannot sleep for more than five or six hours. Exactly how much we need depends on several factors, including our age, our daily routine, the quality of our sleep and our genetic make-up. How do we know if we are getting enough sleep? In general, if you feel drowsy during the day, you need more sleep. You may think that you are sleeping for long enough, but these are some of the signs that you may need more: you cannot concentrate at school or at work; you find it difficult to get up in the morning; you are moody or irritable; you have memory problems.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Who seems to need the least sleep?
2. How much sleep do people between 13 and 18 need ?
3. What determines the amount of sleep people need?
4. What are the effects of the lack of sleep?



**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. a person considered separately from a group
6. tired and almost asleep
7. give all your attention to a subject

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. The amount of sleep people need is the same for all people.
9. Adults and teenagers need a lot more sleep than babies.
10. A person who doesn't get enough sleep feels refreshed and relaxed.

**الاجوبه**

1. elderly people 2. an average of nine hours. 3. Several factors including age, daily routine, the quality of sleep and the genetic make-up.
4. You cannot concentrate at school or work, you find it difficult to get up in the morning, you are moody or irritable, you have memory problems. 5. individual 6. drowsy 7. concentrate 8. ~~is the same for all people~~ varies from individual to individual.
9. Babies need a lot more sleep than adults and teenagers. 10. ~~refreshed~~ drowsy - ~~relaxed~~ moody or irritable

So why is it important that we get enough sleep? Sleep provides our bodies with a chance to switch off. This allows us to recharge our mental and physical batteries and be ready for each new day. If we have slept well, we should wake up in the morning feeling alert and rested. People who have been deprived of sleep find it difficult to perform the simplest activities. For example, motorists who fall asleep at the wheel are responsible for thousands of traffic accidents every year. How we sleep also affects us. When we fall asleep, our sleep can be deep and restful or light and shallow. Shallow sleepers wake up still feeling tired, while deep sleepers wake up refreshed.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Why is it important to get enough sleep?
2. What may happen if a driver falls asleep while driving?
3. What are the kinds of sleep mentioned in the text?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

4. not having any or enough of something
5. people between 13 and 18 years old
6. clear-headed - awake

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

7. Getting enough sleep is unnecessary.
8. If we sleep well at night, we feel drowsy and tired in the morning.

**الاجوبه**

1. Sleep provides our bodies with a chance to switch off. This allows us to recharge our mental and physical batteries and be ready for each new day. 2. He may have an accident. 3. Sleep can be deep and restful or light and shallow. 4. deprived 5. teenagers 6. alert 7. unnecessary important 8. drowsy and tired alert and rested
15. ~~an example~~ the result 16. ~~produce~~ consume - ~~monoxide~~ dioxide 17. ~~down~~ up 18. ~~every individual~~ authorities

**الأقوال المنقولة Reported Statements**

• **Reported Speech الكلام المنقول:** نستخدم الكلام المنقول لننقل ما قال شخص ما او ننقل حوار دار بين شخصين

- يتغير في الكلام المنقول :

1- زمن الفعل: نرجع بالزمن درجة للوراء

حاضر بسيط	→	ماضي بسيط	→	ماضي تام
am / is	→	was	→	had been
are	→	were	→	had been
go	→	went	→	had gone



حاضر مستمر → ماضي مستمر → ماضي تام مستمر

am / is doing → was doing → had been doing

are doing → were doing → had been doing

حاضر تام → ماضي تام

have done → had done

2- الضمانر والصفات الملكية ( للفهم فقط ) :

- المتكلم ينقل ( I → he / she - we → they - my → his / her ) ضمير فاعل  
 - عن الآخرين ( me → him / her - us → them - our → their ) ضمير مفعول به  
 - المتكلم ينقل كلام موجه له ( you → me / us ) ضمير مفعول به - ( you → I / we ) ضمير فاعل

3- إشارات الوقت والمكان :

here → there - yesterday → the previous day

last → the previous - tomorrow → the following day

- امثلة :

**Reem:** I like English. → Reem said she liked English.

**Omar:** I liked English. → omar said he had liked English.

**Children:** We are having fun. → They said they were having fun.

**Reem:** Hani is from Aleppo. → Reem told me ( that ) Hani was from Aleppo.

**Reem:** My father is a doctor. → Reem said ( that ) her father was a doctor.

**We don't argue** about anything. → They said they didn't argue about anything.

**My name is** Samer. → He said his name was Samer.

**I'm going** out with my parents. → She said she was going out with her parents .

**A: Report the following sentences ,**

1. My parents spend every day of their lives together. ' ( He said ) .....
2. My parents spent every day of their lives together. ' ( Their son told me ) .....
3. They always had a good social life. ' ( He said ) .....
4. They kept in regular touch with their family. ' ( He said ) .....
5. I'm not sure. ' ( He said ) .....
6. They were both involved in farming. ' ( He added ) .....
7. I have never done paid work. ' ( Mrs. Chin said ) .....
8. We don't argue about anything. ' ( They said ) .....
9. We're taking our grandchildren on holiday. ' ( They said ) .....
10. I left my village because I wanted to work. ' ( Mr Mahmoud said ) .....
11. It was very easy to find work. ' ( He said ) .....
12. I was offered two jobs in two days. ' ( He said ) .....
13. I'm working for a large travel agency. ' ( He said ) .....
14. I start work at seven, and finish at five. ' ( He said ) .....
15. I'm going out with my parents. ' ( Ruba said ) .....



16. 'I'm going to visit my cousins in the next town.' ( Ruba replied ).....  
 17. I got back very late last night. ( Fadia replied ).....  
 18. Our plane was delayed. ( Fadia replied ).....  
 19. It was very relaxing. ( She said ).....  
 20. I have to be there at four o'clock. ( Bashar said ).....  
 21. I brought my briefcase home yesterday. ( Hani said ).....  
 22. I haven't seen it. ( Hani said ).....  
 23. I slept for ten hours last night. ( He said ).....  
 24. I'm enjoying my new job. ( Hiba said ).....  
 25. My name is Samer. ( He said ).....  
 26. I live in the city centre. ( He said ).....  
 27. I lived in the country. ( He said ).....  
 28. I enjoyed living there most of the time. ( He said ).....  
 29. I'm not yet married. ( He said ).....  
 30. I'm getting married next month. ( He said ).....  
 31. I'm a lecturer and I teach economics. ( He said ).....  
 32. I work in a university. ( He said ).....  
 33. I'll meet you here tomorrow. ( She said ).....

### الحلول

1. his parents spent every day..... 2. his parents had spent every day ..... 3. they had always had a good social life  
 4. they had kept in regular touch ..... 5. he wasn't sure. 6. they had both been involved in farming.  
 7. she had never done paid work. 8. they didn't argue..... 9. they were taking their grandchildren ..... 10. he had left his village because he had wanted to work. 11. it had been very easy to find work. 12. he had been offered two jobs in two days.  
 13. he was working for a large travel agency. 14. he started work at seven, and finished ... 15. she was going out with her parents.  
 16. she was going to visit her cousins in ..... 17. she had got back very late the previous night. 18. their plane had been delayed.  
 19. it had been very ..... 20. he had to be there at. 21. he had brought his briefcase home the previous day. 22. he hadn't seen it.  
 23. he had slept for ten hours the previous night. 24. she was enjoying her new job. 25. his name was Samer. 26. he lived in the.....  
 27. he had lived in the... 28. he had enjoyed living there most of ..... 29. he wasn't married yet.  
 30. he was getting married the following month. 31. he was a lecturer and he taught economics. 32. he worked in a.....  
 33. she'd meet me there the following day.

### Reported Questions الأسئلة المنقولة: عندما ننقل سؤال ما فإننا نحوله من سؤال مباشر إلى سؤال غير مباشر

- السؤال المباشر: يحتاج فعل مساعد وإشارة استفهام في آخره

? تتمة + فعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد + ( أداة سؤال )

What are you doing now?

- السؤال الغير مباشر: لا يحتاج لفعل مساعد ولا إشارة استفهام ولكن يوجد تساؤل قبل بإحدى الكلمات التالية:

( يستفسر enquire - يريد ان يعرف want to know - يتساءل wonder - يسأل ask )

. تتمة + رجوع بالزمن درجة للفعل + فاعل + أداة سؤال + الشخص السائل

He asked me what I was doing.

- اذا لم يحتوي السؤال المباشر على أداة سؤال فإننا نضع كلمة ( whether فيما اذا - if اذا ) بدلا من أداة السؤال أي:

? تتمة + فعل + فاعل + فعل مساعد

Do you play tennis?

- السؤال مباشر:

. تتمة + رجوع بالزمن درجة للفعل + فاعل + if / whether + الشخص السائل

He asked me if / whether I played tennis.

- السؤال غير مباشر:



- ملاحظه: يتغير الفاعل بحسب الشخص الذي سئل اذا كان

( **me** → **I** / **him** → **he** / **her** → **she** / **us** → **we** / **them** → **they** )

He asked **me** if / ( wh- word ) **I**..... / He asked **him** if / ( wh- word ) **he**.....

He asked **her** if / ( wh- word ) **she**.... / He asked **us** if / ( wh- word ) **we**.....

He asked **them** if / ( wh- word ) **they**.....

- يجب حذف الفعل المساعد ( **do – does – did** ) ولكن لا نحذف فعل الكون بل نضعه بعد الفاعل مع رجوع بالزمن

- يوجد نوعين من الأسئلة المباشرة:

1- أسئلة ( **Wh-Questions** ) أي انها تحتوي أداة سؤال

2- أسئلة ( **Yes / No - Questions** ) أي انها لا تحتوي أداة سؤال أي جوابها ( **Yes / No** )

### B. Report the following questions:

1. What is the secret of their healthy life? ( **I asked their son** ) .....
2. Do you remember your wedding day? ( **I asked him** ) .....
3. Have you enjoyed your long life? ( **I asked him** ) .....
4. How long have you been married? ( **I asked my grandparents** ) .....
5. Do you enjoy spending time with each other? ( **I asked them** ) .....
6. When did you first meet? ( **She asked them** ) .....
7. Are you enjoying married life? ( **She asked them** ) .....
8. Why did you leave your village and move to the city?  
( **I asked Mr Mahmoud** ) .....
9. Was it easy to find work? ( **I asked** ) .....
10. What are you doing? ( **I asked him** ) .....
11. When do you start and finish work? ( **I asked him** ) .....
12. What are you doing at the weekend? ( **Deema asked Ruba** ) .....
13. Where are you going? ( **Deema asked Ruba** ) .....
14. Can you take me to the airport tomorrow? ( **Bashaar asked Rakan** ) .....
15. What time do you have to be there? ( **Bashaar asked Rakan** ) .....
16. Did you enjoy your holiday? ( **Laila asked Fadia** ) .....
17. When did you get back? ( **Laila asked Fadia** ) .....
18. Have you seen my briefcase? ( **Hani asked Amer** ) .....
19. Have you got the time? ( **She asked me** ) .....
20. Can I go out with my friends? ( **Hani asked his mother** ) .....
21. When did you last have it? ( **Amer asked Hani** ) .....
22. What's your name? ( **I asked him** ) .....
23. Where do you live? ( **I asked him** ) .....
24. Where did you live before that? ( **I asked him** ) .....
25. Did you enjoy living there? ( **I asked him** ) .....
26. Are you married? ( **I asked him** ) .....
27. What is your job? ( **I asked him** ) .....
28. Do you work in a college? ( **I asked him** ) .....
29. What subject do you teach? ( **I asked him** ) .....

### الحلول

1. what the secret of their healthy life was. 2. if he remembered his wedding day. 3. if he had enjoyed his long life.
4. how long they had been marrie 5. if they enjoyed spending time with..... 6. when they had first met. 7. if they were enjoying married life.
8. why he had left his village and moved to the city. 9. if it had been easy to ..... 10. what he was doing. 11. when he started and finished work.
12. what she was doing at ... 13. where she was going. 14. if he could take him to the airport the following day. 15. what time he had to .....
16. if she had enjoyed her holiday. 17. when she had got back. 18. if he had seen his briefcase. 19. if I had got the time. 20. if he could go out with his friends.
21. when he had last had it. 22. what his name was. 23. where he lived 24. where he had lived before that.
25. if he had enjoyed living there. 26. if he was married. 27. what his job was. 28. if he worked in a college. 29. what subject he taught.



**D. Write the actual words**

1. She asked me if I'd got the time. ....
2. He said he'd slept for ten hours the previous night. ....
3. Hani asked his mother if he could go out with his friends.....
4. Waleed asked whether Omar wanted to go swimming with him.....
5. Hiba said she was enjoying her new job. ....

**الحلول**

1. Have you got the time?
2. I slept for ten hours last night
3. Can I go out with my friends?
4. Would you like (Do you want) to go swimming with me?
5. I'm enjoying my new job.

- ( التسوق / دمار / تجربة / بحث / وظيفة / عمل ) ينجز  
- **do** ( a job / homework / research / experiment / damage / shopping )

**كلمات تذهب معاً:**

- ( اجراء / نجاحا / وعدا / قرارا / خطأ / اقتراحا / جهدا ) يصنع  
- **make** ( an effort / a suggestion / a mistake / a decision / a promise / a success / an arrangement)

The journalist said she was ( **doing** – making ) **research** for an article **مثال:**

**Phrasal Verbs الأفعال التركيبية:**

- **Phrasal Verbs with make and do** أفعال تركيبية بـ ( **make** و **do** ):

- يزين / يرتب do up → tidy / redecorate يزين / يرتب
- يتخلص من do away with → get rid of يتخلص من
- يزر / يربط do something up → fasten / tie يزر / يربط
- do without → not having something and manage in spite of this يستغني عن  
لا يتناول شيء ما ويتمكن من الاستغناء عنه
- يفهم / يفكر بـ make of → think about / understand يفهم / يفسر
- يستبدل شيء ما ضائع أو مفقود make up for → replace something lost or missing يعوض
- يبتدع make up → invent يبتدع / يخلق

هنا مجموعه من الأفعال المركبه والكلمات التي يمكن ان تستخدم معها

do away with ( banks / shop / landline ) - do without ( salt / sugar / sleep )

do up ( room / flat / building / shoes / boots ) - make up ( story / excuse )

make up for ( time )

**Choose the correct verb between brackets :**

1. Ibrahim usually arrives at work on time, so his boss didn't know what to (make of , make up) it when he was an hour late one morning.
2. At first, he thought he might (make up , make of) **an excuse**, but decided he must be honest.
3. Ibrahim promised he would (make up for , make of) **the time** he had lost by being late.
4. You shouldn't try to (do away with , do without) **sleep**. You need at least eight hours a night.



5. He said everything was okay, but that was just a **story** he (**made out** , **made up**) to stop me from worrying.
6. You'd better (**do out** , **do up**) your **boots** tightly to stop the sand getting in.
7. Before we can sell the **flat**, we'll have to (**do it up** , **do without it**).
8. The students had to (**make of** , **make up**) a **story** about their recent holiday.
9. If everyone uses online banking, they'll (**do away with** , **do without**) **banks**.
10. A: Do you take **sugar** in your tea?  
B: Yes, I've tried to (**do up** , **do without**) it, but I can't.

## الحلول

- 1.make of    2.make up    3.make up for    4.do without    5.made up    6.do up    7.do it up    8.make up  
9.do away with    10.do without

## Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:

(1)1.A: .....? B: I travelled to the south of India. 2.A: .....? B: I met Sunil there. 3.A: .....? B: He has three children. 4.A: .....? B: He used to work as a fisherman.	(2)1.A: .....? B : May Chin lives in China. 2.A: .....? B: Her husband died twenty years ago. 3.A: .....? B: She gets up at six o'clock. 4.A: .....? B: She walks to the village to buy food.
(3)1.A: .....? B: I go to bed at nine o'clock. A: How much sleep do you get each night? 2.B: .....? 3.A: .....? B: I feel alert and rested in the morning. 4.A: .....? B: Yes, I get enough sleep.	(4)1.A: .....? B:Alberto and Maria have been married for eighty years. 2.A: .....? B: They eat soup or corn for every meal. 3.A: .....? B: They have a healthy lifestyle. A: How can you keep healthy? 4.B:.....?
(5)1.A: .....? B: I am going out with my parents at the weekend. 2.A: .....? B: I am going to visit my cousins in the next town. 3.A: .....? B: They live in the next town. 4.A: .....? B: Yes , I can take you with me.	(6)1.A: .....? B: Most adults need about 8 hours of sleep a day. 2.A: .....? B: Some elderly people wake up early in the morning. 3.A: .....? B: No, They cannot sleep for more than five or six hours. A: How much sleep do you need each night? 4.B:.....?

## الحلول

- (1)1.A.Where did you travel?    2.A.Who did you meet there ?    3.A.How many children does he have?    4.A.What did he use to work?  
(2)1.A.Where does May Chin live?    2.A.When did her husband die?    3.A.What time does she get up?    4.A.Why does she walk to village?  
(3)1.A.What time do you go to bed?    2.B. I get 8 hours each night.    3.A.How do you feel in the morning?    4.A.Do you get enough sleep?  
(4)1.A.How long have Alberto and Maria been married?    2.A.What do they eat for every meal?    3.A.What do they have?    4.B.I always do sports.  
(5)1.A.When are you going out with your parents?/ Who are you going out with at the weekend?    2.A.Who are going to visit in the next town?/  
Where are you going to visit your cousins?    3.A.Where do they live?    4.A.Can you take me with you?  
(6)1.A.How many hours of sleep do most adults need a day?    2.A.When do some elderly people wake up?  
3.A.Can they sleep for more than five or six hours?    4.B.I need about 8 hours of sleep each night.



**Complete the following sentences using clauses:**

- 1- You will have to make a special effort if ..... you want pass the exam.
- 2- If you make a mistake, ..... you have to correct it.
- 3- We'll have to do the room up before ..... we sleep there.
- 4- When my parents get old, ..... I will look after them.
- 5- You should think carefully before ..... you make your decision.
- 6 - If you want to pass your exam,.....you will study well.
- 7 - She asked me if..... I loved her.
- 8 - He asked his mother if ..... he could go out with his friends.
- 9 - He said everything was Okay, but ..... I didn't believe him.
- 10- Not everyone in our family has a mobile phone, so .....  
we need the landline phone.
- 11-When I was 12..... I lived in Aleppo.

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

In the last hundred years, people have (1)..... living longer and longer. Yet, there (2)..... still many aspects of (3)..... lifestyles that could be improved. Doctors advise that regular exercise (4)..... a healthy diet are crucial to our well-being. Furthermore, (5)..... is very important to get enough sleep – 8 hours a night is recommended. Getting enough sleep keeps our minds fresh, (6)..... we need to exercise our brains, too. This could involve doing puzzles and crosswords, playing chess or reading (7)..... book. As we get older, it is even more important (8)..... we keep busy, interacting (9)..... people of all ages and socialising. We should make plans (10)..... the future, keep a positive outlook (11)..... life and enjoy the support of the family environment.

**الحلول**

- 1.been 2.are 3.our 4.and 5.it 6.but 7.a 8.that 9.with 10.for 11.on

In Syria you will rarely find 'old people's homes'. When (1)..... parents get old, my sister and I will help look (2)..... them. Traditional values teach sons (3)..... daughters to honour (4)..... fathers and mothers and show love and care to them as (5)..... grow old. Family is very important to everyone, and I (6)..... very close to my mother's sister and (7)..... husband– my aunt and uncle. Caring for our family like this helps us all (8)..... live longer, happier lives and we know our children will one day look after(9).....

**الحلول**

- 1.my 2.after 3.and 4.their 5.they 6. am 7.her 8.to 9. us

Ibrahim usually arrives(1)..... work on time, so his boss didn't know what to make (2)..... it when he was an hour late one morning. At first, he thought he might make (3)..... an excuse, but decided he must (4)..... honest. Ibrahim promised he would make up (5)..... the time he had lost by being late.

**الحلول**

1. at 2.of 3.up 4.be 5.for

Do you enjoy reading about (1)..... some people become successful? Most people do,(2)..... is probably why popular magazines often include articles with titles like how to live (3)..... long, happy life, which give readers useful advice. One of my friends said to(4)..... the other day, "I am starting my first job soon, and I want to get (5)..... well with my new workmates. Have you (6)..... any advice you can give me?" Several people have asked me questions like this, which is why I (7)..... writing this article. For me the golden rule(8)..... you first start a job is this: listen (9)..... learn from colleagues. Also, ask your colleagues questions (10)..... you aren't sure about something and offer(11)..... help them if you can see something that needs doing. In (12)..... long run, the best way to(13)..... a good colleague is simply to work hard.



In(14)..... experience, people most dislike colleagues who make(15)..... excuses for not doing something and expect colleagues to(16)..... it for them. If you have (17)..... job starting soon, remember some of these tips. In the end, you'll be happier (18)..... more successful if you get on well with (19)..... colleagues.

## الحلول

1.how 2. which 3.a 4. me 5.on 6.got 7.am 8. when 9.and 10.if 11. to 12.the 13. be 14. my 15. up 16.do 17.a  
18.and 19.your

How much sleep (1)..... you need each night? Do you usually get this amount? Can you catch (2)..... on sleep you have missed (3)..... night by sleeping at other times, or do you find it difficult(4)..... sleep during the day? (5)..... rest of this article will give you some useful information (6)..... advice. The amount of sleep human beings need varies (7)..... individual to individual. We know (8)..... most adults need about 8 hours of sleep (9)..... day, but this number can vary greatly; 'short sleepers' may need only 5 hours, whereas 'long sleepers' may need 9 (10)..... 10 hours. Babies need about 16 hours a day while many teenagers need (11)..... average of 9 hours. As people get older, (12)..... tend to need less sleep; some elderly people wake up early(13)..... the morning and cannot sleep for more(14)..... five or six hours. Exactly how much we need depends (15)..... several factors, including our age, (16)..... daily routine, the quality of our sleep (17)..... our genetic make-up.

## الحلول

1.do 2.up 3.at 4. to 5.The 6.and 7. from 8.that 9.a 10.to 11.an 12.they 13. in 14. than 15.on 16.our 17. and

How do we know if we (1)..... getting enough sleep? In general, if you feel drowsy during (2)..... day, you need more sleep. You may think that (3)..... are sleeping for long enough, (4)..... these are some of the signs that you may need more: you cannot concentrate(5)..... school or at work; you find it difficult to get(6)..... in the morning; you are moody or irritable; you have memory problems. So why(7)..... it important that we get enough sleep? Sleep provides our bodies with (8)..... chance to switch off. This allows us (9)..... recharge our mental and physical batteries (10)..... be ready for each new day. If we have slept well, we should wake up in (11)..... morning feeling alert and rested. People(12)..... have been deprived of sleep find it difficult(13)..... perform the simplest activities. For example, motorists who fall asleep at the wheel are responsible(14)..... thousands of traffic accidents every year. How(15)..... sleep also affects us. When we fall asleep, our sleep can(16)..... deep and restful or light and shallow. Shallow sleepers wake up still feeling tired, (17)..... deep sleepers wake up refreshed.

## الحلول

1.are 2.the 3.you 4.but 5. at 6.up 7. is 8.a 9.to 10.and 11.the 12. who 13. to 14. for 15. we 16. be 17.while

Are you getting enough exercise? Most people these days agree that regular exercise(1)..... an important part of (2)..... healthy lifestyle, especially for people (3)..... spend most of their time (4)..... work sitting in offices. Some people find exercise boring (5)..... they make excuses to avoid doing it, but(6)..... this article I (7)..... going to suggest a few types of exercise (8)..... everyone will find enjoyable.

## الحلول

1. is 2.a 3.who 4.at 5. so 6.in 7.am 8.which

How healthy(1)..... your diet? In the modern world, experts frequently tell(2)..... that what we eat affects how healthy we are(3)..... how long we live. But most people like food and want to eat the things they enjoy. (4)..... this article I am going (5)..... suggest how you can eat (6)..... food you enjoy and still have(7)..... healthy diet.



## الحلول

1. is 2. us 3. and 4. In 5. to 6. the 7. a

One of the factors (1)..... affect how long people live and how (2)..... they enjoy their old age is 'brain activity.' Scientists (3)..... shown that people who keep their brains busy tend (4)..... live long, happy lives compared (5)..... those who do not. In this article, I am going to suggest some interesting (6)..... enjoyable ways in which you can keep (7)..... brain active

## الحلول

1. which 2. much 3. have 4. to 5. with 6. and 7. your

1. I am listening..... music at the moment.
2. Alberto and Maria have been married..... nearly eighty years.
3. They have three sons..... three daughters – the oldest is 81 years old.
4. After that, I travelled to the south of India..... I met Sunil.
5. When my parents get old, my sister and I will help look after.....
6. Traditional values teach sons and daughters to honour their fathers and mothers and show love and care to..... as they grow old.
7. Family is very important to everyone, and I am very close to my mother's sister and..... husband-my aunt and uncle.
8. Caring for our family like this helps us all to live longer, happier lives and know our children will one day look..... us.
9. The journalist said she was doing research for..... article.
10. You will have to..... a special effort if you want to pass your exam.
11. Can I..... a suggestion? Why don't we..... the shopping together?
12. If you..... a mistake, you have to..... your homework again.
13. I've..... my decision very carefully.
14. I've..... myself a promise. I'm going to..... a success of my new job.
15. Last night's storm..... a lot of damage to buildings in our area.
16. Ibrahim usually arrives..... work on time.
17. The worker was late so he tried to make..... an excuse.
18. I've hurt my back which means I have to get someone to do my shoes..... for me.
19. The doctor told my grandmother she'd have to learn to do..... sugar.
20. We'll have to do the room..... before anyone sleeps there.
21. Not everyone in our family has a mobile so we can't do away..... our landline.
22. How long..... you been married ?
23. We are taking our grandchildren..... holiday.

## الحلول

1. in 2. for 3. and 4. where 5. them 6. them 7. her 8. after 9. an 10. do 11. make/do 12. make/do 13. made 14. made /make 15. did  
16. at 17. up 18. up 19. without 20. up 21. with 22. have 23. on

Translate into English:

1. قال الصحفي بانها كانت تجري بحثا لمقالة
2. يجري العلماء بشكل متكرر تجارب ليختبروا أفكارهم
3. سيتوجب عليك ان تصنع جهد خاص اذا تريد ان تجتاز امتحانك
4. هل يمكن ان أقدم اقتراحا؟ لماذا لا ننجز التسوق معا؟
5. اذا ترتكب خطأ فإنه يتوجب عليك ان تنجز وظيفتك ثانية
6. لقد اتخذت قراري بحذر جدا
7. لقد قطعت وعدا على نفسي. سوف احقق نجاحا بعلمي الجديد
8. عاصفة الليلة الماضية عملت الكثير من الضرر بالأبنية في منطقتنا
9. تتنوع كمية الحاجة للنوم للكائنات البشرية من فرد إلى فرد



10. يجد الناس الذين قد حرّموا من النوم صعوبة لينجزوا ابسط النشاطات  
11. يجد بعض الناس التمارين مملة لذلك يقدمون اعدارا ليتجنبوا القيام بها

- 1- The journalist said she was doing research for an article.
- 2- Scientists frequently do experiments to test their ideas.
- 3- You will have to make a special effort if you want to pass your exam.
- 4- Can I make a suggestion? Why don't we do the shopping together?
- 5- If you make a mistake, you have to do your homework again.
- 6- I've made my decision very carefully.
- 7- I've made myself a promise. I'm going to make a success of my new job.
- 8- Last night's storm did a lot of damage to buildings in our area.
- 9- The amount of sleep human beings need varies from individual to individual.
- 10- People who have been deprived of sleep find it difficult to perform the simplest activities.
- 11- Some people find exercise boring so they make excuses to avoid doing it.

You are going to write a magazine article giving advice to people of your own age who are about to start a new job.

(Student Book, P. 63)

### Starting a New Job

I'm writing this article to give some pieces of advice about how to start a new job. For me, the golden rule when you first start a job is to listen and learn from colleagues. Also, ask them if you aren't sure about something and offer to help them if you can see something that needs doing. In my experience, if you want to be a good colleague, simply work hard and don't make up excuses for not doing something and expect the other to do it for you. In the end, you'll be happier and more successful if you get on well with your colleagues.

سوف تكتب مقالة لمجلة تقدم فيها نصائح للناس من عمرك الذين على وشك أن يبدأوا عمل جديد. (كتاب الطالب ص 63)

### البدء بعمل جديد

انا اكتب هذه المقالة لأعطي بعض النصائح حول كيف تبدأ عملاً جديداً. بالنسبة لي القاعدة الذهبية عندما تبدأ أول العمل إستمع وتعلم من زملاء العمل. أيضاً إسألهم إذا لم تكن متأكداً من شيء ما وتقدم لمساعدتهم إذا تستطيع أن ترى شيء ما يتطلب المساعدة. حسب خبرتي إذا أردت أن تكون زميلاً جيداً ، ببساطة إعمل بجد ولا تصنع أعداراً لعدم القيام بشيء ما وتتوقع الآخرين ليعملوه لأجلك. في النهاية، سوف تكون أكثر سعادة ونجاحاً إذا انسجمت مع زملائك في العمل.



What do you do to keep healthy? Do you have the best balance of habits and activities? How can you improve your health?

( Activity Book .P 46 )

### Keeping Healthy

Sport is the best form of exercise. Regular exercise is an important part of a healthy lifestyle, especially for people who spend most of their time at work sitting in offices. To stay healthy, I do regular exercises and follow healthy diet. I play football with my friends every weekend because it is my favourite sport. This keeps me fit and active. Moreover, I get enough sleep. Getting enough sleep keeps our mind fresh. Furthermore, I do puzzles and crosswords and I play chess. Finally, we should remember that the healthy mind is in the healthy body.

ماذا تفعل لتبقى سليماً؟ هل لديك التوازن الأفضل للعادات و النشاطات؟ كيف تستطيع أن تحسن صحتك؟ ( كتاب النشاط ص 46 )

#### البقاء صحياً

الرياضة هي أفضل شكل للتمارين. التمرين النظامي هو جزء هام لنمط الحياة السليم، خصوصاً للناس الذين يقضون معظم وقتهم في العمل جالسين في مكاتب. لأبقى سليماً، أنا أقوم بتمارين نظامية واتبع حمية صحية. أنا لعب كرة القدم مع أصدقائي كل نهاية أسبوع لأنها رياضتي المفضلة. هذا يبقيني رشيقاً ونشطاً. علاوة على ذلك، أنا أنام بشكل كافي. الحصول على نوم كافي يبقي عقولنا نشيطة. الأكثر من ذلك، أنا أحل الغاز وكلمات متقاطعة وألعب الشطرنج. أخيراً يجب أن نتذكر بأن العقل السليم في الجسم السليم.



## Unit 8

## Students` Book (Unit 8)

Exist	يوجد	Autumn	خريف
Better-paid job	عمل بأجر افضل	Annual rainfall	امطار سنوية
Rural areas	مناطق ريفية	Mediterranean	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
Friendly	ودود - حميم	Country areas	مناطق الريف
Agricultural areas	مناطق زراعية	Overcrowding	مزدحم
Almonds	اللوز	Rural depopulation	نزوح ريفي
Vines	نباتات الكرمة	Depopulation	نزوح
River valleys	واديان الأنهار	Inhabitant	قاطن - ساكن
Wheat	قمح	Mention	يذكر
Corn	ذرة	Phrase	عبارة
Fastened	يُز - يثبت	Profitable	مربح
Drip	ينقط - تنقيط	Beans	فاصولياء
A tap	صنبور	Sun Flowers	نبات عباد الشمس
Tun off	يطفى - يغلق	Well-known	معروف - مشهور
Roar	هدير / يشهدر	High quality	ذو نوعية عالية
Engine	محرك	Olive	زيتون
Scream	صرخة / يصرخ	Export	تصدير / يصدر
Pain	الم	Mainly	بشكل رئيسي
Frightened	مرعوب	Typical	نموذجية
Splash	طبشه ماء - يطرش بالماء	Whereas	بينما
Tick	تكة ساعة قديمة	Permanent	دائم
Tourist resort	منتجع سياحي	Farming	زراعة
Old-fashioned	قديم	Unemployment	البطالة
Whistle	صفير - يصفر	Trend	نهج - ميل لـ
Far and wide	هن كل مسكان	Elderly people	ناس مسنين
Nearest and dearest	الأقرباء و الأحباء	Suffer form	يعاني من
Family get-togethers	لقاءات عائلية	Public services	خدمات عامة
Odds and ends	أشياء صغيرة متنوعة	Deserted farms	مزارع مهجورة
Pick and choose	ينقي ويختار	Reversed	انقلب - انعكس
Natural beauty	جمال طبيعي	Escape from	يهرب من
Careless	مهمل - طائش	Therefore	لذلك
Threaten	يهدد	Characteristics	ميزات - صفات
Safety	سلامة	Stressful	مجهد
Pedestrians	المشاة - المارة	Bang	طرقة - خبطة - يطرق
Hustle and bustle	صخب و ازدحام	A hammer	مطرقة
Entertainment	تسلية	Hit	يضرب
Peaceful sea	البحر الهادي	Hard	قاسي
Wide variety	تنوع واسع	Click	يطلق / طقة
Lasting	مستمرة	A light switch	تشغيل مفتاح الإنارة
Reminder	مذكر	Seatbelt	حزام الأمان
Residents	سكان	Excitement	إثارة
Expansive	واسعة	Competition	مسابقة
Furnished	مفروش	Contrast	تباين - مفارقة
Furnished house	منزل مفروش	Apartment	شقة
Furniture	أثاث منزلي	Vegetables	خضار
Straight	مباشرة	Stress	توتر



Advantageous	مفيد	Stressful	مجهد - مرهق
Arrange a viewing	يتمكن من إلقاء نظرة	Fast	بسرعة
Miss out on	يفوت فرصة	Relaxing	مريحة
Picturesque	خلاب	Speed	سرعة
Calm	هادئ	Resort	منتجع
Improvement	تحسين	On the other hand	ناحية أخرى
Current	حالي	Convenient	مناسب
Complain about	يشكو من	Location	موقع
Suit	يناسب	In comparison with	بالمقارنة مع
Palatial	فخم	Quiet	هادئ
Vegetate	ينبت	Leafy	مغطى بالأشجار
Noisier	صاخب أكثر	Suburban area	ضاحية
<b>Activity Book (Unit 8)</b>			
		Odds and ends	أشياء متنوعة
Exactly	بالضبط	Far and wide	من كل مكان
Administrative	إدارية	Celebration	احتفال
Embassy	سفارة	Festival	مهرجان
Financial centers	مراكز مالية	Nearest and dearest = family and close friends	الأقرب والأعز
Financial intuitions	مؤسسات مالية	Instead of	بدلاً من
In this respect	في هذا المجال	Pronunciation	اللفظ
Seat of government	مقر الحكومة	Hub	محور
Commercial	تجاري	Architect	مهندس معماري
Ancient walls	جدران قديمة	Storey	طابق
Administrative	إداري	Tiles	قرميد
Similar to	مشابه لـ	Tiled roof	سطح قرميد
Select	يختار	Shady	ظلليل
Key = major	رئيسية	Ground floor	طابق أرضي
Political	سياسية	First floor	طابق أول
Institutions	مؤسسات	Surrounded by	محاطة بـ
Fractions	أجزاء	Situated	تقع
Take over	يتغلب على	Outskirts	مشارف / ضواحي
Remain	يبقى	A medium-sized town	بلدة متوسطة الحجم
Planners	مخططين	Lawn	عشب مرج
Regulate	ينظم	Shrubs	شجيرات
layout	مخطط	Hedges	سياج
Strictly	بحزم	Flat roof	سقف مسطح
Divided into	مقسم إلى	Balcony	شرفة
Sectors	قطاعات	Nearby	مجاور
Specific	محدد - معين	Low wall	سور منخفض
Zones	مناطق	Separate from	يفصل عن
Industry	صناعة	Class degrees	درجات الصف
Residential areas	مناطق سكنية	Property	عقار
Supervise	يشرف	Architect-designed house	يعود تاريخها
Clearly defined	محدد بشكل واضح	Features	مميزات
Define	يعرف	Cultures	ثقافات
Representative	ممثل عن	Poster	ملصق
Foreign country	بلد أجنبي	Terrified	مفزع



Offices	مكاتب	Spiders	عناكب
Sector	قطاع	Hustle and bustle	صخب واضطراب
Based on	معتمد على	Graduates	خريجون

### The end of village life?

When large numbers of people move from their homes in country areas to find better- paid jobs in towns and cities, the villages and farms they once lived in are often left empty. No one wants to buy homes **there** because they cannot make money out of them. This phenomenon ,which is called rural depopulation, can lead to overcrowding in cities as well as to fewer people in country areas. One example of this phenomenon is the Garrigues area of Spain, about one hour's drive from Barcelona. The area has a Mediterranean climate, but because it is high and not close to the sea, winter temperatures are quite low. The area has an annual rainfall level of 482mm which falls in only 47 days of the year, during the autumn and spring. Historically, this was a successful agricultural area; on the higher ground, the farmers grew almonds and vines, while in the river valleys, wheat, corn, beans and sunflowers were the traditional crops. The area was particularly well-known for its high quality olive oil which was grown mainly for export.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. Why do country people move to cities and towns?
2. What does **there** refer to ?
3. Define depopulation.
4. How does depopulation affect the country areas and cities?
5. List two characteristics of Garrigues.
6. What did the farmers in Garrigues use to plant?
7. What was the olive oil in Garrigues like?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

8. something that happens or exists
9. based on a period of one year
10. planted

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:

11. When there is rural depopulation, people move from the city to the country.
12. It is quite hot in winter in Garrigues because it is near the sea.
13. It rains all the year in Garrigues.
14. The low quality olive oil was mainly sold in Garrigues.

#### الاجوبه

1. To find better-paid jobs. 2. in country areas. 3. The movement of people from a place and as a result fewer people live there.
4. It can lead to overcrowding in cities and to fewer people in country areas. 5. It has a Mediterranean climate and it is high.
6. On the higher ground, they grew almond and vines and in the river valleys, wheat , corn, beans and sunflowers were the traditional crops.
7. of high quality. 8. phenomenon 9. annual 10. grown
11. ~~city to the country~~ country to the city. 12. ~~hot~~ cold ~~near~~ not close to 13. ~~all~~ 45 days of 14. ~~low~~ high sold in Garrigues-exported.

.....

The population of the Garrigues area was at its highest about 150 years ago, when a typical village might have 500 inhabitants, whereas now some villages have as few as 100 permanent inhabitants. But as farming became less and less profitable, and unemployment grew, the population began to move to the cities to find work. This trend started in 1860 and has continued to this day. Now some villages consist mainly of elderly people. The area is suffering from the effects of depopulation, such as poor public services and deserted farms. In some parts of Europe in recent years, however, the move from the country to the city has been reversed as wealthy people move to the countryside to escape from the overcrowding, pollution and stress of city life. Some are moving permanently, but many are buying holiday or weekend homes which are empty for much of the year.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. How many people used to live in a typical village?
2. Why did people start to move out of Garrigues?
3. Mention two effects of depopulation.
4. Why do some rich people move from the city to the country?



5. Name the two groups of people who live in remote villages and country areas.

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. people who live in a place
7. to get away from a dangerous or bad situation
8. old – not young

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

9. Mostly young people now live in all villages in Garrigues.
10. Rural depopulation in Garrigues has stopped.

الاجوبه

1. 500 2. to find work. 3. poor public services and deserted farms. 4. to escape from the overcrowding, pollution and stress.
5. elderly and wealthy people. 6. inhabitants 7. escape 8. elderly 9. young elderly . all some 10. stopped continued

Dear Mr and Mrs Mahmoud,

I think I've found the perfect place for you. It's a palatial villa in a green suburban area that would really suit your needs. I know you've been complaining about the noise in your current apartment, so the location of the new one would be a great improvement. It's quiet and calm and there's a picturesque park just over the road. There isn't even much traffic, and with residents' parking you'll never have trouble finding a space. It's also a lot more expansive than your current place and would have lots of room for entertaining. It's not furnished, so all of the furniture you already own could go straight in. You could make it your own very quickly. It's also an advantageous location. There's a large supermarket about five minutes away and it's very easy to reach the motorway. I really think you should arrange a viewing of this place. It's a great find that **you** wouldn't want to miss out on.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Where is the villa located?
2. Why won't they find a problem with parking?
3. Where can they buy things in the new place?
4. What makes the location of the villa a good one?
5. What does **you** refer to?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

6. not having any mistakes, faults or damage
7. get to a place
8. fast

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

9. Mr. and Mrs. Mahmoud like their current apartment because it is very big.
10. The new place is smaller and noisier than the current one.

الاجوبه

1. in a green suburban area 2. Because there is a residents' parking. 3. from a large supermarket 4. There's a large supermarket about five minutes away and it's very easy to reach the motorway. 5. Mr and Mrs. Mahmoud 6. perfect 7. reach 8. quickly
9. like don't like - very big - noisy 10. smaller bigger - noisier quieter and calmer

## Capital Cities

The capital city of a country is very often its greatest city, with the largest population and the most important administrative buildings. Capital cities house government offices, as well as embassies from other countries. They are also financial centres, containing national and international banks and other financial institutions. Damascus is no different from other capital cities in this respect – it is the seat of government and the economic and cultural centre of Syria. With a population of around 5 million people, Damascus is the biggest city in Syria. The city has a rich history, and is considered the oldest city in the world. It has been continually inhabited for thousands of years. The commercial and administrative centre of the city is located in the modern part of the city, outside the ancient walls. Brasilia, the capital city of Brazil, is both similar to and different from Damascus. Like Damascus, it is an administrative centre and contains the key political buildings and institutions. However, unlike Damascus, Brasilia is not the major cultural or economic centre of Brazil. The population of Brasilia is only



around 2.5 million people, which is a tiny fraction of the huge Brazilian population. Built in the late 1950s, it is a new city and has only been the capital of Brazil since 1960. It took over from Rio de Janeiro, which remains a major economic and cultural centre, as well as having a population of many millions more. Brasilia is a very modern city and because it is so new, planners were able to strictly regulate its layout. It is divided into sectors, with specific zones for business, industry, government and residential areas.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What buildings are characteristic of capital cities?
2. What is the population of Damascus and Brasilia?
3. Why does Damascus have a great historical value?
4. How long have people lived in Damascus?
5. What are the similarities between Damascus and Brasilia?
6. What are the differences between Damascus and Brasilia?
7. Why is Rio de Janeiro important?
8. Describe the layout of Brasilia?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

9. organisations with an important role in the country
10. to supervise or control
11. suitable for living in

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

12. Embassies are financial institutions.
13. The Old City of Damascus has government offices and financial institutions.
14. The population of Brasilia is about one third of the population of Damascus.
15. Brasilia and Damascus are ancient cities.
16. Rio de Janeiro is the capital of Brazil.

الاجوبه

1. government offices, embassies, banks and other financial institutions.
2. Damascus : 5 million – Brasilia : 2.5 million
3. It has a rich history and it is the oldest city in the world.
4. for thousands of years.
5. They are administrative centres, and contain the key political buildings and institutions.
6. Unlike Damascus, Brasilia is not the major cultural or economic centre of Brazil. Damascus has much more population. Damascus has a rich history but Brasilia is a new city.
7. It is a major economic and cultural centre, as well as having a population of many millions more.
8. It is divided into sectors, with specific zones for business, industry, government and residential areas.
9. institutions
10. regulate
11. Residential
12. Embassies Banks
13. The Old City The modern part
14. third half
15. Damascus is an ancient city but Brasilia is a new one.
16. Rio de Janeiro Brasilia

**Comparing and Contrasting المقارنة والتباين :**

- Comparing المقارنة: هي مقارنة بين شيئين متشابهان ( أوجه الشبه بينهما )

الصفة	مقارنه	تفضيل
small →	smaller than →	the smallest
fat →	fatter than →	the fattest
happy →	happier than →	the happiest
nice →	nicer than →	the nicest
beautiful →	more / less beautiful than →	the most / least beautiful

- prefer ..... to

- Contrasting التباين: هي مقارنة بين شيئين مختلفان ( أوجه الاختلاف بينهما )

-1 While / Whereas بينما: تربط بين شبه جملتين ( تأتي اما في اول او وسط الكلام )

مثال: Whereas some people enjoy the outdoor life, others spend all their time indoors.

I prefer living in the town, whereas my brother prefers the country.



-2 **But** لكن: تربط شبه جملتين ( تأتي فقط في وسط الكلام )

My brother prefers the country, **but** I prefer the city. **مثال:**

-3 **On the other hand** من ناحية أخرى: تربط جملة مع جملة جديدة ( هناك نقطة بين الجملتين )

Travelling by car is very cheap. **On the other hand**, flying is much quicker. **مثال:**

-4 **Instead of** بدلا من: تربط شبه جملة مع اسم ( تأتي اما في اول او وسط الكلام ) ( يأتي بعدها اسم )

**Instead of flying**, let`s go by car. **مثال:**

Could I have tea **instead of coffee**, please?

-5 **In comparison with** بالمقارنة مع: تربط شبه جملة مع اسم ( تأتي اما في اول او وسط الكلام ) ( يأتي بعدها اسم )

**In comparison with flying**, driving is quite slow. **مثال:**

It`s expensive to live in the city **in comparison with the country**.

-6 **Although / even though** على الرغم من: تربط بين شبه جملتين ( تأتي اما في اول او وسط الكلام )

**Although** Damascus is a very old city, there are modern areas with many new buildings.

- **ملاحظه:** شبه الجملة تتألف من ( تتمه + فعل + فاعل ) وتكون اما مكتملة المعنى او غير مكتملة المعنى ولا تأتي لوحدها بل يجب ان يأتي شبه جملتين واحده مستقله بالمعنى ووحدة معتمده على المستقلة لإكمال معناها والجملة المعتمدة دائما تحتوي على كلمات ربط ( **if-when – while – after – before -by the time –because – whereas - but - although** ) واذا أتت المستقلة لوحدها واخرها نقطة تسمى جملة وليست شبه جملة ( تفيد هذه الملاحظة في تمرين اكمال الجمل )

- **مثال:** I prefer living in the town, **whereas** my brother prefers the country.

شبه جملة معتمده المعنى      شبه جملة مستقله المعنى

**Choose the correct words in brackets:**

- 150 years ago, a typical village might have had 500 inhabitants, (whereas – instead of ) now some villages have 100.
- Some people prefer an exciting city ( to – with ) a quiet village.
- ( Instead of – Whereas ) buildings, all I can see from my window are fields and trees.
- Farming is less profitable ( than – to ) it used to be.
- ( Whereas – Instead of ) flying, let`s go by car.
- Travelling by car is cheap. ( Whereas – On the other hand), flying is much quicker.
- ( In comparison with – Instead of ) village life, city life can be quite stressful.
- I prefer living in the country, ( on the other hand - but ) my brother prefers the city.
- The country is quiet, (while – in comparison with) the city is noisy.
- City people have to drive slowly, ( although – whereas ) country people can drive fast.
- ( In comparison with – Instead of ) city people, country people can drive fast.
- City people often shop in supermarkets, ( whereas – on the other hand) country people often shop in small shops.
- City people often live in apartments. ( Whereas – On the other hand), country people usually live in houses.
- (Although – Instead of ) shopping in supermarkets, like city people, country people often shop in small shops.
- ( Whereas – Instead of ) buying vegetables from shops, like city people, country people often grow their own vegetables.
- (In comparison with – Instead of) country people, who have friendly neighbours, city people often don`t know their neighbours.
- Country people often have friendly neighbours, ( whereas – although) city people often don`t know their neighbours.
- ( Instead of – In comparison with) country people, who have quite relaxing lives, city people often have stressful lives.



19. Country people often have quite relaxing lives, ( but – although ) city people often have stressful lives.
20. (Whereas – In comparison with) some older people enjoy a quiet life in the country, many young people prefer the excitement of city life.
21. Supermarket fruit may be cheap ( on the other hand – but ) it isn't always as tasty as fruit from a market.
22. It's expensive to live in the city (in – on) comparison with the country.
23. Big supermarkets sell everyday goods quite cheaply, ( but – so) small shops often charge very high prices.
24. ( In comparison with – Whereas) supermarkets, small shops offer customers a very personal service.
25. ( In comparison with – Instead of ) Seoul in South Korea, Paris, the capital of France, is quite a small city.
26. (Whereas – But) Seoul has a population of over 10 million people, Paris only has 2 million.
27. I've decided to learn Chinese ( instead of – more ) French at university.
28. Chinese grammar is not too difficult ( but – so ) the pronunciation will be very hard for me.
29. Damascus is the largest city in Syria, (because – but) Brasilia is small compared with cities like Rio de Janeiro.
30. ( Although – But) Damascus is a very old city, there are modern areas with many new buildings.
31. Brasilia was designed by an architect in the 20th century, ( while – in comparison with) Damascus developed naturally over thousands of years.
32. Brasilia is not the major cultural and economic centre of Brazil, ( whereas – in comparison with ) Damascus is the cultural and economic hub of Syria.
33. Landline phones are large and heavy ( in comparison with – instead with ) mobile phones.
34. Landline phones are large and heavy, ( whereas – in Comparison), mobile phones are small and light.
35. Mobile phones are more up-to-date (than – from) traditional phones.
36. You can only talk to people on landline phones ( but – so) you can also send text messages with mobile phones.
37. Landline phones are fixed in one place. ( Although – On the other hand), you can carry mobile phones around.
38. Long conversations are ( very – more) expensive on mobile phones than on landline phones.

#### الحلول

1. whereas 2. to 3. Instead of 4. than 5. Instead of 6. On the other hand 7. In comparison with 8. but 9. while 10. whereas  
 11. In comparison with 12. whereas 13. On the other hand 14. Instead of 15. Instead of 16. In comparison with 17. whereas  
 18. In comparison with 19. but 20. Whereas 21. but 22. in 23. but 24. In comparison with 25. In comparison with  
 26. Whereas 27. instead of 28. but 29. but 30. Although 31. while 32. whereas 33. in comparison with 34. whereas  
 35. than 36. but 37. On the other hand 38. more

#### Sounds

<b>bang</b>	a <b>door</b> closing noisily
<b>drip</b>	a <b>tap</b> that hasn't been turned off
<b>roar</b>	<b>traffic</b> – <b>plane</b> engine
<b>scream</b>	a <b>person</b> who is <b>in pain</b> or <b>terrified</b>
<b>splash</b>	something falling into <b>water</b> ( a <b>swimming pool</b> )
<b>tick</b>	an old-fashioned <b>clock</b>

- مثال: The ( **roar** - splash ) of the **plane** woke me up in the night.

#### Idioms with and مصطلحات بـ and

- **pick and choose** → **select exactly** نقي واختار
- **nearest and dearest** → **family and close friends** العائلة والأصدقاء المقربين
- **odds and ends** → **different things** أشياء مختلفة ( نثریات )
- **far and wide** → **all over the place** في كل انحاء المكان من بعيد وقريب
- **hustle and bustle** → **noise and excitement** ضجة وإثارة زحمة سوق / صخب
- **peace and quiet** سلام وهدوء



**Choose the correct verb between brackets :**

1. People come from ( far and wide - nearest and dearest ) to see the Umayyad Mosque in the centre of Damascus.
2. I love spending time with my ( far and wide – nearest and dearest ), so we often have family get-togethers.
3. While I was on holiday I bought lots of (far and wide – odds and ends).
4. There are lots of restaurants near here. You can ( hustle and bustle – pick and choose ) from about fifty.
5. Some people enjoy the ( nearest and dearest – hustle and bustle ) of shopping in street markets.
6. Let's turn the television off and have some peace and (bustle - quiet) for a change.
7. I've travelled ( near - far ) and wide, but I haven't found anywhere I like as much as my country.
8. Most of the time I love the hustle and ( odds – bustle ) of city life.
9. The new library is wonderful – there are many books to pick and ( give – choose ) from.
10. I prefer the ( bustle – peace ) and quiet of the countryside when I'm on holiday.
11. Graduates with first class degrees can ( pick and choose– far and wide) the jobs they want.
12. The country is quiet for me, I would miss the ( hustle and bustle – odds and ends) of the city.
13. I tidied my office and found all kinds of ( peace and quiet – odds and ends) on my desk.
14. People came from ( nearest and dearest – far and wide) to see the exhibition.
15. We're having a big celebration, so we're inviting our ( nearest and dearest – odds and ends).

**الحلول**

1. far and wide 2. nearest and dearest 3. odds and ends 4. pick and choose 5. hustle and bustle 6. quiet 7. far 8. bustle 9. choose 10. peace 11. pick and choose 12. hustle and bustle 13. odds and ends 14. far and wide 15. nearest and dearest

**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

(1)1.A: ..... ? B: I arrived in England in 2001. 2.A: ..... ? B: I'm a teacher. 3.A: ..... ? B: I felt sad when I left my country. A: Who do you live with? 4.B: .....	(2)1.A: ..... ? B: My house has two storeys. 2.A: ..... ? B: It overlooks a beautiful garden. A: What is it planted with? 3.B: ..... 4.A: ..... ? B: The walls are white.
(3)1. A: ..... ? B: Yes, I have travelled abroad. 2.A: ..... ? B: I went to Cairo. 3.A: ..... ? B: To visit my cousins. A: How long did you stay there? 4.B: .....	(4)1.A: ..... ? B : My house is located in Lattakia. 2.A: ..... ? B: It is about five miles from the sea. 3.A: ..... ? B: It is quiet and comfortable. A: What does it look like? 4.B: .....

**الحلول**

- (1)1.A. When did you arrive in England? / Where did you arrive in 2001. 2.A. (What / Who) are you? / What do you do/ work?  
3.A. What did you feel when you left your country? 4.B. I live with my friends.  
(2)1.A. How many storeys does your house have? 2.A. What does it overlook? 3.B. It is planted with beautiful flowers.  
4.A. What colour are the walls? / What are white?  
(3)1.A. Have you travelled abroad? 2.A. Where did you go? 3.A. Why did you go to Cairo ( there ) ? 4.B. I stayed there for two weeks.  
(4)1.A. Where is your house located? 2.A. How far is it from the sea? 3.A. What is it like? 4.B. It is big and white.

**Complete the following sentences using clauses:**

- 1- While I was on holiday, ..... I bought a camera.
- 2- City people have to drive slowly, whereas ..... country people can drive fast.
- 3- City people often live in apartments, whereas ..... country people often live in houses.



- 4- City people often shop in supermarkets, whereas.....  
country people often shop in small shops.
- 5- Country people often have quite relaxing lives, but .....  
city people often have stressful lives.
- 6- The country is quiet, while ..... the city is noisy.
- 7- I prefer living in the country, whereas ..... my brother prefers the city.
- 8- We're having a big celebration next week, so..... I can't go on holiday.
- 9- In comparison with village life..... city life is more exciting.
- 10- In comparison with city people,..... country people have quiet life.
- 11- Landline phones are large and heavy, whereas.....  
mobile phones are small and light.
- 12- Supermarket fruit may be cheap, but..... they are not tasty and fresh.
- 13- Country people often have friendly neighbors, but .....  
city people don't know their neighbors.
- 14- I love spending time with my nearest and dearest, so..... we often have parties.
- 15- If you wanted to build a factory,..... you would have a lot of money.
- 16- Everyone heard the splash when..... he jumped into the water.
- 17- A friend of mine screams if..... she sees a cat close to her.

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

When large numbers of people move(1)..... their homes in country areas to find better paid jobs(2)..... towns and cities, the villages and farms they once lived (3)..... often left empty. No one wants to buy homes there(4)..... they cannot make money out of them. This phenomenon,(5)..... is called rural depopulation, can lead(6)..... overcrowding in cities as well as to fewer people in country areas. One example (7)..... this phenomenon is the Garrigues area of Spain, about one hour's drive from Barcelona. The area has (8)..... Mediterranean climate, but because (9)..... is high and not close to the sea, winter temperatures are quite low. The area (10)..... an annual rainfall level of 482mm which falls(11)..... only 47 days of the year, during the autumn and spring. Historically, this(12)..... a successful agricultural area;(13)..... the higher ground, the farmers grew almonds (14)..... vines, while in the river valleys, wheat, corn, beans and sunflowers were(15)..... traditional crops. The area was particularly well-known (16)..... its high quality olive oil which was grown mainly for export.

**الحلول**

1. from 2. in 3. are 4. because 5. which 6. to 7. of 8. a 9. it 10. has 11. in 12. was 13. on 14. and 15. the 16. for

The population of (1)..... area was at its highest about 150 years ago,(2)..... a typical village might have 50 inhabitants, (3)..... now some villages have as few as 100 permanent inhabitants. But as farming became less (4)..... less profitable, and unemployment grew, the population began (5)..... move to the cities to find work. This trend started (6)..... 1860 and has continued to this day. Now some villages consist mainly of elderly people. The area is suffering(7)..... the effects of depopulation, such as poor public services and deserted farms. In some parts of Europe in recent years, however, the move from the country to the city has(8)..... reversed as wealthy people move to the countryside to escape from the overcrowding, pollution and stress of city life. Some are moving permanently, (9)..... many are buying holiday or weekend homes (10)..... are empty for much of the year.

**الحلول**

1. the 2. when 3. whereas 4. and 5. to 6. in 7. from 8. been 9. but 10. which

I think I(1)..... found the perfect place for you. It is a palatial villa in (2)..... green suburban area that would really suit your needs. I know you have(3)..... complaining about the noise in your current apartment.



so the location of(4)..... new one would be a great improvement. It is quiet(5)..... calm and there is a picturesque park just over the road. There is not even much traffic, and (6)..... residents' parking you will never have trouble finding a space. It is also a lot more expansive (7)..... your current place and would have lots of room (8)..... entertaining. It is not furnished, so all of the furniture you already own could go straight in. You could make (9)..... your own very quickly. It's also (10)..... advantageous location. There is a large supermarket about five minutes away and it is very easy (11)..... reach the motorway. I really think you should arrange (13)..... viewing of this place. It is a great find that (14)..... would not want to miss out on.

## الحلول

1. have 2.a 3. been 4. the 5. and 6. with 7. than 8. for 9. it 10. an 11. to 13. a 14. you

The capital city of (1)..... country is very often its greatest city, (2)..... the largest population and the most important administrative buildings. Capital cities house government offices, as well as embassies(3)..... other countries. (4)..... are also financial centres, containing national and international banks (5)..... other financial institutions. Damascus is no different from other capital cities in this respect – (6)..... is the seat of government and the economic and cultural centre(7)..... Syria. With a population of around 5 million people, Damascus is(8)..... biggest city in Syria. The city (9)..... a rich history, and is considered the oldest city in the world. It has(10)..... continually inhabited for thousands of years. The commercial and administrative centre of the city (11)..... located in the modern part of the city, outside (12)..... ancient walls.

## الحلول

1.a 2.with 3. from 4.They 5.and 6.it 7. of 8. the 9.has 10. been 11.is 12.the

Brasilia, the capital city of Brazil, is both similar(1)..... and different from Damascus. Like Damascus, it is (2)..... administrative centre and contains the key political buildings(3)..... institutions. However, unlike Damascus, Brasilia is (4)..... the major cultural or economic centre of Brazil. The population of Brasilia is only around 2.5 million people,(5)..... is a tiny fraction of the huge Brazilian population. Built(6)..... the late 1950s, it is a new city and (7)..... only been the capital of Brazil since 1960. It took over (8)..... Rio de Janeiro, which remains (9)..... major economic and cultural centre, as well as having a population of many millions more. Brasilia is a very modern city and (10)..... it is so new, planners(11)..... able to strictly regulate its layout. It is divided into sectors, (12)..... specific zones for business, industry, government and residential areas.

## الحلول

1.to 2.an 3.and 4.not 5.which 6. in 7.has 8.from 9.a 10.because 11. were 12.with

This architect-designed house (1)..... two storeys and is located in (2)..... village two kilometres from the sea. It has a tiled roof (3)..... provides shady areas on both the ground floor(4)..... first floor. The house is surrounded by a colourful garden which has(5)..... well looked after. The property overlooks a luxurious swimming pool.(6)..... two-storey modern house (7)..... situated on the outskirts of a medium-sized town. It is surrounded(8)..... a large garden with a lawn, trees, shrubs and hedges. It has a flat roof and there are balconies outside the first floor windows. It is painted white and there are no other houses nearby. This two-storey modern building is located(9)..... a residential area in the suburbs of a large city. (10)..... has a small garden with recently planted trees and shrubs. The property is surrounded by a low wall which separates it(11)..... a quiet street. The house has a flat roof.

## الحلول

1. has 2.a 3. which 4. and 5.been 6.This 7.is 8. by 9. in 10.It 11. from



1. People come from far.....wide to see the Umayyad mosque in the center of Damascus.
2. I love spending time with my nearest.....dearest so we often have family get-togethers.
3. While I was on holiday I bought lots of odds.....ends to give as presents.
4. There are lots of restaurants near here. You can pick.....choose from about fifty.
5. Some people enjoy the hustle.....bustle of shopping in street markets.
6. I'll never forget the excitement I felt.....my first day at school.

### الحلول

1.and 2.and 3.and 4.and 5.and 6.on

### Translate into English:

1. يأتي الناس من كل حدب وصوب لرؤية الجامع الأموي في وسط دمشق (مهمة)
2. أحب قضاء الوقت مع اقربائي واحبائي، لذلك لدينا غالبا اجتماعات عائلية
3. يستمتع بعض الناس بصخب التسوق في أسواق الشوارع
4. يمكن للسائقين المتهورين ان يهددوا بشكل خطير سلامة المشاة
5. في مدينتي يوجد تنوع واسع من التسلالي لتختار منها
6. أود ان أعيش في قرية صغيرة هادئة قرب البحر
7. دمار العاصفة هو مذكّر دائم لقوة الطبيعة
8. سوف لن انسى ابدا الإثارة التي شعرت بها في يومي الأول بالمدرسة
9. المنطقة السكنية هي حيث الناس يعيشون
10. تحتوي المدن العواصم على مباني مهمة مثل البرلمان
11. تُعرف المباني الحكومية غالبا كأبنية إدارية
12. تُقام المصارف والمؤسسات المالية الأخرى عادة في المدينة العاصمة
13. يمكن لخريجو علامات الدرجة الأولى غالبا ان ينتقوا و يختاروا الاعمال هم يريدونها
14. اتى الناس من كل حدب وصوب لرؤية المعرض

- 1- People come from far and wide to see the Umayyad Mosque in the centre of Damascus.
- 2- I love spending time with my nearest and dearest, so we often have family get-togethers.
- 3- Some people enjoy the hustle and bustle of shopping in street markets.
- 4- Careless drivers can seriously threaten the safety of pedestrians.
- 5- In my city there is a wide variety of entertainments to choose from.
- 6- I'd like to live in a small peaceful village near the sea.
- 7- The storm damage is a lasting reminder of the power of nature.
- 8- I'll never forget the excitement I felt on my first day at school.
- 9- The residential area is where people live.
- 10- Capital cities contain key buildings such as the parliament.
- 11- Government buildings are often known as administrative buildings.
- 12- Banking and other financial institutions are usually based in the capital city.
- 13- Graduates with first class degrees can often pick and choose the jobs they want.
- 14- People came from far and wide to see the exhibition.

\*You are going to suggest which place would be the most suitable place to live for a family of four, a young couple and an elderly couple. (Student Book. P. 69)

\*Write your own description of a building you know well. It could be the building you live in.

Include the following:

(Activity Book. P. 51)

The location of the building

The appearance of the outside of the building

Information about any natural features near the building



### The Most Suitable Place to Live

Dear Mr. and Mrs. Samer ,

I think I have found the perfect place for you. It is a big villa in a green suburban area that would really suit your need. It is quiet and calm and there is not even much traffic .I know you have been complaining about your current apartment. There is a large supermarket neat the villa and it is very easy to reach the motorway. I will never forget to tell you that there is a school behind the villa, so children can walk to school and do not have to take a bus. I think you should arrange a viewing of it soon.

Many thanks

Khaled

\*أكتب بريدا إلكترونيا معطيا نصائح حول المسكان الملائم أكثر للعيش لعائلة من أربعة أشخاص ثنائي شاب و ثنائي كبير بالعمر.  
(كتاب الطالب ص 69)

\*أكتب وصفك الخاص لبناء تعرفه جيدا. يمكن أن يكون البناء الذي تعيش فيه. (كتاب النشاط ص 51)  
متضمناً التالي: موقع البناء المظهر الخارجي للبناء معلومات عن المعالم الطبيعية قرب البناء

### المسكان الملائم أكثر للعيش

عزيزي السيد حسام وزوجته :

أعتقد أنني قد وجدت المكان المناسب لكم. إنها فيلا كبيرة في ضاحية حقا. خضراء والتي سوف تناسب احتياجاتكم حقا. إنها هادئة ومستقرة ويوجد حتى الكثير من حركة المرور. أعرف بأنكم تشتكون حول شقتكم الحالية. يوجد محل كبير قرب الفيلا ومن السهل أن تصل إلى الطريق العام. سوف لن أنسى أن أخبركم أنه يوجد مدرسة خلف الفيلا، وهكذا فإن الأولاد يستطيعون أن يمشوا إلى المدرسة ولا يتوجب أن يركبوا الحافلة. أعتقد أنه يجب أن ترتبوا من أجل مشاهدتها حالا.

مع جزيل الشكر

خالد



## Unit 9

Students` Book ( Unit 9 )			
Hustle	صخب	Boast	يتفاخر - يتباهى
Bustle	ازدحام	Repetition	تكرار
Tune	لحن	Frequent	دائم - متكرر
Sticks	عصي	Compose	يؤلف
Percussion	اله طبليه	Expert	خبير
Violin	كمان	Dye	يصبغ
Strum	يداعب وتر	Dress	ثوب
Pluck	يفغر على وتر	Paint	يدهن
Hit	يضرب على اله	Take out	يقلع
Bow	يعزف بالقوس	Dentist	طبيب اسنان
Blow	ينفخ	Tooth	سن
Record	يسجل	Optician	بصري
Creative	مبدع	Eyes	عيون
Band	فرقة موسيقية	Test	يفحص - اختبار
Mail order	تطلب بريدي	Decorator	مهندس ديكور
Playing instruments	عزف على الات	Biographical details	تفاصيل شخصية
Persuasive	مقنع	Physical description	وصف جسدي
Changed his tune	غير رأيه	Dates	تواريخ
Change one`s mind	يغير رأيه	Career	مهنة
Consequences	عواقب	Beliefs	معتقدات
Put up with	يحتمل	Personal details	تفاصيل شخصية
		Date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد
Trumpet	بوق	Height	إرتفاع
Face the music	يواجه العواقب	Weight	وزن
Drummed into	تلقن ل / يعلم بتسكوار	Hair color	لون الشعر
Qualifications	مؤهلات	Modernize	يحدث - يطور
Previous jobs	اعمال سابقة	Electrical system	نظام كهربائي
Current jobs	اعمال حالية	Ceilings	اسقف
Achievements	إنجازات	Accept	يقبل
Challenge	تحدي	Flute	ناي
Significant	هام	Repaint	يعيد دهان
Biography	سيرة ذاتية بقلم الآخرين	Replace	يستبدل
Autobiography	سيرة ذاتية بقلم الكاتب	Check	يفحص
Civil servant	موظف حكومي	Take away	يرمي
House wife	ربة منزل	Redecorate	يعيد تزيين
Bright	ذكي	Deliver	يسلم
Civil engineer	مهندس مدني	Clean	ينظف
A course	دورة - منهاج	Chairs	كراسي
Wood work	عمل خشبي	Tables	طاولات
Carpenter	نجار	Air-conditioning	مكيف هواء
Folk music	موسيقى شعبية	Living room	غرفة المعيشة
Spare time	وقت فراغ	Repair	يصلح
Finely	رائعة	Salt	ملح
Crafting instruments	الات يدوية	Do away with	يتخلص من / يلغى
Give up	يتخلى عن	Do up	يرتب - يربط حذاء
Get married	يتزوج	Do without	يستغني عن



Earn	يكسب	Make up	يخترع
Demand	طلب	Get rid of	يتخلص من
Figure	رقم	Make a decision	يتخذ قرار
Personality	شخصية	Individually	بشكل فردي
Musician	موسيقي	Fast food	وجبات سريعة
Worth	يستحق	Modest	متواضع
Travel agency	وكالة سفر	He never blows his trumpet	لا يتفاخر بنفسه
Center	مركز	Promote=support	يروج - يدعم
landing phones	هواتف أرضية	Signs	إشارات - علامات
<b>Activity Book ( Unit 9 )</b>			
Modernization	تحديث	Revive	إحياء
Undergo	يخضع	Establish	يؤسس
Transportation	النقل	Trading center	مركز تجاري
Involvement	مشاركة	Craft	حرفة
Crucial	حاسم - هام	Craft man ship	الحرف اليدوية
A wide variety	تنوع واسع	Millennia	آلاف السنين
Fast pace	خطوة سريعة	Dating to	يعود تاريخه
Import	يستورد	Remarkable	ملحوظ - مميز
Export	يصدر	Totally	بشكل كلي
Dedicated	مكرس - مسخر	Evidence	دليل
Hand-made copper	نحاس مصنوع يدويا	Trade	تجارة
Goods	بضائع	Traditional	تقليدي
Ensure	يضمن	Preservation	محافظة
Vanish	تفنى - تتلاشى	Region	منطقة
Material	مادة	Several	عدة
Include	تتضمن	Support	يدعم
Weaponry	أسلحة	Historians	مؤرخين
Jewelry	مجوهرات	Civilisations	حضارات
Ornaments	زينة	Blow	ينفخ
Percussions	آلات إيقاعية - طبلية	Open-air life	الحياة في الهواء الطلق
Pluck	ينقر على الوتر	Neighbors	جيران
Strum	يضاعف وتر	In comparison	بالمقارنة
Blow his own trumpet	يتفاخر	Challenging	تحدي
Change his tune	يغير رأيه	Varied	متنوع
Drum something into someone	يلقن	Incredible	لا يصدق
Face the music	يواجه - يتحمل العواقب	Alive	حي
Tell lies	يكذب	Obviously	بشكل واضح
Eventually	أخيرا	Whereas	بينما
Big-headed person	مغرور	College	كلية
Stand	يطبق - يتحمل	Promote	يروج - يشجع
Popularize	يروج - ترويج	Nowhere	مكان مجهول
Currently	حاليا	Farm	مزرعة
Globalization	العولمة	Poster	ملصق
Mass-produced goods	بضائع منتجة بشكل هائل	Made a decision	اتخذ قرار
Date to	يعود تاريخه ل	Sale	بيع
Copper	نحاس	Commercial	تجاري



Preserve	يحافظ	The difference between	الفرق بين
Tradition	تقليد / عرف	Experts	خبراء
Mentioned	مذكور	Construction company	شركة بناء
Artifact	تحفة اثرية	Bride	عروس
Skilled	ماهر	Wedding dress	ثوب الزفاف
Artisan	حرفي	Specialist	اخصائي
Bronze age	عصر البرونز	Dressmaker	خياط
Ornate	مزخرف	Service	يخدم
An object	شيء	Serve	خدمة
Interest	إهتمام	Service the car	يقوم بصيانة السيارة
Ability	قدرة	Professionally	بشكل محترف
Talent	موهبة	Toothache	ألم اسنان
Worker	عامل	Dentist	طبيب أسنان
Trade	تجارة	Mend=repair	يصلح
Items	أشياء - مواد	Glasses	نظارات
Prehistory	ماقبل التاريخ	Redecorate	يعيد تزيين
Weapons	أسلحة	Test	يفحص
Tools	أدوات	Plant	يزرع
Commonly	عموما	Eyesight	بصر
Intricately	بشكل معقد	Calligrapher	خطاط
Complex patterns	نماذج معقدة	Profession	مهنة
Interaction	تفاعل	Arts faculty	كلية الفنون
Civilization	حضارة	Festival	مهرجان
Cross roads	مفترق طرق	Honored	كرم
Trading routes	طرق للتجارة	Artist union	نقابة الفنانين
Training	تدريب	Took part	شارك
Promoting	ترويج	Exhibition	معرض
Regional	إقليمية	International	دولي
Products	منتجات	Aim	يهدف
Production	إنتاج	Amazing	مذهل
Strive	يناضل - يجاهد	Excitement	متعة - إثارة
Processes	عمليات	Country	الريف
Involved in	مشاركة بـ	Took his tooth out	خلع ضرسه
Cutting	قص	TV aerial	هوائي التلفاز
Welding	لحام	Do it up	يرممه
Ornamentation	زخرفة	Make up a story	يخلق قصة
Metal	معادن	Do away with	يلغي
Thoroughly	إبانتقان	Online banking	خدمات مصرفية على النت
for sale	للبيع	Pool	بركة - حوض سباحة
Craftsmen	حرفيين	Tourist attraction	معلم سياحي
Union	رابطة - اتحاد	Tasty	لذيذ
World-famous industry	صناعة مشهورة عالميا	Encourage	يشجع
Ornate copper items	مواد نحاسية مزخرفة	Artisans	حرفيون
Small handful	عدد قليل	Practice	يمارس



### Self - taught success

Tareq was born in Damascus in 1962 into a successful Syrian family. His father worked as a civil servant and his mother, who had once been a teacher, was a hardworking housewife. His brother Hani was very bright and, after finishing university, went on to become a civil engineer. Tareq was good with his hands and so, instead of going to university, took a course in woodwork and became a carpenter. He loved Syrian folk music and, in his spare time, made musical instruments, finely crafting instruments such as ouds. One day, one of his friends saw an oud he had made and asked him to make one for him too. This was the beginning of Tareq's career as an instrument maker and soon he was able to give up selling furniture and make instruments instead. With the money he earned he was able to get married and start a family, buying his own villa outside Damascus. His instruments have become famous across Syria and the Arab world, and there is now a great demand for these instruments. One of Tareq's sons, Saleh, has decided to follow his father into the business and so Tareq is teaching him how to make the oud.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. Where and when was Tareq born?
2. What was his father's job?
3. What did his brother, Hani, study at the university?
4. Why didn't Tareq go to university?
5. What did Tareq do in his free time?
6. What did Tareq do when he got a lot of money?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

7. someone whose job is making or mending wooden objects
8. got money
9. known about by many people in many places.

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:

10. Tareq was an instrument maker before he became a furniture maker.
11. Tareq's instruments are well-known in Syria only.
12. Tareq is Saleh's brother.

#### الاجوبه

1. in Damascus in 1962. 2. a civil servant 3. civil engineering 4. Because he took a course in woodwork and became a carpenter.
5. He made musical instruments. 6. He married and bought his own villa outside Damascus. 7. carpenter 8. earned 9. famous
10. ~~before~~-after 11. ~~only~~ and the Arab World. 12. ~~brother~~ father

### Traditional crafts in Aleppo

Syria has undergone a period of modernisation in the last few years, with new buildings and improved transportation services in **its** cities. Yet it remains an ancient land that has enjoyed involvement and interaction with many different civilisations over the last ten thousand years. Syria's historical importance and its crucial location at the crossroads of several ancient trading routes mean that a wide variety of crafts have developed. However, the fast pace of globalisation is threatening the skilled local artisans who strive to preserve these wonderful traditions. As cheaper, mass-produced goods are imported from abroad, it is important that people are made aware of these traditional crafts and those who practise **them**. In the city of Aleppo there is a market dedicated to protecting hand-made copper goods, to ensure that this ancient craft does not vanish. Copper artefacts have been discovered all over the region. Some of these artefacts date to the Bronze Age, around 3000 BCE. Historians have identified a number of uses for the material including weaponry, jewellery and ornaments. These items give us information about the way ancient peoples lived and interacted. The Aleppo Craftsmen Union is trying to revive this world-famous industry by establishing a training centre and promoting the local and regional trade of copper products. There are several processes involved in the production of copper goods, including cutting, welding and ornamentation. The metal then has to be thoroughly cleaned before **it** is suitable for sale. Currently, only a small handful of artisans continue to practise this craft. However, local people are being encouraged to learn the skills needed to make ornate copper items which will be suitable for commercial sale.



**Answer the following questions:**

1. Why is there such a variety of historical crafts in Syria?
2. How are these traditional crafts being threatened?
3. Why are copper artefacts useful to historians?
4. What do the words **its** , **them** , **it** refer to ?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. a period of prehistory when weapons and tools were commonly made of bronze
6. intricately decorated with complex patterns or constructions
7. having a special ability or skill

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. The Aleppo Craftsman Union established a training centre to stop the industry of copper goods.
9. Nowadays, a lot of artisans practise the copper craft.

**الاجوبه**

1. Because of its long history of interaction with different civilizations and of its location at the crossroads of several ancient trading routes.
2. by globalization, by cheaper, mass-produced goods from abroad. - the fast pace of globalisation is threatening the skilled local artisans
3. They give information about the way ancient peoples lived and interacted. 4. its : Syria – them : traditional crafts – it : metal
5. Bronze Age 6. ornate 7. skilled 8. ~~stop~~ revive 9. ~~A lot~~ A small handful

**City or Country ?**

I was born in the country, and for the first eighteen years of my life I lived there. My family's farm was in the middle of nowhere, five kilometres from our nearest neighbours and ten from the nearest school, shops and post office. As a child, I enjoyed the open-air life, but when I was eighteen I went to university and couldn't believe how incredible city life was. In comparison with my life on the farm, my new life was exciting, challenging and very varied. I got to know a lot of new people and I went to many places. Of course everything moves much more quickly in the city, and that can sometimes be stressful, but at least you know you're alive. In the country, you sometimes forget! Obviously, city life has its disadvantages, like the noise, the traffic and the crowds of people, but these things don't worry me too much. I don't drive, so traffic problems and parking difficulties don't affect me. It only takes me ten minutes to get to the supermarket by taxi, whereas in the old days in the country, a shopping trip used to take half a day. Maybe I'll want to go back to the peace and quiet of the country one day, but for now I'm enjoying the hustle and bustle of city life.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Where did the writer live as a child?
2. How far did he have to travel to go to school?
3. How was his life different when he went to the city?
4. What disadvantages of city life does the writer mention?
5. Why isn't the writer worried about traffic conditions in the city?
6. Why does he prefer shopping in supermarkets?
7. What advantages of country life did the writer mention?
8. Does he think he will go back to live in the country?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

9. people who live next to you
10. extremely good, large or great
11. not remember

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

12. The writer disliked the open – air life in the country.
13. He moved to the country to find a business.

**الاجوبه**

1. in the country 2. ten km 3. It was exciting, challenging and varied. 4. the noise, the traffic and the crowds of people. 5. Because he doesn't drive.
6. Because it only takes ten minutes to get to the supermarket by taxi. 7. peace and quiet - the open-air life. 8. He doesn't know. He thinks he may go back one day. 9 . neighbours 10. incredible 11. forget 12. ~~disliked~~ enjoyed 13. ~~country~~ city ~~find a business~~ go to university



● **Causative Verbs الافعال السببية:** نستخدم التركيب ( **have/ has + مفعول به + V3** ) عندما نسأل شخص ما ليقوم بعمل ما

بدلاً منا أو بالنيابة عنا

- **مثال:** **حاضر بسيط** - I have my house painted. **ماضي بسيط** I had my house painted.

**ملاحظة:** يأتي سؤال الأفعال السببية غالباً بإعطاء جملة عادية اثبات أو نفي فإننا نحولها إلى جملة سببية أي نستخدم التركيب

( **have/ has + مفعول به + V3** ) ونعكس الجملة اثبات → نفي **بنفس الزمن** مع تحويل المفعول به إلى ضمير ( **it** )

إذا كان مفرد و ( **them** ) إذا كان جمع

My father doesn't clean his car himself.

- **خطوات الحل:**

He .....

1- نضع الفاعل أو ضميره

He has .....

2- نضع الفعل ( have ) حيث يكون له نفس زمن الجملة ويكون عكسها في الاثبات والنفي

He has it .....

3- نضع المفعول به أو ضميره ( it / them )

He has it cleaned.

4- نضع الفعل الرئيسي في التصريف الثالث ونهي الجملة بالنقطة ( هو يحصل عليها منظفه )

**My father doesn't clean his car himself. → He has it cleaned.**

ابي لا ينظف سيارته بنفسه

→ هو يحصل عليها منظفه

- **قاعده:**

جمع / مفرد

( **حاضر بسيط اثبات** ) **V1 / (V1)s** → ( **حاضر بسيط نفي** ) **don't / doesn't have + it / them + V3**

I cut my hair myself.

→ I don't have it cut.

جمع / مفرد

( **حاضر بسيط نفي** ) **don't / doesn't + V1**

→ ( **حاضر بسيط اثبات** ) **have / has + it / them + V3**

My father doesn't clean his car himself.

→ He has it cleaned.

جمع / مفرد

( **ماضي بسيط اثبات** ) **V2**

→ ( **ماضي بسيط نفي** ) **didn't have + it / them + V3**

My neighbor painted his own house.

→ He didn't have it painted.

جمع / مفرد

( **ماضي بسيط نفي** ) **didn't + V1**

→ ( **ماضي بسيط اثبات** ) **had + it / them + V3**

We didn't cut down the trees in our garden ourselves.

→ We had them cut down.

**Rewrite the following sentences ( Use causative verb):**

- I didn't repair the car myself. ....
- My mother dyed her own dress blue. ....
- She didn't make the dress herself. ....
- He isn't going to take his own photo. ....
- My brother cut his own hair. ....
- My neighbour painted his own house. ....
- My father doesn't clean his car himself. ....
- We didn't cut down the trees in our garden ourselves. ....
- I couldn't repair my computer myself. ....
- We didn't build our own house. ....
- Brides rarely make their own wedding dresses. ....

**الحلول**

- I had the car repaired. 2. My mother didn't have her dress dyed blue. 3. She had the dress made. 4. He is going to have his photo taken. 5. My brother didn't have his hair cut. 6. My neighbour didn't have his house painted. 7. My father has his car cleaned. 8. We had the trees in our garden cut down. 9. I had my computer repaired. 10. We had our house built. 11. Brides have their wedding dresses made.



**B. Correct the verbs in brackets:**

1. He isn't going to take his own photo. He..... ( have) it taken.
2. If you go to a dentist, you can have a tooth .....( take) out.
3. Are they going to build their own house? No, they're going to have it .....( build).
4. If you go to an optician, you can have your eyesight..... ( test).
5. I can have my house .....( paint) by a decorator.
6. I couldn't repair my computer myself. I had to have it .....( repair) by a computer expert.
7. Will you be able to test your own eyesight? No, I'll have to have it .....( test ).
8. Are they going to build their own house? No, they.....( have) it built.
9. Did Hussam take his own tooth out? No, he ..... ( have) it taken out.

**الحلول**

1. is going to have 2. taken 3. built 4. tested 5. painted 6. repaired 7. tested 8. are going to have 9. had

**C. Choose the correct words in brackets:**

1. I can have my house painted ( by - from ) a decorator.
2. She tried mending her **glasses**, but she couldn't. She had to have ( it – them) mended by the optician.
3. Do you like this **photograph** of our family? We had ( it – them ) taken by a local photographer.
4. Did you redecorate the **flat** yourself? No, I had ( it – them ) redecorated.
5. Did you put that TV **aerial** up yourself? No, I had ( it – them ) put up.
6. Did Rana take those **photos** herself? No, she had ( it – them ) taken.

**الحلول**

1. by 2. them 3. it 4. it 5. it 6. them

**ازمنه متنوعه**

1. 'I teach economics.' He said he ..... ( teach ) economics.
2. 'I'm a lecturer.' He said he ..... ( be) a lecturer.
3. 'Did you enjoy your holiday?' I asked if he ..... ( enjoy ) his holiday.
4. Alberto and Maria ..... ( be) married **for nearly eighty years**.
5. Sunil ..... ( work ) sixteen hours **a day** in the family shop.
6. Mary ..... ( get up) early **every morning**.
7. Scientists **frequently** ..... ( do ) experiments to test their ideas.
8. If you ..... ( make ) a mistake, you **have to** do your homework again.
9. **Every day** I ..... ( do ) the shopping for my mother.
10. **When I was 12**, I ..... ( make ) the decision not to eat any more fast food.
11. People .....(come) from far and wide to see the Umayyad Mosque.
12. While I was on holiday I.....( buy) lots of odds and ends.
13. Mahmoud is very modest – that's why he **never** ..... ( blow ) his own trumpet.
14. You should think carefully before you ..... ( make ) your decision.
15. **If** I ..... ( make ) a mistake, I **could** do a lot of damage .
16. **If** everyone ..... ( use ) online banking, they'll do away with banks.

**الحلول**

1. taught 2. was 3. had enjoyed 4. have been 5. works 6. gets up 7. do 8. make 9. do 10. made 11. come 12. bought  
13. blows 14. make 15. made 16. uses

**● كلمات تذهب معاً:**

- **blow** ( saxophones / trumpets / flute )
- **pluck / strum** ( guitar / oud / strings )
- **hit** ( percussion / instruments / tablah )
- **bow** a violin

You have to ( **blow – hit** ) **saxophones and trumpets.** :

- مثال :



## - Music Idioms مصطلحات الموسيقى:

- يتحمل العواقب face the music → put up with the consequences يتحمل العواقب
  - يغير رأيه change his tune → change one`s mind يغير عقل الشخص
  - يتفاخر blow his / her own trumpet → boast / say good things about oneself يتفاخر
  - يعلم بواسطة الإعادة المتكررة drum into → teach by frequent repetition يلقن / يكرر
- هنا مجموعه من الأفعال المركبه والكلمات التي يمكن ان تستخدم معها
- face the music ( lies / the police ) - blow his / her own trumpet ( big-headed / modest )
- drum into ( children ) - change his tune ( fast foot / cheap ) -

**Choose the correct answer between brackets :**

1. He's been telling **lies** to so many people. Eventually they will find out and he'll have to (blow his own trumpet , face the music).
2. I can't stand the kind of **big-headed** person who (blows his own trumpet , drums into) all the time.
3. He was against the idea of a holiday in Greece, but he (faced the music , changed his tune) when he found out how **cheap** the flight was.
4. The importance of knowing the difference between right and wrong is usually (drummed into , blown his own trumpet) **children** by their parents at a very early age.
5. You've (blown your trumpet , changed your tune). Yesterday you said you'd never eat **fast food** again.
6. If you drive too fast and **the police** stop you, you'll just have to (change your tune , face the music).
7. Mahmoud is very **modest**- that's why he never (blows his own trumpet , faces the music).

## الحلول

1. face the music 2. blows his own trumpet 3. Changed his tune 4. drummed into  
5. changed your tune 6. Face the music 7. blows his own trumpet

## مفردات متنوعه

1. My aunt is my father`s ( daughter – sister).
2. My grandfather is my mother`s ( father – mother ).
3. My mother`s sister is my ( aunt - niece ).
4. My mother and ( brother – father ) have been married for 22 years.
5. In Mexico she met the ( Earth`s – world`s ) oldest married couple.
6. Alberto and Maria`s son said his parents had ( a simple – an easy ) way of life.
7. Sunil says his customers are all his ( near – close ) friends.
8. Sunil said he`d enjoyed every ( one – single) day of his life.
9. The ( administrative - residential ) area is where people live.
10. Capital cities contain key ( financial - government ) buildings such as the parliament.
11. Government buildings are known as (administrative- industrial) buildings.
12. In Brasilia, if you wanted to build a factory, you would do it in the ( administrative - industrial) sector.
13. Banking and other ( financial - administrative ) institutions are usually based in the capital city.

## الحلول

1. sister 2. father 3. aunt 4. father 5. world`s 6. a simple 7. close 8. single 9. residential 10. government 11. Administrative  
12. industrial 13. Financial



**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

<p>(1)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I left the village to work in the city.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I was at the age of twenty.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I miss the peace and quiet in the country.</p> <p>A: What is the city life like ?</p> <p>4.B: .....</p>	<p>(2)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B : Yes, it was very easy to find work.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I was offered two jobs in two days.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I'm working for a large travel agency.</p> <p>A: When do you start and finish work?</p> <p>4.B: .....</p>
<p>(3)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I was born in the country.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: My family's farm was ten kilometres from the nearest school.</p> <p>3.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I went to university when I was eighteen.</p> <p>A: What was your new life like?</p> <p>4.B: .....</p>	<p>(4)1.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I don't drive, so traffic problems don't affect me.</p> <p>2.A: .....?</p> <p>B: It only takes me ten minutes to get to the supermarket.</p> <p>A: How can you go there?</p> <p>3.B: .....</p> <p>4.A: .....?</p> <p>B: I'm enjoying the hustle and bustle of city life now.</p>

**الحلول**

- (1)1.A. Why did you leave the village? 2.A. How old were you? 3.A. What do you miss in the country? 4.B. It is very exciting.  
 (2)1.A. Was it very easy to find work? 2.A. How many jobs were you offered in two days? / What were you offered? 3.A. What are you working for? / Where are you working? 4.A. I start at 6 o'clock and finish at 4 o'clock.  
 (3)1.A. Where were you born? 2.A. Where were your family's farm? / ( How many kilometres / How far) were your family's farm from the nearest school. 3.A. When did you go to university? / How old were you when you went to university? 4.B. It was exciting.  
 (4)1.A. Why don't traffic problems affect you? 2.A. How much time does It you take to get to the supermarket? 3.B. I can go there on foot. 4.A. What are you enjoying of city life now?

**Complete the following sentences using clauses:**

- 1- If you break the law, ..... you have to face the music.  
 2- Too much salt is bad for you, but ..... you can't do without it.  
 3- If you drive too fast, ..... you have to pay a fine.  
 4- He was against the idea, but ..... he changed his tune.  
 5- I've got a really bad toothache, so ..... I can't sleep.  
 6- Before we can sell the flat, ..... we have to do it up.  
 7- Laila is very good at blowing her own trumpet, so ..... she may get that job.  
 8- The importance of crossing the road safely is drummed into children when ..... they are very young.  
 9- Omar said he was going to buy a Porsche, but he changed his tune when ..... he discovered the price.  
 10- If you go to a dentist, ..... you can have your tooth taken out.  
 11- If you go to an optician, ..... you can have your eyes tested.  
 12- Landline phones are fixed in on place, whereas ..... you can carry mobile phones with you.  
 13- You can only talk to people on landline phones, but ..... you can send text messages with mobile phones.  
 14- If everyone uses online banking, ..... they'll do away with banks.  
 15- He said he didn't want to swim, but he changed his tune ..... when he saw the pool.



**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

Tareq (1)..... born in Damascus in 1962 into (2)..... successful Syrian family. (3)..... father worked as a civil servant and his mother, (4)..... had once been a teacher, was a hardworking housewife. His brother Hani was very bright and, (5)..... finishing university, went on (6)..... become a civil engineer. Tareq was good with his hands and so, instead (7)..... going to university, took a course in woodwork (8)..... became a carpenter. He loved Syrian folk music and, (9)..... his spare time, made musical instruments, finely crafting instruments such as ouds. One day, one of his friends saw (10)..... oud he had made and asked him (11)..... make one for him too. This was (12)..... beginning of Tareq's career as an instrument maker and soon he was able to give (13)..... selling furniture and make instruments instead. With the money he earned he was able to (14)..... married and start a family, buying his own villa outside Damascus. His instruments (15)..... become famous across Syria and the Arab world, and (16)..... is now a great demand (17)..... these instruments. One of Tareq's sons, Saleh, has decided to follow his father into the business and (18)..... Tareq is teaching him how to make the oud.

**الحلول**

1.was 2.a 3.His 4.who 5.after 6.to 7.of 8.and 9.in 10.an 11.to 12.the 13.up 14.get 15.have 16.there 17.for 18.so

Syria (1)..... undergone a period of modernisation in (2)..... last few years, with new buildings and improved transportation services in (3)..... cities. Yet it remains (4)..... ancient land that has enjoyed involvement and interaction (5)..... many different civilisations over the last ten thousand years. Syria's historical importance and its crucial location (6)..... the crossroads of several ancient trading routes mean that a wide variety of crafts have developed. However, the fast pace of globalisation (7)..... threatening the skilled local artisans (8)..... strive to preserve (9)..... wonderful traditions. As cheaper, mass-produced goods are imported (10)..... abroad, it is important that people are made aware (11)..... these traditional crafts and those who practice (12).....

**الحلول**

1.has 2.the 3.its 4.an 5.with 6.at 7.is 8.who 9.these 10.from 11.of 12.them

In the city of Aleppo there is (1)..... market dedicated (2)..... protecting hand-made copper goods, to ensure that this ancient craft (3)..... not vanish. Copper artefacts have (4)..... discovered all over the region. Some (5)..... these artefacts date to the Bronze Age, around 3000 BCE. Historians have identified a number of uses (6)..... the material including weaponry, jewellery (7)..... ornaments. These items give us information (8)..... the way ancient peoples lived and interacted. The Aleppo Craftsmen Union (9)..... trying to revive this world-famous industry (10)..... establishing a training centre and promoting the local and regional trade of copper products. There (11)..... several processes involved (12)..... the production of copper goods, including cutting, welding and ornamentation. The metal then has to be thoroughly cleaned before it is suitable (13)..... sale. Currently, only a small handful of artisans continue to practise this craft. However, local people are (14)..... encouraged to learn the skills needed to make ornate copper items (15)..... will be suitable for commercial sale.

**الحلول**

1. a 2.to 3.does 4.been 5.of 6.for 7.and 8.about 9.is 10.by 11.are 12.in 13. for 14. being 15.which

I was born (1)..... the country, and for the first eighteen years of (2)..... life I lived there. My family's farm was in (3)..... middle of nowhere, five kilometres (4)..... our nearest neighbours and ten from the nearest school, shops (5)..... post office. As a child, I enjoyed the open-air life, (6)..... when I was eighteen I went (7)..... university and couldn't believe how incredible city life was. In comparison (8)..... my life on the farm, my new life (9)..... exciting, challenging and very varied. I got to know a lot of new people and



(10)..... went to many places. (11)..... course everything moves much more quickly (12)..... the city, and that may sometimes be stressful,(13)..... at least you know you (14)..... alive. In the country, you sometimes forget!

**الحلول**

1.in 2. my 3. the 4.from 5.and 6. but 7.to 8. with 9. was 10. I 11.of 12.in 13. but 14.

Obviously, city life (1)..... its disadvantages, like the noise, the traffic (2)..... the crowds of people, but these things don't worry (3)..... too much. I don't drive (4)..... traffic problems and parking difficulties (5)..... affect me. It only takes me ten minutes (6)..... get to the supermarket(7)..... taxi, whereas in (8)..... old days in the country, a shopping trip used (9)..... take half a day. Maybe I will want to go back to the peace(10)..... quiet of the country one day, (11)..... for now I am enjoying the hustle and bustle (12)..... city life.

**الحلول**

1. has 2.and 3.me 4.so 5.don't 6. to 7. by 8.the 9.to 10. and 11.but 12.of

1. Laila is very good..... blowing her own trumpet, so she'll probably get that job.
2. If you break the law, you have to face..... music.
3. The importance of crossing the road safely is drummed..... children when they are very young.
4. Omar said he was going to buy a Porsche, ..... he changed his tune when he discovered the price.
5. I didn't repair the car myself. I..... it repaired.
6. She didn't make the dress herself. She..... it made.
7. Tareq was born..... Damascus in 1962 into a successful Syrian family.
8. His father worked as a civil servant and his mother, ..... had once been a teacher, was a hardworking housewife.
9. His brother ,Hani, was very bright and, after finishing university, went on to become ..... civil engineer.
10. Tareq was good with his hands and so, instead of going to university, took a course in woodwork..... become a carpenter.
11. He loved Syrian folk music and..... his spare time, made musical instruments, finely crafting instruments such as ouds.
12. One day, one of his friends saw an oud he had made and asked him to make one for ..... too.
13. This was the beginning of Tareq's career as..... instrument maker and soon he was able to give up selling furniture and make instruments instead.
14. With..... money he earned he was able to get married and start a family, buying his own villa outside Damascus.
15. His instruments..... become famous across Syria and Arab world, and there is now a great demand for these instruments.
16. One of Tareq's sons, Saleh, has decided to follow his father into the business and Tareq is teaching him how..... make the oud.
17. Mobile phones are more up-to-date..... traditional phones.
18. My father and mother have been married..... 22 years.
19. The teacher asked the students to invent a story..... the sea.
20. Too much salt is bad for you, ..... you shouldn't do without it altogether.

1.at 2.the 3.into 4.but 5.had 6.had 7.in 8.who 9.a 10.and 11.in 12.him 13.an 14.the 15.have 16.to 17.than 18.for 19.about 20.but

**Translate into English:**

1. لقد عانت سوريا فترة من التحديث في السنوات القليلة الماضية
2. تهدد الخطوة السريعة للعولمة الحرفيين المحليين الماهرين
3. يُهدد الحرفيين المحليين بواسطة العولمة المتزايدة
4. لقد وُجدت التحف النحاسية في المنطقة بالعودة لحوالي 3000 قبل الميلاد



5. لقد كانت سوريا مركزا للتجارة في المنطقة لآلاف السنين
6. إستُخدمت التحف النحاسية بواسطة المؤرخين كدليل على حضارات الماضي
7. العيش في المدينة غالي بالمقارنة مع الريف
8. ربما تكون رخيصة فواكه السوبر ماركت لكنها ليست كمذاق الفواكه من السوق
9. توجب على الطلاب ان يخترعوا قصة بشأن عطلتهم الأخيرة
10. دعنا نطفأ التلفاز ونملك بعض السلام والهدوء من اجل التغيير
11. اتى الناس من كل حدب وصوب لرؤية المعرض

- 1- Syria has undergone a period of modernisation in the last few years.
- 2- The fast pace of globalisation is threatening the skilled local artisans.
- 3- Local artisans are threatened by increasing globalisation.
- 4- Copper artefacts have been found in the region dating to around 3000 BCE.
- 5- Syria has been a centre of trade in the region for thousands of years.
- 6- Copper artefacts are used by historians as evidence of past civilisations.
- 7- It's expensive to live in the city in comparison with the country.
- 8 - Supermarket fruit may be cheap, but it isn't always as tasty as fruit from a market
- 9 - The students had to make up a story about their recent holiday.
- 10- Let's turn the television off and have some peace and quiet for a change.
- 11- People came from far and wide to see the exhibition.

\*You are going to write a short **biography** of someone you know or know about. (Student Book P: 75) (نور 2012)

\*Write a brief **biography** of a person you know well. Include some of this information. (Activity Book P: 56)

Name /age	Appearance	Family background /Education	Occupation /specialty
Hobbies and interests		Other important information	

### Tom Edison

Tom Edison was a great scientist .He was born with a curious mind that made him ask himself questions while he was still very young. By the age of ten, it was clear that Tom wanted to be a scientist. He set up a laboratory at home and began his own experiments. The electric lamp is probably the most useful thing Edison invented. He knew that electricity produced power and heat. He changed night into day. Edison worked hard and enjoyed his life working for the pleasure and happiness of other people. He died in 1931 at the age of eighty-four.



\*أكتب سيرة ذاتية مختصرة لشخص تعرفه أو تعرف عنه. (كتاب الطالب ص 75)

\*أكتب سيرة ذاتية مختصرة لشخص تعرفه بشكل جيد. متضمناً بعض من هذه المعلومات (كتاب النشاط ص 56)

الاسم / العمر	المظهر	المعلومات العائلية / الثقافة	المنصب / التخصص
الهوايات والاهتمامات	معلومات هامة اخرى		

### توم إديسون

كان توم إديسون عالماً عظيماً. ولد بعقل فضولي الذي جعله يسأل نفسه أسئلة عندما كان صغيراً جداً. بعمر العاشرة كان واضحاً أن توم أراد أن يصبح عالماً. جهز مخبراً في المنزل وبدأ تجاربه الخاصة. المصباح الكهربائي وهو الشيء الأكثر فائدة اخترعه إديسون. كما عرف أن الكهرباء أنتجت الطاقة والحرارة. هو حول الليل إلى نهار. عمل إديسون بجد واستمتع بحياته يعمل من أجل سعادة وهناك الناس الآخرين. مات عام 1931 بعمر الرابعة والثمانين.

Make a poster to promote a tourist attraction in your country. Choose one of these places: (Activity Book - P: 60)

A historical town or city

An interesting old building

An area of natural beauty

### A Tourist Attraction

Palmyra is a famous city in the Syrian Desert. It has ancient ruins and amazing buildings. It is very beautiful. Many tourists go there every year. There are nice hotels and interesting places to visit. We went there last year. We saw theatres and wonderful views. We travelled by camels and had a great time. The weather was very hot in the day. We watched the stars and counted them at night. It was really a fantastic experience I will always remember.

إصنع ملصقاً إعلانياً لتروج لمعلماً سياحياً في بلدك. اختر واحداً من هذه الأماكن : (كتاب النشاط ص 60)

منطقة ذات جمال طبيعي

بناء قديم ممتع

بلدة أو مدينة تاريخية

### معلم سياحي

تدمر مدينة مشهورة في الصحراء السورية. إنها تملك آثار قديمة وأبنية مذهشة. إنها أيضاً جميلة جداً. سياح عديدين يذهبون إلى هناك كل عام. هناك فنادق جميلة وأماكن ممتعة لتزور. نحن ذهبنا إلى هناك العام الماضي. رأينا مسارح و مناظر جميلة. سافرنا بواسطة الجمال وملكنا وقتاً عظيماً. الطقس كان حار جداً في النهار. شاهدنا النجوم وعددناهم في الليل. إنها كانت حقاً تجربة رائعة التي سوف أتذكرها دائماً.



## Unit 10

Students` Book ( Unit 10 )		
		ينافس
Force	يجبر	Eventual
Exceptional	استثنائي	Rival
Prestigious	مرموق	Spectacle
Rivalry	تنافس	A public display
Dedication	تفاني - تكريس	Opponent
Aspiring	طموح	Participate
Determination	تصميم - عزيمة	Field
Record breaker	محطم ارقام قياسية	Direct
Challenge	تحدي	Series of events
Elite	النخبة	Hope for
Construction	إنشاء - بناء	Aim
Dam	سد	Commitment a cause
Disrupt	يعطل - يشوش	Race
Divert	يحول المجري	Racer
Forcibly	بالقوة	Award
Inefficiency	عدم كفاءة	Yellow jersey
Lock	قفل يفتح لعبور السفن	Triumph
Purpose	هدف	Talented
Reservoir	خزان - مخزون	Dominate=control
Technology	تقنية	Exceptional
Barber	حلاق	Numerous
Champion	بطل رياضي	Stage
Demonstrate	يبرهن - يوضح	Retired
Digit	رقم	Sought after
Genius	عبقري	Secured
Outstanding	بارز - رائع	Gained
Talent	موهبة	Nickname
Theory	نظرية	Badger
Title	لقب	Occupy
Cyclist	راكب دراجة	Fastest
Tourist destination	مكان سياحي	Generation
On account of	على حساب	His exceptional career
Reputation	سمعة	Either
Extremely	إلى حد كبير - بشكل مفرط	Rider
Competitive	منافس	Individual stages
Dedicating himself	مكرسا نفسه	Retire
Existed	متواجد	In total
Fought	قاتل	Fully
Continuously	بشكل مستمر	Continuously
Championship	بطولة رياضية	Emerging
Emerge	يظهر	Eventual winner
Winner	رابح	Heavily
Retirement	تقاعد	High profile
Heavily	بكثافة	Stage
Involved in	مشاركا في	Encourage



Cycling events	احداث ركوب الدرجات	Professional	محترف
Awards	مكافآت - جوائز	Aspiring cyclist	راكب دراجة طموح
Ceremonies	احتفالات	Realistic	واقعي
Rise	صعود	Tips	إرشادات
Encounter	يواجه	Require	يتطلب
Encourage	يشجع	Risk	يخاطر
Crashes	حوادث اصطدام	Exist=find	يوجد
injury-injuries	إصابة	Sportsmen	رياضيين
Come out	تظهر	Physically demanding	يتطلب جهدا جسديا
Come across	يصادف	The sun came out	الشمس تظهر
Come over	يمر - يزور	Came across	صادف
Come round	يستعيد وعيه	Movement	حركة - نقل
Come up	يتوفر	A deal	صفقة
Come down	يهبط	Potential	كامن
Cycling	سباق درجات	Victories	انتصارات
Cyclist	سائق دراجة	Westerner	شخص غربي
Came round=recovered	استعاد وعيه	Set off	ينطلق
The petrol came down	انخفض سعر البترول	a sponsorship deal	صفقة تمويل
Visible	مرئي	Top bicycle company	شركة دراجات كبيرة
Available	متوفر	Credit	يعزو / ينسب إلى
Decrease	ينخفض	Brilliant	رائع
By chance	بالمصادفة	Throughout	في جميع أنحاء
Recover	يشفي - يتعافى	Lost to rival	خسر امام خصمه
Unconscious	فقد الوعي	Retirement	تقاعد
Mention	يذكر	Set on a journey	انطلق في رحلة
Appear	يظهر	Camel	جمل
Apply for	يتقدم لـ	Scenario	سيناريو
Polar research center	مركز بحوث قطبي	Vehicle	مركبة
Afraid	خائف	Sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
Frightened	مرعوب	Despite	بالرغم من
Alight	مشتعل	Abandon	يتخلى
Burning	مشتعل	Fit in	يتناسب
Alike	مشابه	Backpack	حقيبة ظهر
Similar	مشابه	Transmitter	جهاز إرسال
Alive	حي	First-aid-kit	إسعافات أولية
Living	حي	Compass	بوصلة
Asleep	نائم	Lighter	قداحة
Sleeping	نائم	Blanket	بطانية
Minor burns	حروق خفيفة	Thick coat	معطف سميك
Suspect	يشكبه	Tent	خيمة
Previous	سابق	Video camera	كاميرا فيديو
Training	تدريب	Take part	يشارك
Sponsorship	تمويل	Feat	عمل بطولي
Binoculars	منظار	Human	إنساني
Get into	يدخل	Endeavor	جهد - مسعى
Despite	بالرغم من	In contrast	بالتناقض مع
In spite of	بالرغم من	Items	أشياء - مواد
Efforts	جهود	Response	استجابة
Forced	اجبر على	Summit	قمة



Destination	وجهة - مكان مقصود	Challenge	تحدي
abandon=give up	يتخلى عن - يستسلم	Grab attention	يشد الانتباه
On foot	على الاقدام	Adventure	مغامرة
Supplies	مؤونة - معدات	Crave	يشتهي
Fit	تناسب - لائق بدنيا	Along with	مع - بصحبة
Normal conditions	ظروف طبيعية	Experienced	خبير
Mountaineer	متسلق جبال	Motivated	متحفز - متحمس
Arduous	شاق	Strong-willed	قوي الإرادة
expedition	بعثة - رحلة استكشافية	Assist	يساعد
Experience	يجرب	Magnificent	رائع
<b>Activity Book ( Unit 10 )</b>			
Achievements	إنجازات	Series	سلسلة
Summit=peak	قمة	Scaled	تسلق
Mount Everest	قمة إيفريست	Thorough	شاملة
Reach	يصل	Health checks	فحوصات صحية
Climbing	تسلق	Base camp	معسكر أساسي
Companion	رفيق	A flag	علم - راية
Took part	شارك	Raised a flag	رفع علم
Set out	انطلق	Made into	وصلو
Sherpas=climbers	دليل تسلق	Befriend	يصادق
Cooks	طباخين	Promise	يعد - يوعد
Porters	حمالين	Preparations	تجهيزات
In total	اجماليا	Mostly	على الاغلب
Overcome	يتغلب على	Gas cooker	موقد غاز
Extreme cold	برد شديد	Container	وعاء - حاوية
Strong winds	رياح قوية	Run out	ينفذ
Dizzying heights	ارتفاعات مدوخة	Altitude	ارتفاع
Break	مواقف للإستراحة	Sophisticated	معقد - متطور
Below	تحت	Modest	متواضع
Freezing point	درجة التجمد	Attributed	نسب - عزا
Constant	مستمر	Attempt	محاولة
Risk	خطر	Coronation	تتويج
Frostbite	تجمد أصابع	Conquer	يفتح / يتغلب على

### Triumph in the Tour de France

For over ten years in the 1970s and 80s Bernard Hinault, a very talented French sportsman, dominated the world of cycling. One of the fastest cyclists of his generation, he won over 200 races during his exceptional career and broke numerous records. He is the only rider to have finished either first or second in every Tour de France which he completed, and won 28 individual stages in the month long race. By the time he retired, he had worn the prestigious 'Yellow Jersey' – one of cycling's most sought after prizes – for over 50 days in total, and had secured his place as one of the best cyclists in the world. During his career Hinault gained the nickname 'the badger' on account of his reputation for being extremely competitive and dedicating himself fully to each race. A famous rivalry existed between Hinault and another elite cyclist, Greg Lamond. During the 1986 Tour de France, the two men fought continuously to win the championship, with Lamond emerging as the eventual winner.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. In which field is Bernard Hinault famous?
2. How long is the Tour de France?
3. What is exceptional about Hinault's career?
4. Why did he get the title 'the badger'?



5. Who did Hinault compete with to win the 1986 Tour de France ?
6. Who is Greg Lamond?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

7. having a natural ability to do something
8. played much better than other players
9. group containing the best / most skilled / most experienced

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

10. Bernard Hinault won more than three hundred races but he didn't break records.
11. Hinault wore the Yellow Jersey for over 60 weeks during his career.
12. Hinault won the Tour de France in 1886.

**الاجوبه**

1. in cycling 2. a month 3. He is the only rider to have finished either first or second in every Tour de France which he completed.
4. for being extremely competitive and dedicating himself fully to each race. 5. He competed with Greg Lamond. 6. He's an elite cyclist.
7. talented 8. dominated 9. elite 10. ~~three two~~ - but he didn't break records and broke numerous records
11. ~~60 weeks~~ 50 days 12. ~~Hinault~~ Greg Lamond - ~~1886~~ 1986

Following his retirement in 1986, Hinault did not lose any of his dedication to the world of cycling. To this day he is heavily involved in many high profile cycling events, and is often seen on the stage at awards ceremonies. Hinault has written several books telling the story of his rise to success; they also include details of the difficulties he had encountered on the way: the crashes, injuries and problems. As one of the best cyclists the world has ever seen he was encouraged to write a book for aspiring professional cyclists, giving them tips and realistic advice about how to reach the top. His story shows that becoming the best in any field is a challenge that requires a lot of determination and dedication.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What are Hinault's books about?
2. Name two dangers that cyclists can encounter during races?
3. What lesson can people learn from Hinault's career?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

4. things that happen
5. hoping or aiming for a certain thing
6. needs

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

7. Hinault is no longer interested in cycling events.
8. Hinault is an aspiring professional motorist.

**الاجوبه**

1. They tell the story of his rise to success. They also include details of the difficulties he had encountered on the way. 2. crashes and injuries.
3. Becoming the best in any field is a challenge that requires a lot of determination and dedication.
4. events 5. aspiring 6. requires 7. ~~no longer~~ interested heavily involved 8. ~~is~~ was - ~~motorist~~ cyclist

### Making difficult choices

Omar and Mazen are driving across the Syrian desert in their 4x4 vehicle when a sandstorm, very common in the area, blows up. There is nothing they can do about the weather and unfortunately sand gets into the engine. Despite their best efforts, the engine simply will not start and so they are forced to change their plans. The two men are still 30 kilometres away from their destination that is around 12 hours walking. They know that it is located to the north. However, they are forced to abandon the car and continue the journey on foot, carrying all that they can with them. They have supplies in the car but can only take with them what will fit in their backpacks. The weather is extremely hot, making walking by day very difficult, but they are in good health and fit enough to walk 30 kilometres under normal conditions. In contrast, the desert is very cold at night and temperatures can become dangerously low. The two men have some difficult decisions to make. Each has room in his bag for three items, and has to choose from the 11 items they have in the car.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Why doesn't the engine start?
2. How far and how long are they from the place they want to get to ?
3. How can they move after their vehicle has broken down?



**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

4. go away from                      5. the place to which someone is going                      6. hard

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

7. Sandstorms are very rare in the Syrian desert.  
8. It is extremely hot during the day and at night in the desert

**الاجوبه**

1. Because sand gets into the engine. 2. 30 kilometres – around 12 hours walking 3. on foot 4. abandon 5. destination 6. difficult  
7 ~~rare~~ common 8. It is extremely hot during the day and very cold at night in the desert.

**Climbing Everest**

In 1953, Edmund Hillary became the first person to reach the summit of Mount Everest, the highest mountain in the world at 8,848 m. Hillary, from New Zealand, and his Nepalese climbing companion, Tenzing Norgay were part of the 9th British expedition to attempt to reach the summit. Over 350 people took part in the expedition that set out from Kathmandu in April 1953. There were Sherpas, doctors, cooks, porters and many others. There were eleven climbers in total and they climbed in groups of two. Hillary and Norgay left the camp to climb to the summit on May 28th, and for much of the climb they had to overcome extreme cold, strong winds, dizzying heights and dangerously low levels of oxygen. Temperatures were below freezing point and they were at constant risk of getting frostbite. The two men did not have the same sophisticated equipment that is used today, and the extremely high altitude could have caused serious medical problems.

**Answer the following questions:**

- How high is Mount Everest?
- Where did Hillary and Norgay come from?
- When did the expedition start ?
- How many people participated in the expedition?
- When did Hillary and Norgay leave the camp?
- What difficulties and risks did they encounter?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

- pairs
- made something happen
- extremely bad or dangerous

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

- Hillary was alone when he reached the top of Everest.
- Hillary and Norgay were part of the first American expedition attempting to conquer Everest.
- There were only climbers on the expedition.

**الاجوبه**

1. 8,848 m. 2. Hillary came from New Zealand and Norgay from Nepal. 3. In April 1953. 4. over 350 5. on May 28<sup>th</sup>  
6. extreme cold, strong winds, dizzying heights and dangerously low levels of oxygen. 7. groups of two 8. caused 9. serious  
10. ~~alone~~ with Norgay 11. ~~first~~ ninth - ~~American~~ British 12. ~~only~~ ~~climbers~~ -climbers, Sherpas, doctors, cooks, porters and many others.

They (Hillary and Norgay ) made it to the top where they took the photograph that proved they had reached the highest point on earth. Hillary was a modest man and attributed his success to the whole team who supported him throughout the attempt. News reached the United Kingdom just before the coronation of Queen Elizabeth II and the team of climbers received special medals and international recognition. Hilary was a born explorer and conquering Everest was the first in a series of achievements. He led an expedition to the South Pole and scaled several other peaks in the Himalayas. He later established the Himalayan Trust, an organisation committed to helping the Nepalese Sherpa communities. The trust has helped to build hospitals and schools and has improved communication and transport links to the area.

**Answer the following questions:**

- What did they do when they reached the top?
- How do we know that Hillary was modest?
- What charity did Hillary establish?
- Why did Hillary set up a charity?



5. What has his charity achieved ?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:.**

6. an act of trying to do something

7. helped

8. more than a few but not a lot

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

9. The coronation of the king took place before they got to the top.

10. Hillary retired from mountain climbing after conquering Everest.

الاجوبه

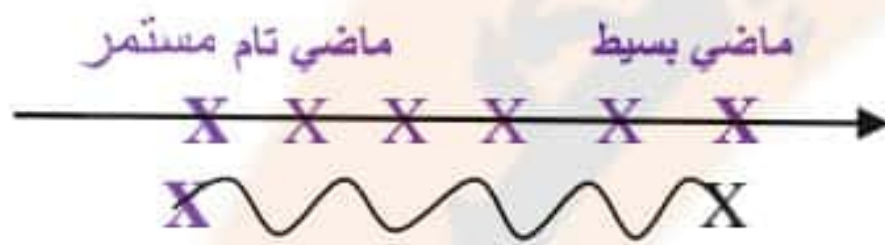
1. They took the photograph that proved they had reached the top. 2. He attributed his success to the whole team who supported him throughout the attempt. 3. The Himalayan Trust. 4. To help the Nepalese Sherpa communities 5. The trust has helped to build hospitals and schools and has improved communication and transport links to the area. 6. attempt 7. supported 8. several 9. king queen - before after 10. Conquering Everest was the first in a series of Hillary's achievements.

• **Past Perfect continuous** الماضي التام المستمر: يعبر عن عملان حدثا في الماضي الذي حدث أولا يسمى ماضي تام

والذي حدث بعده يسمى ماضي بسيط لكن الماضي التام المستمر يعبر عن حالة كانت مستمرة وسائدة في الماضي وحدثت لاكثر من مرة في الماضي بينما الماضي التام حدثت مرة واحدة فقط

- دلالة: نفس دلالة الماضي التام

- Affirmative الإثبات:



**had + been + ( V1 ) ing + C .** ( كل الضمانات )

- مثال: ( اكثر من مرة ) Before 1953, people **had been trying** to reach the summit of Everest for many years.

- ( مرة واحدة ) Before Messner and Habeler, no one **had attempted** to climb Everest without oxygen.

- ملاحظة: في حال السؤال والنفي نفس طريقة الماضي التام

1. From a young age, Hinault was dedicated to his training programme. He ..... ( always want ) to be a cyclist.

2. At the start of his career, Hinault made a sponsorship deal with a top bicycle company. The company ..... ( see ) great potential in the young rider.

3. After each victory, Hinault didn't take all the credit for himself. A brilliant team ..... ( support ) him throughout.

4. When he didn't win in 1986, he retired. He ..... ( lose ) to his greatest rival.

5. After retirement he started writing books. He ..... ( learn ) so many things during his career.

6. By the time he retired, he ..... ( secure ) his best place as one of the best cyclists.

7. **By 1978**, Eddy Merckx ..... ( break ) more records than any other cyclist in history.

8. Before he set off on his journey, Michael Asher ..... ( probably learn ) how to ride a camel.

9. Messner and Habeler ignored the warnings that other climbers ..... ( give ) them.

10. Hillary climbed Mount Everest in 1953 as part of a British expedition. He ..... ( attempt ) it **several times** before.

11. In May 1978, Messner and Habeler ..... ( already make ) **two unsuccessful attempts** to reach the summit.

12. By the time they reached the top they were exhausted. They ..... ( climb ) **for** many days.

13. Hillary returned to the Himalayas and set up a charity to help the local people.

He ..... ( befriend ) many of the Sherpas.

14. Hillary and Tenzing underwent thorough health checks when they returned to the base camp. They ..... ( experience ) extremely cold conditions.

15. They raised a flag when they made it to the summit. They ..... ( reach ) the highest point on earth.

16. Before Messner and Habeler, no one ..... ( attempt ) to climb Everest without oxygen.

17. Before 1953, people ..... ( try ) to reach the summit of Everest **for** many years.

18. Until 1953, nobody ..... ( climb ) Mount Everest.

19. Just before they reached the summit, they ..... ( fall ) down every few metres.



20. Three years earlier they ..... ( successfully climb) Gasherbrum without oxygen.  
 21. I went to see Ali in hospital. He .....( break) his leg during a football match.  
 22. My uncle finally passed his driving test. He ..... ( take) the test **three times** already.  
 23. Omar passed all his exams. He .....( revise) non-stop **for** a month.  
 24. They finished making Laila's dress a week before the wedding. They .....( make) it **for** over a month.  
 25. Everyone enjoyed the family celebration. Reem and her sons ..... ( make ) all the food themselves.  
 26. I received a letter from Hiba yesterday. She ..... ( promise) to write **since last year**.

### الحلول

1. had always wanted 2. had seen 3. had been supporting 4. had lost 5. had learned 6. had secured 7. had broken  
 8. had probably learned 9. had given 10. had attempted 11. had already made 12. had been climbing 13. had befriended  
 14. had experienced 15. had reached 16. had attempted 17. had been trying 18. had climbed 19. had been falling  
 20. had successfully climbed 21. had broken 22. had taken 23. had been revising 24. had been making 25. had made  
 26. had been promising

• صفات تبدأ بـ ( a ) تأتي بعد فعل الكون ← ( **afraid / alight / alike / alive / asleep** ) + فعل الكون

نام / حي / مشابه / مشتعل / خائف

• صفات يأتي بعدها اسم تأتي قبل الاسم ← اسم ( **frightened / burning / similar / living / sleeping** )

( لا تجتمع الصفات التي تبدأ بـ ( a ) مع الأسماء ) They saved **the frightened boy**. / The boy **was afraid**.

### Choose the correct answer between brackets :

1. The family escaped, but the parents had to calm their ( afraid - frightened ) children.  
 2. The police suspected a crime as there had been four ( similar - alike ) fires in the previous month.  
 3. We were driving home on the motorway yesterday evening when we came across a ( burning - alight ) car.  
 4. A family was standing by the side of the road. The mother was holding a ( sleeping - asleep ) baby.  
 5. After the storm there were a lot of ( afraid - frightened ) children and animals.  
 6. The fire had started when everyone was ( asleep - alight ).  
 7. In less than ten minutes the whole building was ( alive - alight ).  
 8. Some people had minor burns, but fortunately everyone was still ( alight - alive ).  
 9. Two children were ( alike - afraid ) of the fire.  
 10. The two children must have been twins, as they looked very ( alike - afraid ) - ( similar - frightened ).  
 11. My sister and I look very ( alike - alive ). People often think I'm her.  
 12. No two people are completely ( alive - alike ). Everyone is an individual.  
 13. There's no need to be ( alike - afraid ) of flying. Air travel is the safest form of transport.  
 14. That was a terrible accident. The driver's lucky to be ( alike - alive ).

### الحلول

1. frightened 2. similar 3. burning 4. sleeping 5. frightened 6. asleep 7. alight  
 8. alive 9. afraid 10. alike - similar 11. alike 12. alike 13. afraid 14. Alive

### Phrasal Verbs with come - أفعال تركيبية بـ ( come ) :

- **come out** → **appear / become visible** يصبح مرني / يظهر  
 - **come across** → **found by chance** يجد بالصدفة  
 - **come round** → **recover after being unconscious** يصحو بعد فقدان الوعي / يستعيد الوعي  
 - **come up at** → **become available** يصبح متوفر  
 - **come down** → **fall / decrease** يهبط / ينخفض  
 - **come up** → **be mentioned** يذكر  
 - **come over** → **visit** يزور / يمر على



- هنا مجموعة من الأفعال المركبة والكلمات التي يمكن ان تستخدم معها

come out ( **the sun** ) - come across ( **camp / glasses / watch** ) - come up ( **name / job** )  
 come down ( **price** ) - come over ( **after school / next in town / see us** )  
 come round ( **operation – recover – fell** )

**Choose the correct answer between brackets :**

1. When my brother (**came round** , **came up**) after his **operation**, he felt fine.
2. Why don't you (**come out** , **come over**) **after school**? We could visit my grandparents.
3. It was cloudy all morning , but in the afternoon the **sun** (**came across** , **came out**).
4. I've lost my **watch**. Can you let me know if you (**come across** , **come over**) it ?
5. The **price** of DVD players (**came down** , **came round**) by 50% last year.
6. We haven't seen you for ages. You must (**come over** , **come up**) and **see us** at the weekend.
7. I've lost my **glasses**- let me know if you (**come across** , **come over**) them.
8. Mobile phones (**come up** , **come down**) in **price** very quickly. They are half the price they were three years ago.

**الحلول**

1.came round 2. come over 3. came out 4. come across 5. came down 6. come over 7.come across 8. come down

**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

(1)1.A: .....? B: Hinault won over 200 races. 2.A: .....? B: He has written several books about his rise to success. 3.A: .....? B: Cyclists risk crashes and injury during races. 4.A: .....? B: Hinault did not win the Tour de France in 1986.	(2)1.A: .....? B : The fire had started when everyone in the house was asleep. 2.A: .....? B: The whole building was alight. 3.A: .....? B: the parents had to calm their frightened children. 4.A: .....? B: Some people had minor burns.
(3)1.A: .....? B: Mount Everest is 8,848 m high. 2.A: .....? B: Hillary was the first to reach its summit. 3.A: .....? B: That was in 1953. A: Would you like to be a mountain climber? Why? 4.B: .....	(4)1.A: .....? B: Over 350 people took part in the expedition. 2.A: .....? B: They set out from Kathmandu in April 1953. 3.A: .....? B: They left the camp to climb to the summit. 4.A: .....? B: they took a photograph when they reach the summit.

**الحلول**

- (1)1.A.How many races did Hinault win? 2.A.What has he written? 3.A.What do cyclists risk during the races?  
 4.A.When didn't Hinault win the Tour de France?  
 (2)1.A.When had the fire started? 2.A.What was alight?/ How was The whole building? 3.A.What did the parents have to do?  
 4.A.What did some people have?  
 (3)1.A.How high is Mount Everest? 2.A.Who was the first to reach its summit? 3.A.When was that?  
 4.B.Yes. I would like be a mountain climber because I like adventure.  
 (4)1.A.How many people took part in the expedition? 2.A. When did they set out from Kathmandu?/ Where did they set out from in 1953?  
 3.A.Why did they leave the camp? 4.A.What did they do when they reach the summit?



**Complete the following sentences using clauses:**

- 1- It had been cloudy all morning, but ..... it didn't rain.
- 2- As we were walking up the mountain, ..... it started snowing.
- 3- The fire had started when ..... everyone was asleep.
- 4- When my brother came round after his operation, ..... he felt fine.
- 5- Omar passed all his exams because ..... he had worked hard.
- 6- After she fell and hit her head on the ice..... she died.
- 7- When I was talking to my brother yesterday,..... I got angry.
- 8- By the time they reached the top ..... they had been very tired.
- 9- When he did not win the race,..... he retired.
- 10- Omar passed all his exams..... He had studied hard.
- 11- I went to see Ali in hospital..... He had broken his leg.
- 12- My uncle finally passed his driving test..... He had taken the test three times.
- 13- The fire had started when..... the family was asleep.(2013)
- 14- The family escaped, but..... they had some burns.
- 15- When my brother came round after his operation, .....he felt fine.
- 16- We came across a burning car when..... we were diving home.
- 17-We were driving home when ..... we saw a burning car.
- 18- These two must have been twins, as..... they looked very alike.
- 19- He retired when ..... he lost the match.

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

For over ten years(1)..... the 1970s and 80s Bernard Hinault, (2)..... very talented French sportsman, dominated the world of cycling. One of (3)..... fastest cyclists of his generation, he won over 200 races during his exceptional career(4)..... broke numerous records. He is the only rider to(5)..... finished either first or second in every Tour de France (6)..... he completed, and won 28 individual stages in the month long race. (7)..... the time he retired, he had worn the prestigious 'Yellow Jersey' – one of cycling's most sought after prizes – (8)..... over 50 days in total, and had secured his place as one of the best cyclists in the world. During (9)..... career Hinault gained the nickname 'the badger' on account of his reputation for being extremely competitive(10)..... dedicating himself fully to each race. A famous rivalry existed (11)..... Hinault and another elite cyclist, Greg Lamond. During the 1986 Tour de France, the two men fought continuously (12)..... win the championship, with Lamond emerging as the eventual winner.

**الحلول**

- 1.in 2.a 3.the 4. and 5. have 6.which 7.By 8.for 9.his 10. and 11.between 12.to

Following his retirement (1)..... 1986, Hinault did not lose (2)..... of his dedication to the world of cycling. To this day he (3)..... heavily involved in many high profile cycling events, and is often seen(4)..... the stage at awards ceremonies. Hinault (5)..... written several books telling the story of his rise to success; they also include details of the difficulties he (6)..... encountered on the way: the crashes, injuries (7)..... problems. As one of the best cyclists the world has ever seen he was encouraged to write (8)..... book for aspiring professional cyclists, giving (9)..... tips and realistic advice about how (10)..... reach the top. His story shows that becoming (11)..... best in any field is a challenge that requires a lot (12)..... determination and dedication.

**الحلول**

- 1.in 2.any 3.is 4. on 5.has 6. had 7.and 8. a 9.them 10.to 11. the 12.of

Omar and Mazen (1)..... driving across the Syrian desert in their 4x4 vehicle when (2)..... sandstorms very common in the area, blows up. There is nothing they can (3)..... about the weather and unfortunately sand



gets into (4)..... engine. Despite their best efforts, the engine simply will not start and(5)..... they are forced to change (6)..... plans. The two men are still 30 kilometres away (7)..... their destination, that is around 12 hours walking. They know that it is located to the north. However, they are forced to abandon the car and continue the journey (8)..... foot, carrying all that they can(9)..... them. They have supplies in the car (10)..... can only take with them what will fit in their backpacks. The weather is extremely hot, making walking by day very difficult, but (11)..... are in good health and fit enough to walk 30 kilometres (12)..... normal conditions. In contrast, the desert is very cold(13)..... night and temperatures can become dangerously low. The two men(14)..... some difficult decisions to make. Each has room in(15)..... bag for three items, and has to choose from the 11 items they have (16)..... the car.

## الحلول

1. are 2. a 3.do 4.the 5. so 6. their 7. from 8.on 9. with 10.but 11.they 12.under 13. at 14. have 15. his 16.in

The Syrian Adventure Club, along(1)..... its team of experienced mountaineers, (2)..... planning a challenging and arduous expedition (3)..... the summit of Mount Everest and we are looking (4)..... motivated, strong-willed individuals to assist us. This is (5)..... chance of a lifetime to experience one of the planet's most magnificent environments (6)..... to take part in an amazing feat of human endeavour. If you think you have what it takes, please write, telling us why you should (7)..... chosen for this expedition, what skills and attributes you will contribute, and how you will cope with the huge effort such(8)..... expedition entails.

## الحلول

1. with 2.is 3.to 4.for 5.the 6. and 7.be 8. an

(1)..... 1953, Edmund Hillary became the first person to reach the summit of Mount Everest (2)..... highest mountain in the world at 8,848 m. Hillary, (3)..... New Zealand, and his Nepalese climbing companion, Tenzing Norgay (4)..... part of the 9th British expedition to attempt (5)..... reach the summit. Over 350 people took part in the expedition (6)..... set out from Kathmandu in April 1953. There were Sherpas, doctors, cooks, porters (7)..... many others. There were eleven climbers in total and they climbed in groups (8)..... two. Hillary and Norgay left the camp to climb to the summit (9)..... May 28th, and for much of the climb they (10)..... to overcome extreme cold, strong winds, dizzying heights and dangerously low levels of oxygen. Temperatures were(11)..... freezing point and they were at constant risk of getting frostbite. The two men (12)..... not have the same sophisticated equipment that (13)..... used today, and the extremely high altitude could (14)..... caused serious medical problems.

## الحلول

1.In 2.the 3.from 4.were 5. to 6. that 7. and 8.of 9.on 10. had 11. below 12.did 13.is 14.have

The y made it to the top (1)..... they took the photograph that proved they (2)..... reached the highest point on earth. Hillary was (3)..... modest man and attributed his success (4)..... the whole team who supported him throughout the attempt. News reached (5)..... United Kingdom just before the coronation (6)..... Queen Elizabeth II and the team of climbers received special medals (7)..... international recognition. Hillary (8)..... a born explorer and conquering Everest was the first (9)..... a series of achievements. He led (10)..... expedition to the South Pole and scaled several other peaks in the Himalayas. (11)..... later established the Himalayan Trust, an organisation committed (12)..... helping the Nepalese Sherpa communities. The trust (13)..... helped to build hospitals and schools and has improved communication (14)..... transport links to the area.

## الحلول



1. where 2. had 3. a 4. to 5. the 6. of 7. and 8. was 9. in 10. an 11. He 12. to 13. has 14. and

Thanks for the email. It (1)..... not long now till we go, is it? I have (2)..... making a few last-minute preparations this morning. I have decided what clothes (3)..... other personal things to take, (4)..... obviously we need to decide about the things (5)..... need for camping. I know we have already agreed (6)..... the essential things, like the tent, sleeping bags and first-aid kit, but there (7)..... other things we may or may not need. (8)..... you think we should take our own cooking equipment? I expect we will buy food mostly, but it might (9)..... a good idea to take a small gas cooker (10)..... that we can prepare our own food. And how about (11)..... large water container? If we don't take plenty of water (12)..... us, we might run out. That would be awful if it gets very hot. (13)..... there anything else we should take? Let me know what you think. I'm really looking forward (14)..... this break. I will give you a ring tomorrow morning.

### الحلول

1. is 2. been 3. and 4. but 5. we 6. on 7. are 8. Do 9. be 10. so 11. a 12. with 13. Is 14. to

1. It had been cloudy all morning..... in the afternoon the sun came out.
2. As we were walking up the mountain, we came..... a small camp site.
3. Come..... when you're next in town.
4. After she fell and hit her head on the ice it was ten minutes before she came.....
5. A job has come..... at the polar research center- I may apply for it.
6. I wish the price of petrol would come.....
7. When I was talking to my brother yesterday, your name came..... several times.

### الحلول

1. but 2. across 3. over 4. round 5. up 6. down 7. up

### Translate into English:

1. لقد كانت غائمة طوال الصباح لكن بعد الظهر سطعت الشمس
2. عندما استعاد اخي وعيه بعد عمليته شعر على ما يرام
3. كانت غائمة طوال الصباح لكن بعد الظهر سطعت الشمس
4. اجتاز عمر كل امتحاناته. لقد صار له يراجع دروسه بدون توقف لمدة شهر
5. لقد بدأ الحريق عندما كل شخص في الغرفة كان نائما

- 1- It had been cloudy all morning, but in the afternoon the sun came out.
- 2- When my brother came round after his operation, he felt fine.
- 3- It was cloudy all morning, but in the afternoon the sun came out.
- 4 Omar passed all his exams. He had been revising non-stop for a month.
- 5- The fire had started when everyone in the house was asleep.

You are going to write a response to an advert for a place on a Syrian expedition to the summit of Mount Everest.

(Student Book P: 87)

Do you have what it takes?

Are you the kind of person who loves a challenge?

Do you crave adventure and excitement?

Do you long for the chance to prove yourself?



## An Expedition to the Summit of Mount Everest

Dear Sirs,

I have read your advert about the expedition to the summit of Mount Everest. I am very happy that my dream will come true I always imagine that I am walking along the mountain paths and suddenly I find myself on the summit of Mount Everest. I would like to ask if your guides have several years of experience. Is accommodation in hotels or should we bring our tents and luggage, and how long is the expedition. I hope it will be for two weeks. I think my dream will come true. Please email me soon.

Many thanks

Khaled

سوف تكتب رداً للإعلان عن مكان في حملة سورية لتسلق قمة جبل إيفرست. (كتاب الطالب ص 87)

حملة لتسلق قمة جبل إيفرست

السادة الأعزاء:

لقد قرأت إعلانكم حول بعثة إلى قمة جبل إيفرست. إنني حقا سعيد أن حلمي سوف يتحقق. أنا دائما أتخيل أنني أمشي على طول الممرات الجبلية وفجأة أجد نفسي على قمة جبل إيفرست. أود أن أسأل إذا الأدلاء السياحيون لديهم سنوات عديدة من الخبرة. هل الإقامة في فنادق أو أنه يجب أن نحضر خيمنا وأمتعتنا. وكم مدة الحملة. أمل انها تكون لمدة أسبوعين. أعتقد أن حلمي سيصبح حقيقة. من فضلك اكتب لي بريدا الكترونيا حالا.

مع جزيل الشكر

خالد



Write an informal email to a friend whose family you are going on holiday with. (Activity Book.P.65)

Decide on three essential things to take with you.

Suggest two or three other things that might find useful.

Use informal language.

### A Holiday

Hi Ali ,

Thanks for the email. I have been making some preparations all this morning. I think we need to decide about the things we need for camping. I know we have already agreed on the essential things like the tent, sleeping bags and first –aid kit. However, it might be a good idea to take a small gas cooker, a torch, matches, blankets and a large water container. Is there anything else we should take? Let me know. I am really looking forward to this break. I will call you tomorrow.

See you soon

Khaled

اكتب بريدا إلكترونيا خاصا إلى صديق الذي ستذهب مع عائلته في عطلة. (كتاب النشاط ص 65)

عطلة

مرحبا علي :

شكرا على بريدك الإلكتروني. صار لي أقوم بتحضيرات طوال الصباح. اعتقد أننا بحاجة أن نقرر حول الأشياء التي نحتاجها من اجل التخييم. اعرف أننا اتفقنا على الأشياء الأساسية مثل: الخيمة و حجات النوم و صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. على أي حال ، أنها ربما تكون فكرة جيدة أن نأخذ غاز صغيرا، مشعل، اعواد ثقاب، بطانيات و وعاء مياه كبير. هل هناك أي شيء آخر يجب أن نأخذه؟ دعني أعرف. أنا حقا أتطلع لهذه الاستراحة. سوف اتصل بك غدا.

أراك قريبا

خالد



## Unit 11

## Students` Book ( Unit 11 )

Original cost	تكلفة حقيقية	Attribute	خصائص - ينسب - يعزو
Rise	يرتفع	Contribute	يساهم
Archaeological site	موقع اثري	Cope with	يتعامل مع
Destroy	يهدم	Entails	مستلزمات
Dam	سد	Excitement	متعة - إثارة
Lock	قفل - اغلق	Long for	يتوق - يتشوق لـ
Reservoir	خزان	Club	نادي
Disrupt	يعرقل - يعطل	Plan	خطة - يخطط
Forcibly=by force	بالقوة	Challenging	تحدي
Divert	يحول - يحرف	A chance of life time	فرصة العمر
Will	رغبة	Most magnificent	الاروع
Section	قسم	Skills	مهارات
Canal	قناة	Route	مسار - طريق
Gates	بوابات	Section	مقطع - قسم
Lake	بحيرة	Allow	يسمح
Collecting	جمع	Level	مستوى - مرحلة
Keeping water	حفظ الماء	Process	عملية
Construct	يبني	Man-made	من صنع الانسان
Entire	كامل	Upset	يزعج
Extend=stretch	يتوسع - يتمدد	Disturb	يفسد - يشوش
Inspection	تجري - تفتش	Interrupt	يقاطع
Operational	جاهز للاستخدام	Negative way	طريقة سلبية
Progress	تقدم - تطور	Course	دورة - منهاج - مجرى نهر
Site	مكان - موقع	Estimate	تقدير - يقدر
Expected	متوقع	Accurate	دقيق
Tax system	نظام ضرائب	Demand	يطالب
Partly	جزائيا	Commercial	تجاري
Flood	فيضان - يفيض	Development	تطور
Protestor	محتج - معارض	Stock	مخزون
Online booking	حجز تذاكر عبر النت	Exchange	تبادل - يتبادل - صرافة عملة
Book	يحجز	Tree houses	منازل شجرية
Requirements	متطلبات	Construction#destruction	بناء # دمار
Personal details	تفاصيل شخصية	Completion	إكمال
Paying	دفع - تسديد	The dam project	مشروع السد
Credit card	بطاقة اعتماد	Partly	جزئيا
Receipt	إيصال - وصل استلام	Efficiency	كفاءة
Railway	خط السكة الحديدية	Inefficiency	عدم كفاءة
Automatically	بشكل آلي	Builder	بناء
Tunnel	نفق	Flooded	فاضت - غمرت
Complex	معقد	Yangtze	نهر اليانغتسز
Costly	مكلف	Divert	يحول
Shuttle	مكوك	Compensation	تعويض
Jointly	بالاشتراك مع	Yafour district	منطقة يعفور
Alternative	بديل	Stock exchange	بورصة
Motorist	سائق دراجة	The eighth gate	البوابة الثامنة
Ferry	عبارة	Transport systems	أنظمة المواصلات



Tolls	رسوم مرور	Entertainment	تسلية
Original	اصلي	Crime detection	كشف الجريمة
Kiosk	كشك للبيع	Industry	صناعة
Section	قسم	Education	تربية - تعليم
High-tech	تقنية عالية	Power generation	توليد الطاقة
Formal	رسمي	Impact	تأثير
Account	حساب	Changes	تغيرات
Telepass	دفع الرسوم عن بعد	Consequences	نتائج - عواقب
Affected by	متأثر بـ	Focus	يركز
Recent years	في السنوات الأخيرة	Typing in	كتابة
Airline	الطيران	Print	يطبع
Logging	تسجيل	Railway station	محطة قطار
Website	موقع إلكتروني	Contact	اتصال
Justify	يببر	Euro tunnel	نفق أوروبي
Conclusion	ختامي	Linking	يربط
Heading	عنوان	Mainland	البر الرئيسي
Explanatory	إيضاحي - تفسيري	Public	عام
Brief	موجز	The public	العامة - الناس
Descriptive title	عنوان وصفي	Railway	السكك الحديدية
Trucks	شاحنات	Recognize	يتعرف - يميز
Minimum	حد الأدنى	Recognized	معروف - مميز
Pay cash	يدفع نقدا	Informal	غير رسمي
Encyclopedia	موسوعة	Find out	يكشف
<b>Activity Book ( Unit 11 )</b>			
Road tunnels	أنفاق الطرق	Safe	أمن
Massively	بشكل كبير	Rest	يرتاح
Freight traffic	حركة الشحن	Efficient	فعال
Norway	النرويج	Ventilation	تهوية
Concerns	اهتمامات	Efficient ventilation system	نظام تهوية فعال
Tiredness	التعب	Respond	يستجيب
Claustrophobia	الخوف من الأماكن المغلقة	Monitored	مراقب
Psychologists	علماء النفس	Staff	موظفين
Monotonous	ممل	Control room	غرفة التحكم
Halls	قاعات/صالات	Shorten	يقلل
Sunrise	شروق الشمس	View	منظر
Refreshed	منعش	Fix	يصلح
Ahead	نحو الامام	Forefront	طلبة
Lay-bys	مواقف انتظار	A government spokesman	الناطق باسم الحكومة
I'll give you a ring	سوف اتصل بك	Fully	بشكل كامل
Fully	بشكل كامل	Escort	يرافق
College	كلية	Rate	معدل
Low-lying cities	مدن منخفضة	Multi-vehicle accident	حادث مركبة متعدد
Venice	مدينة البندقية	Overall safety	السلامة العامة
Beneath	تحت	Series	سلسلة
Forever	للابد	Eliminate	يلغي
New flood defense schemes	مشاريع حماية من فيضان جديد	Minimize	يقلل
Put out the fire	يطفي النار	Ventilate	يهوي
Tragic fire	حريق مأساوي	Halls	قاعات
Pay attention	انتبه	Much more	Safely
			بشكل آمن
			أكثر بكثير



### Built for Safety

Road tunnels, through mountains or under rivers and seas, make car journeys shorter and faster. Some of the long tunnels, like **those** through the Alps, were incredible engineering achievements when they were first built. For example, the 11-kilometre-long Mont Blanc Tunnel between France and Italy, which was opened in 1965, massively reduced journey times between the two countries. But in recent years, with the increase in freight traffic using tunnels, there have been some terrible accidents. So when planners were designing the 24.5-kilometre Laerdal Tunnel in Norway, safety was one of **their** main concerns. People have known for some time that the main factors which cause accidents in long tunnels are tiredness and claustrophobia – a fear of being in small spaces. Drivers can easily fall asleep in tunnels because the view never changes – there is nothing to keep them awake. This can lead to accidents caused by vehicles driving into the sides of the tunnel. So experts, including psychologists, did research to find out how they could make the 20-minute journey through their new tunnel less monotonous. After experiments, **they** decided to build the tunnel in four sections with —halls between them. The halls are wider and higher than the main tunnel and have special lighting similar to a sunrise. The idea is that drivers will feel refreshed as they drive through the halls. The halls have two other purposes related to safety: if there is an accident on the road ahead, drivers can turn round in the halls and return the way they came. There are also lay-bys in the halls where drivers can stop and rest. The Laerdal Tunnel also has an efficient ventilation system which responds to the amount of traffic in the tunnel. Air pollution is monitored by staff in a control room.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. What benefit do road tunnels have?
2. When and where was the Mont Blanc Tunnel built?
3. Why were the designers of the Laerdal Tunnel worried about safety?
4. How long is the Laerdal Tunnel? How long does it take to drive through it?
5. What can happen when drivers fall asleep while driving?
6. How is the Laerdal tunnel different from other tunnels?
7. How are the halls different from the main part of the tunnel?
8. What is the main purpose of the halls ?
9. What can drivers do if they find an accident in front of them?
10. What is the ventilation system in the tunnel like?
11. What do the words **those** , **their** , **they** refer to?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

12. a passage that has been dug under the ground for cars, trains etc to go through
13. boring because of always being the same
14. making a drawing or a plan of something

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:

15. Tiredness and claustrophobia reduce accidents in tunnels.
16. Drivers can rest in a control room.

#### الاجوبه

1. They make car journeys shorter and faster.
2. in 1965 – between France and Italy.
3. Because in recent years, there have been terrible accidents.
4. 24.5 kilometres - twenty minutes
5. It can lead to accidents caused by vehicles driving into the sides of the tunnel.
6. It is divided into sections. It has halls. It was designed with safety in mind.
7. They are wider and higher, they have lay-bys and different lighting.
8. to provide a change of view for motorists so that they feel refreshed.
9. They can turn round in the halls and return the way they came.
10. It is efficient and it responds to the amount of traffic in the tunnel.
11. **those**: long tunnels- **their**: planners **they** :experts and psychologists.
12. tunnel
13. monotonous
14. designing
15. ~~reduce~~-cause.
16. control room lay-by.

### Safety in tunnels: Recommendations

In the light of a number of serious accidents and fires in tunnels in recent years, this report makes a number of recommendations which will reduce the risk of accidents and fires and minimise the impact of any that occur. It is essential that drivers and their passengers are able to get out of a tunnel if there is an accident or fire. We have two recommendations which will help make this possible. Firstly, tunnels should be made wide enough in places to allow vehicles to turn round and go back the way they came. Secondly, there should be separate tunnels for pedestrians in case people need to walk to safety. It may be impossible to eliminate accidents altogether, but we have several recommendations which will reduce this risk. Firstly, all road tunnels over 10 kilometres long



should be divided into sections, with rest areas between the sections. Secondly, the decoration of each section should be different. This —change of view| will make the journey less monotonous for drivers and help to prevent them from falling asleep. Lastly, tunnels should be well ventilated. Finally, the flow of traffic through tunnels should be regulated. This will improve overall safety. We believe that if only one vehicle is allowed into a tunnel every five seconds, there is less chance of a multi-vehicle accident. We also recommend that heavy lorries should be escorted by special safety vehicles. If these recommendations are accepted, we believe that the accident rate in tunnels could be reduced by over 75%.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the purpose of the recommendations in the report?
2. What should be done to enable passengers to get out of tunnels in case of danger?
3. Why should the decoration of each section be different?
4. How can we reduce the chance of multi-vehicle accidents?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

5. extremely important and necessary      6. people walking in the street      7. give advice

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

8. It is recommended that heavy lorries shouldn't be allowed into tunnels.
9. It is possible to prevent all kinds of accidents in tunnels if the recommendations are ignored.

**الاجوبه**

1. To reduce the risk of accidents and fires and minimize the impact of any that occur
2. Tunnels should be made wider enough in places and there should be separate tunnels for pedestrians.
3. It will make the journey less monotonous for drivers and help to prevent them from falling asleep.
4. by allowing only one vehicle into a tunnel every five seconds.
5. essential
6. pedestrians
7. recommend
8. shouldn't be allowed into tunnels should be escorted by special safety vehicles.
9. prevent all kinds reduce the number – ignored accepted

**Passive ( 2 )**

	مبنى المعلوم ( Active )		مبنى للمجهول ( Passive )
الزمن	S + V + O.	→	O + be + V3.
حاضر بسيط	S + V1 / ( V1)s + O.	→	O + am / is / are + V3.
مثال	The boy eats the apple.	→	The apple is eaten.
ماضي بسيط	S + V2 + O.	→	O + was / were + V3.
مثال	The boy ate the apple.	→	The apple was eaten.
حاضر مستمر	S + am / is / are + (V1) ing + O.	→	O + am / is / are + being + V3.
مثال	The boy is eating the apple.	→	The apple is being eaten.
ماضي مستمر	S + was / were + (V1) ing + O.	→	O + was / were + being + V3.
مثال	The boy was eating the apple.	→	The apple was being eaten.
حاضر تام	S + have / has + V3 + O.	→	O + have / has + been + V3.
مثال	The boy has eaten the apple.	→	The apple has been eaten.
ماضي تام	S + had + V3 + O.	→	O + had + been + V3.
مثال	The boy had eaten the apple.	→	The apple had been eaten.
مستقبل بسيط	S + will / must / .... + V1 + O.	→	O + will / must ... + be + V3.
مثال	The boy will eat the apple.	→	The apple will be eaten.
مستقبل تام	S + will / must ... + have + V3 + O.	→	O + will / must ... + have + been + V3.
مثال	The boy will have eaten the apple.	→	The apple will have been eaten.



**A. Rewrite the following sentences ( change into the passive voice)**

1. Engineers had to make an artificial island.

2. After the tragic fire in the Mont Blanc Tunnel in 1999, everyone agreed that when they built tunnels in the future, they should pay much more attention to safety.

3. When they were planning the Laerdal Tunnel, the designers decided that they would divide it into four sections.

4. They thought that if they could construct large halls between the sections, this would make motorists' journeys more interesting.

5. They made the halls wider than the rest of the tunnel and technicians fitted them with special lights.

6. They believed that if they could ventilate the tunnel better, drivers would stay awake and this would cause fewer accidents.

7. Fire fighters put out the fire.

**الحلول**

1. An artificial island had to be made by engineers. 2. After the tragic fire in the Mont Blanc Tunnel in 1999, everyone agreed that when tunnels were built in the future, much more attention should be paid to safety.

3. When the Laerdal Tunnel was being planned, the designers decided that it would be divided into four sections, .....

4. They thought that if large halls could be constructed between the sections, motorists' journeys would be made more interesting.

5. The halls were made wider than the rest of the tunnel and they were fitted with special lights (by technicians).

6. They believed that if the tunnel could be better ventilated, drivers would stay awake and fewer accidents would be caused.

7. The fire was put out by fire fighters.

**B: Rewrite the following sentences ( change into the active )**

1. Before Burj Al-Arab could be built, engineers had to make an artificial island.

2. 5,600 workers died while the canal was being constructed.

3. Previous plans to build a tunnel had been rejected because of the high cost.

4. A third tunnel had to be built as an escape tunnel in case of fire.

5. The original Mont Blanc Tunnel was completed in 1965.

6. The tunnel was designed to carry 450,000 vehicles a year.

**الحلول**

1. Before they could build Burj Al-Arab, engineers had to make an artificial island.

2. 5,600 workers died while they were constructing the canal.

3. They had rejected previous plans to build a tunnel because of the high cost.

4. They had to build a third tunnel as an escape tunnel in case of fire.

5. They completed the original Mont Blanc Tunnel in 1965.

6. They designed the tunnel to carry 450,000 vehicles a year.

**C. Correct the verbs in brackets:**

1. Large areas of land had to be .....( flood ) when they were building the Three Gorges Dam.

2. The Channel Tunnel , which links Britain and France, .....( complete) in 1994.

3. The driver stopped after smoke had been .....( see) coming out of the lorry's engine.

4. Unfortunately many of the historical sites could not be ..... ( save) when they built the dam.

5. Before Burj Al-Arab ..... ( can - build), engineers **had to** make an artificial island.



6. This was one of the greatest and most difficult engineering jobs that **had ever been** .....( attempt)
7. 5,600 workers died while the canal **was being** ..... ( construct).
8. Thirty-nine people ..... ( kill ) in the tunnel fire which was started when a lorry caught fire.
9. It was more than two days before the fire ..... ( put out) by fire fighters.
10. By 1997 it was being .....( use) by over a million.
11. My car is badly scratched. It ..... ( have to – repaint ).
12. The other car is badly damaged and it could not be ..... ( repair ).
13. Photos .....(should / always take) with the sun behind you.
14. Don't forget. The application has to be .....( post) before next Tuesday.
15. I was expecting a letter. It could have been ..... ( send) to the wrong address

## الحلول

1. flooded 2. was completed 3. seen 4. saved 5. could be built 6. attempted 7. constructed 8. were killed 9. was put out 10. used
11. has to be repainted 12. repaired 13. should always be taken 14. posted 15. sent

## معاني بعض الأفعال المساعدة

**had to** توجب ان ( الزام ) ماضي → ماضي → **must** يجب ( الزام ) حاضر

**could** كان يمكن ان ( امكانيه ) ماضي → ماضي → **can** يمكن ( امكانيه ) حاضر

1. Large areas of land ( must - had to ) be flooded when they **were** building the Three Gorges Dam.
2. Work on the dam ( could – must ) not be started until the Yangtze **had** been diverted.
3. The locks were built **so that** the Yangtze ( could – had to ) still be used by ships.
4. Unfortunately many of the historical sites ( could – must) not be saved when they **built** the dam.
5. Protestors **are demanding** that people who had to leave ( must – could) be given new homes and compensation.

## الحلول

1. had to 2. could 3. could 4. could 5. must

## الكلمات الرسمية والغير رسمية Formal and Informal Words

الكلمات الرسمية Formal Words	الكلمات الغير الرسمية Informal Words
يكمل complete	ينهي finish
ينشئ construct	يبني build
كامل entire	كلي whole
يتوسع extend	يمتد stretch
بداية inception	بداية beginning
جاهز للاستخدام operational	جاهز للإستخدام ready to use
تقدم progress	يتحرك للامام move forward
موقع site	مكان place

- الكلمات الغير رسميه تحتوي على الضمائر ( I / you / we / they )

1. The **government** computer system is not expected to be (operational - ready to use)until the end of the year.
2. A **government** spokesman said the airport would not be fully (operational / ready to use).
3. When I was a child, **I** used to love ( constructing - building ) tree houses.
4. Tomorrow, **I'm** planning to spend the ( whole – entire) day on the beach.
5. What a waste of time! **I've** spent the (entire / whole) afternoon fixing my computer.
6. I'll ring you back in a few minutes – **I'm** just (completing / finishing) my lunch.
7. As part of their holiday, tourists will visit many important **archaeological** ( sites – places).
8. In the twelve months since its ( inception – beginning) , the new **tax system** has raised £9 million.
9. Since its (inception / beginning), this **organisation** has been at the forefront of research.



10. The **organisation** hopes to be able to attract tourists to visit the historical (sites / places) in the country.
11. Next year the **college** plans to (extend / stretch) the number of subjects it offers by 50%.
12. By the time **they**'d ( completed - finished ) their **homework**, it was time for bed.
13. Have **you** looked out of the window? They've started (constructing / building) the new block.

**الحلول**

1. operational 2. operational 3. building 4. whole 5. whole 6. finishing 7. sites  
8. inception 9. inception 10. sites 11. extend 12. finished 13. building

**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

(1)1.A: ..... ? B: the Mont Blanc Tunnel was opened in 1965.	(2)1.A: ..... ? B : Some of historical sites will be destroyed.
2.A: ..... ? B: It is 11-kilometre-long.	2.A: ..... ? B: Because sea levels are rising.
3.A: ..... ? B: It takes 30 minutes to drive through the tunnel.	3.A: ..... ? B: The destruction will be serious in low-lying cities.
A: Is it easy designing tunnels? 4.B: .....	4.A: ..... ? B: Some of the buildings have been damaged by the floods.

**الحلول**

- (1)1.A. When was the Mont Blanc Tunnel opened? 2.A. How long is it? 3.A. ( How much time / How many minutes ) does it take to drive through the tunnel? 4.B. No. It is very difficult.  
(2)1.A. What will be destroyed? 2.A. Why will some of historical sites be destroyed? 3.A. Where will the destruction be serious?  
4.A. How have some of the buildings been damaged?

**Complete the following sentences using clauses:**

- 1- By the time they'd finished their homework, ..... it was time for bed.
- 2- Large areas of land had to be flooded when ..... they were building the dam.
- 3- When I was a child, ..... I used to play tennis.
- 4- Thirty-nine people were killed in the tunnel fire when ..... a lorry caught fire.
- 5- The driver stopped after ..... he had seen smoke.

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

Road tunnels, through mountains **or** under rivers (1)..... seas, make car journey shorter **and** faster. Some of the long tunnels, like (2)..... through the Alps, **were** incredible engineering achievements **when** they (3)..... first built. **For** example, the 11-kilometre-long Mont Blanc Tunnel (4)..... France **and** Italy, **which** **was** opened (5)..... 1965, massively reduced journey times **between** the two countries. **But** in recent years, **with** (5)..... increase **in** freight traffic using tunnels, **there** (6)..... **been** some terrible accidents. **So** (7)..... planners **were** designing the 24.5-kilometre Laerdal Tunnel **in** Norway, safety **was** one of (8)..... main concerns. People **have** known **for** some time **that** the main factors (9)..... cause accidents **in** long tunnels **are** tiredness **and** claustrophobia – a fear (10)..... **being** **in** small spaces. Drivers **can** easily fall asleep **in** tunnels (11)..... **the** view never changes – **there** **is** nothing to keep (12)..... awake. **This** **can** lead to accidents caused (13)..... vehicles driving **into** the sides of the tunnel. **So** experts, including psychologists, **did** research to find (14)..... **how** they could make the 20-minute journey through (15)..... new tunnel less monotonous.

**الحلول**

1. and 2. those 3. were 4. between 5. in 5. the 6. have 7. when 8. their 9. which 10. of 11. because 12. them 13. by 14. out 15. their

After experiments, they decided (1)..... build the tunnel **in** four sections (2)..... "halls" **between** them. The halls **are** wider **and** higher (3)..... the main tunnel **and** have special lighting similar (4)..... a sunrise. The idea (5)..... **that** drivers **will** feel refreshed **as** (6)..... drive through the halls. The halls **have** two



other purposes related to safety: if there is (7)..... accident on the road ahead, drivers can turn round in the halls (8)..... return the way they came. There are also lay-bys in the halls (9)..... drivers can stop and rest. The Laerdal Tunnel also (10)..... an efficient ventilation system (11)..... responds to the amount of traffic in the tunnel. Air pollution is monitored (12)..... staff in a control room.

## الحلول

1.to 2.with 3.than 4. to 5.is 6.they 7.an 8.and 9.where 10.has 11.which 12.by

Some of (1)..... most important historical sites in the world will (2)..... destroyed if sea levels rise as expected in the next 100 years. The destruction will be particularly serious (3)..... low-lying cities, such as Venice in Italy. Some of the builders have already (4)..... damaged by the floods which regularly hit the city. In some places archaeologists (5)..... working against the clock to explore sites (6)..... they are lost beneath the water forever. Cities (7)..... London are planning the construction of new flood defence schemes.

## الحلول

1.the 2.be 3.in 4.been 5.are 6.before 7.like

In the light of (1)..... number of serious accidents and fires in tunnels (2)..... recent years, this report makes a number of recommendations (3)..... will reduce the risk of accidents and fires (4)..... minimise the impact of any that occur. It (5)..... essential that drivers and their passengers are able (6)..... get out of a tunnel if there is (7)..... accident or fire. We have two recommendations (8)..... will help make this possible. Firstly, tunnels should (9)..... made wide enough in places to allow vehicles to turn round and go back the way (10)..... came. Secondly, there should be separate tunnels (11)..... pedestrians in case people need to walk to safety.

## الحلول

1.a 2.in 3.which 4.and 5.is 6.to 7. An 8.which 9.be 10.they 11.for

It may (1)..... impossible to eliminate accidents altogether, (2)..... we have several recommendations (3)..... will reduce this risk. Firstly, all road tunnels over 10 kilometres long should be divided (4)..... sections, with rest areas (5)..... the sections. Secondly, the decoration of each section should be different. This "change of view" will make (6)..... journey less monotonous for drivers and help to prevent them (7)..... falling asleep. Lastly, tunnels should be well ventilated.

## الحلول

1.be 2.but 3.which 4.into 5.between 6.the 7.from

Finally, the flow of traffic through tunnels should(1)..... regulated. This will improve overall safety. We believe that if only one vehicle is allowed into (2)..... tunnel every five seconds, there is less chance of a multi-vehicle accident. We also recommend (3)..... heavy lorries should be escorted (4)..... special safety vehicles. If these recommendations are accepted, we believe that (5)..... accident rate in tunnels could be reduced by over 75%.

## الحلول

1.be 2.a 3.that 4.by 5.the

**Translate into English:**

1. ليس من المتوقع ان يكون نظام الحاسوب الحكومي الجديد جاهزا للعمل بشكل كامل حتى نهاية العام
2. عندما كنت طفلا اعتدت ان احب بناء منازل شجرية
3. شمل بناء السد تدمير عدة ابنية تاريخية
4. العام القادم تخطط الكلية لتوسع عدد المواد هي تقدم بنسبة 50%
5. توقف السائق بعد رؤية الدخان خارجا من محرك الشاحنة



- 1- The new government computer system is not expected to be fully operational until the end of the year.
- 2- When I was a child, I used to love building tree houses.
- 3- The construction of the dam involved the destruction of many historical buildings.
- 4- Next year the college plans to extend the number of subjects it offers by 50%.
- 5- The driver stopped after smoke had been seen coming out of the lorry's engine.

You are going to write a report describing some of the most important **technological changes** that have affected people's lives recently.

(Student Book.P.93)

### Technological Changes

Technological changes have affected many areas of life in recent years. In this report, I will take into consideration how online booking has affected travel in our life nowadays. It is the quickest and cheapest way of buying train or airline tickets. This involves logging on to the internet, finding the correct website, typing in your personal details and paying by credit cards. This is all done automatically without the need for any personal contact with the company. I think that technology has great effect on our lives.

أكتب تقريرا تصف بعض أهم التغيرات التكنولوجية التي أثرت على حياة الناس مؤخرا. ( كتاب الطالب ص 93 )

#### التغيرات التكنولوجية

التغيرات التكنولوجية قد أثرت بعدة مجالات من حياتنا في السنوات الأخيرة. في هذا التقرير سوف أخذ بعين الاعتبار كيف الحجر على الإنترنت قد أثر على السفر في حياتنا هذه الأيام. إنها الطريقة الأسرع والأرخص لشراء تذاكر للقطار والطائرات. هذا يتطلب الدخول (التسجيل) في الإنترنت وإيجاد موقع الإنترنت الصحيح وكتابة تفاصيل الشخصية والدفع عن طريق بطاقة الاعتماد. هذا كله يفعل أليا بدون حاجة لأي تواصل شخصي مع الشركة. أعتقد أن التقنية لها تأثير على حياتنا.



\*Write a report making recommendations which will improve road safety in your town or city.

(Student Book .P. 15) (Activity Book .P.70)

### Road Safety / Traffic Situation

Damascus is my city. People here experience too much traffic jams. There are too many cars and buses in the streets. The roads are narrow and crowded too. Many people drive their cars too fast everywhere. This leads to many accidents. In my opinion, there should be speed limits and motorists shouldn't drive too fast in residential areas. If they do so, they should be banned from driving and pay a huge fine. Moreover, roads should be made wider. Finally, I think this will improve road safety in Damascus and make our lives better.

\*اكتب تقريرا تقدم فيه مقترحات سوف تحسن سلامة الطرقات في بلدتك أو مدينتك. (كتاب النشاط ص 70) (كتاب الطالب ص 15)

### سلامة الطرق / حالة المرور

دمشق هي مدينتي ، الناس هنا يعانون ازدحاما مروريا كثيرا جدا ، هناك سيارات وباصات كثيرة جدا في الشوارع ، الطرقات ضيقة و مزدحمة أيضا ، أناس كثيرون يقودون سياراتهم بسرعة كبيرة جدا في كل مكان ، هذا يؤدي لحوادث عديدة ، في رأيي ، يجب أن يكون هناك حدودا للسرعة ولا يجب على سائقي الدراجات أن يقودون بسرعة في الأماكن السكنية ، إذا فعلوا ذلك فيجب أن يمنعوا من القيادة ويدفعوا غرامة كبيرة ، علاوة على ذلك ، الطرقات يجب أن تصبح أعرض ، أخيرا ، أنا أعتقد هذا سوف يحسن سلامة الطرق في دمشق ويجعل حياتنا أفضل.



## Unit 12

Students` Book ( Unit 12 )			
MSC(Master of science)	ماجستير في العلوم	Prodigy	طفل معجزة
BSC(Bachelor of science)	اجازة في العلوم	As child grow up	وكطفل يكبر
Master`s degree	درجة الماجستير	Amazement	اندهاش
Gain	يكسب	Appealing	جذاب
Skill	مهارة	Astonishment	دهشة
Talent	موهبة	Mathematics	رياضيات
Demonstrate	يظهر - يبين	Popularity	شعبية
Outstanding	بارز - رائع	Skilful	ماهر
Status	حالة - موقف	Complicated	معقدة
Ability	مقدرة	Calculations	عمليات حسابية
Prove	يثبت		
PHD(Doctor philosophy)	دكتورا في الفلسفة	Calculations	عمليات حسابية
High level	مستوى عالي	Remarkable	مميز - ملحوظ
Mathematical	عالم رياضيات	Random	عشوائي
Notice	يلاحظ	Certainly	بالتأكيد
Tournament	دوري - مسابقة	Composer	ملحن - مؤلف موسيقي
Award	يكافئ - يمنح جائزة	Hard worker	عامل مجد
Chess grand master	معلم الشطرنج	Overwork	عمل إضافي
Passion	ولع - شغف	Musician	موسيقي
Take time off	يخصص وقتا	Generation	جيل
Special cases	قضايا خاصة	Toured	قام بجولة سياحية
Practice	يتدرب - يمارس	Astonish	يدهش
Coaching	تدريب	Audience	جمهور
Geniuses	عباقرة	Appeal	يجذب
Rank	يسقط مرتبة	To earn a living	يكسب عيشا
Of all time	في كل الازمان	In common	بشكل عام
Archaeology	علم الآثار	Archaeologist	عالم آثار
Able	قادر	Ability	قدرة - إمكانية
Amazing	مدهش	Amazement	دهشة
Appeal	يجذب	Appealing	جذاب
Astonish	يندهش	Astonishment	اندهاش
Music	موسيقي	Musical	موسيقية
Popular	شعبي - شائع	Popularity	شعبية
Skill	مهارة	Skilful	ماهر
Coaching	تدريب	Apply	يتقدم لـ
Rank	يسقط مرتبة	Shaven	محلوق
Immediately	حالا	Messy	فوضوي
Immense	هانل - ضخم	Remarkable	مميز - ملحوظ
Tour	يجوب - يقوم بجولة سياحية	Deal with	يتعامل مع
Compositions	مؤلفات	Select	ينتقي - يختار
local club	نادي محلي	At a young age	في سن مبكر
Score	يحرز	For just a few seconds	لثواني معدودة
Accused Of	اتهم	At random	عشوائيا
Deny	ينكر	On a variety of instruments	على تنوع من الأدوات



Accusations	اتهامات	Convince	يقنع
Trust	يثق بـ	Case	قضية
Refuse	يرفض	Previous	سابق
Bother	يزعج - يضايق	Lecture	محاضرة
Solve	يحل	Audience	جمهور
Logical	منطقي	Inventing	اختراع
Disagree	لا يوافق	Replacement	استبدال
Block of flats	شقق متلاصقة	Metal	معدني
Ground floor	طابق ارضي	Jaw	فك
Get into	يدخل إلى	Serious	جاد/خطير
Lift	يصعد - يرفع	Innovation	ابتكار
Haircut	قصة شعر	Worries	مخاوف
Field	مجال/حقول	Look forward to	يتطلع لـ
Dentistry	طب اسنان	Stand off	يقع مقابل
Recognition	ادراك - تقدير	Artificial	اصطناعي
Institutions	مؤسسات	Reclaim	يستصلح
Conference	مؤتمر	Shipping	الشحن بحرا
Accolades	اوسمة	Engineering	هندسي - هندسة
Justify	يبيرر	Disease	مرض
Nomination	ترشيح	The channel tunnel	نفق القناة
Genius society	جمعية العباقرة	Join	يضم
Potential	كامن	Go round	يدور
Recipient	مستلم	Attempt	يحاول - محاولة
Immense	هائلة - كبيرة	Post-graduate	طالب دراسات عليا
High living	معيشة عالية المستوى	Beat	يهزم
Denied	انكر	Participate	يشارك
A charity	جمعية خيرية	Inventors	مخترعين
Play for	يلعب لصالح	Conference	مؤتمر
Award	جائزة	Risk	يخاطر
Gifted=talented	موهوب	Injury	إصابة
Dental problems	مشاكل سنية	Brilliantly	بشكل رائع
Dentistry	طب اسنان	Traditional	تقليدي
Numerous	هانل	Come down	ينخفض
International institutions	مؤسسات دولية	Mental	ذهني - عقلي
The Arab world	العالم العربي	Arithmetic	حسابي
First place	المركز الاول	Marathon	سباق الجري
Link	يربط	Race	سباق
Actually	فعليا	Broke records	حطم الأرقام القياسية
Reject	يرفض	Exhaustion	ارهاق
Reduce	يقلل	Rivals	منافسين
Multiply	يضاعف - يضرب	Dominate=control	يسيطر
Look like	يشبه	Risked injury	إصابة خطيرة
Historical interest	أهمية تاريخية	Participated	شارك
Competitive nature	طبيعة تنافسية	Towards	باتجاه
Mental arithmetic	حساب ذهني	shipping company	شركة شحن بحري
Win	يربح	Rock	صخر
Sink	يفرق	Representative	ممثل عن
Unless	مالم - إذا لم	Order	نظام
Survive	يبقى حيا - ينجو	Short-term situation	حالة قصيرة الأمد



Persuade	يقنع	Long-term situation	حالة طويلة الأمد
Profession	مهنة	law	القانون
Possessions	ممتلكات	Politician	سياسي
Slight	خفيف	Vote for	يصوت لـ
Rebuild	يعيد بناء	Rough	قاسي
Community	مجتمع	Marine	بحري
Fortunately	لحسن الحظ	Get out of	يخرج من
Radio	يتصل لاسلكيا	Debate	نقاش - جدال
Specialist	اخصائي	Balloon	منطاد
Diver	غواص	Professional	محترف
Immediate danger	خطر فوري	Hurricane	إعصار
Sea-sick	مصاب بدوار البحر	Passenger ship	سفينة ركاب
<b>Activity Book ( Unit 12 )</b>			
Decimal system	النظام العشري	Figures	ارقام
Sixagesimal system	النظام الستيني	Columns	أعمدة
Based on	اعتمد على	Differentiate between	يفرق بين
Scholar	عالم - معلم	Solution	حل
Valuable	قيمة	Analytical	تحليلية
Concise	مختصر	Linear	هستقيمية
Explanation	شرح	Authority	هوجج
Persian	فارسي	Seconds	ثواني
Contribution	مساهمة	Set a record	سجل رقم قياسي
Arab thinkers	مفكرين عرب	Balanced	متوازن
Arrange	يرتب	Arithmetic	علم الحساب
In place of	بدلا من	Subject	موضوع - مادة
Fractions	الكسور	Quadratic	تربيعية
Author	هولف	Equations	معادلات
Hindu numerals	الأرقام الهندية	Translated	ترجمت
Knowledge	معرفة	Introduced	قدمت
Comprehensible	مفهومة	A poet	شاعر
Greek	يونانية	Philosopher	فيلسوف
Hindue	الهندوسية	Astronomer	فلكي
Earliest Islamic works	الاعمال إسلامية الاقدم	Dealt with	تعامل مع
Mathematician	عالم رياضيات	Geometric	هندسية
Origin	اصل	Alegebraic	جبرية
Branches	فروع	Impressive	مثير للإعجاب
Algebra	الجبر	Warn	يحذر
Reliable	موثوق	Breathing	تنفس
Adding	جمع	Brain damage	ضرر دماغي
Subtracting	طرح	Failure	فشل - اخفاق
Multiplying	ضرب	Normal	عادي
Dividing	تقسيم	Mid	منتصف
Draw-drew	يرسم	Ignored	تجاهل
Good at maths	جيد في الرياضيات	Warnings	تحذيرات
Calculations in head	حسابات في الرأس	Scratched	خدشت
At a very early age	في سن مبكر جدا	Fill in	يملا
Play on the piano	يعزف على البيانو	Application	تطبيق - تقديم - التقدم لـ
Complicated=complex	معقد	Form	استمارة - شكل
Midday	منتصف النهار	Post	يرسل بريديا



Involved in	مشارك به	Face	يواجهه
Ring him	اتصل به	Address	عنوان
Answering machine	المجيب الآلي	Slim	نحيف
Fears	مخاوف	Slimmer	انحف
Hold	يحمل	Got up	نهض
American	أميركي	Confident	واثق
Unicycle speed	سرعة الدراجات الأحادية	Direction	اتجاه
Congratulate	يهنئ	Consume	يستهلك
Instructing verbs	أفعال تعليمات	Come over	يزور
First solo climb	اول تسلق منفرد	For ages	لمدة فترة طويلة
Bottles	زجاجات	Individuals	أفراد
Foolish	احمق	Lucky	محظوظ
Motion	حركة	Firmly	بإحكام
Motionlessness	سكون	Detach	يفصل
Still	ثابت - بلا حراك	Later	لاحقا
Wide-brimmed hat	قبعة عريضة الحواف	Marks	علامات
Ruler	مسطرة	Inside	داخل
Pencil	قلم رصاص	Edge	طرف - حافة
Circle	دائرة	Tabs	قطع
Tape measure	شريط القياس	Pull up	اسحب للأعلى
Pairs of scissor	مقص	Remaining	المتبقية
A roll of sticky tape	لفافة شريط لاصق	Place	يضع - مكان
Card	بطاقة	Fold	يطوي
Square	مربع	Well-done	احسنت صنعا
Measure	يقيس	Clue	مفتاح لحل اللغز
Stick	يلصق	Gently	بلطف

### Geniuses

Child prodigies are children who demonstrate outstanding talents and skills at a very young age. Mathematical geniuses are often able to do complicated calculations in their heads in just a few seconds. This is particularly remarkable when the numbers they are dealing with have been selected at random. Musical geniuses, like Mozart, are often able to learn to play new pieces of music on a variety of instruments very quickly. Mozart was certainly the most talented composer of his time, but many people believe he was really a hard worker, not a genius. When he died in 1791, some people said that overwork was the cause of his death. At the age of twelve, Tathagat Avatar Tulsi was the world's youngest person to gain a Master's degree. He finished high school at the age of nine, gained a BSc at the age of ten and an MSc when he was only twelve. At eighteen, he is now a PhD student in Bangalore, India, doing high-level research. His amazing mathematical talent was noticed by his parents when he was only six.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. Who are child prodigies?
2. What can a musical prodigy do ?
3. How old was Tathagat Avatar Tulsi when he got a Master's degree?.
4. How old is Tathagat and what is he doing at the moment?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

5. to show or prove
6. difficult to understand or deal with
7. objects used for producing music

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:



8. All people believed that Mozart was a musical genius.
9. Tathagat Avatar Tulsi was a musical prodigy.
10. Tathagat got a BSc after he got an MSc.
11. Tathagat's teacher was the first to discover that he was talented at the age of eight.

#### الاجوبه

1. They are children who demonstrate outstanding talents and skills at a very young age. 2. He is often able to learn to play new pieces of music on a variety of instruments very quickly. 3. Twelve 4. eighteen – He's now a PhD student in Bangalore, India, doing high-level research. 5. demonstrate 6. complicated 7. instruments 8. Many people believed Mozart was really a hard worker, not a genius. 9. ~~musical~~ mathematical 10. ~~after~~ before 11. ~~teacher was~~ parents were - ~~eight~~ six

Magnus Carlsen from Norway is one of the best chess players in the world. He started playing chess with his father at the age of five and played his first tournament at the age of eight. In 2003, at the age of thirteen, he was awarded the title of Grandmaster. Chess became his passion and Magnus was allowed to take time off school to practice the game. He received coaching from Kasparov, one of the greatest chess players and geniuses of all time. At the age of nineteen he was ranked number one in the world, becoming the youngest player to be awarded this title. Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was one of the greatest musical geniuses of all time. He was born in Salzburg, Austria, in 1756 and began writing music before he was four years old. As a child prodigy he toured Europe, playing his own compositions on the violin and other instruments to astonished audiences which often included kings and queens. In common with many other child prodigies, Mozart lost some of his appeal to audiences when he became an adult. Despite his genius, he had to work hard throughout his short life to earn a living, and died very poor, at the age of thirty-five.

#### Answer the following questions:

1. What special talent does Magnus Carlsen have?
2. When did he participate in his first championship?
3. Why did he take time off school?
4. Where was Mozart born?
5. What could he do as a child prodigy?
6. How did his audiences feel ?
7. How old was Mozart when he died?

#### Find words in the text which mean the following:

8. a name showing a person's status
9. to do an activity regularly
10. having very little money

#### Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:

11. Magnus Carlsen got the title of Grandmaster in music when he was eight.
12. Magnus helped Kasparov to become a chess champion.
13. Mozart could play music on one musical instrument only.
14. The public usually become more interested in a child prodigy as he grows up.

#### الاجوبه

1. He is one of the best chess players in the world. 2. at the age of eight 3. to practice the game. 4. in Salzburg 5. He began writing music before he was four years old. 6. They were astonished. 7. thirty-five 8. title 9. practice 10. poor 11. ~~music~~ chess - ~~eight~~ thirteen
12. ~~Magnus helped Kasparov~~ Kasparov helped Magnus 13. ~~one musical instrument~~ only the violin and other musical instruments 14. ~~more~~ less

### Mathematical geniuses

In ancient times, Arab mathematicians led the world in their subject. This article looks at the origins of two branches of mathematics: arithmetic and algebra. Musa al-Khwarizmi from Khawarizm, who lived from 780 to 850 CE, was one of the world's greatest mathematicians. He wrote the earliest Islamic works on arithmetic and algebra, which were the main authority on the subject for many years. He made Greek and Hindu mathematical knowledge comprehensible to people of his time and supported the use of Hindu numerals. He is particularly famous for being the author of the oldest Arabic work on arithmetic known as *Kitabul Jama wat Tafriq*. Another mathematician, Al-Nasawi, wrote *Al-Mughni Fil Hissab Al-Hindi* in which he explained fractions and other complex ideas in a modern way. He also introduced the decimal system in place of the sexagesimal system,



which was based on the number sixty, rather than the number ten. A third scholar, Nassir-ud-din Toosi, wrote many valuable books, including *Al-mutawassat*, a concise explanation of arithmetic in Arabic and Persian.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What are arithmetic and algebra?
2. Where did al-Khawarizmi come from?
3. When did al-Khawarizmi die?
4. What was the importance of his works on arithmetic and algebra?
5. Name an idea explained by Al- Nasawi in his book.
6. Which languages were used by Nassir-ud-din Toosi in his book?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

7. a branch of mathematics about adding, subtracting, multiplying and dividing
8. short and clear
9. told about something in a clear way that is easy to understand

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

10. Al-Khawarizmi helped people understand Roman mathematics and encouraged using Arabic numerals.
11. The decimal system, based on the number sixty, was ignored by Al-Nasawi.
12. *Kitabul Jama wat Tafriq* was written by Al-Nasawi.

**الاجوبه**

1. They are two branches of mathematics. 2. Khawarism 3. in 850 CE 4. They were the main authority on the subject for many years.
5. fractions 6. Arabic and Persian. 7. arithmetic 8. concise 9. explained 10. ~~Roman~~ Greek and Hindu - Arabic Hindu
11. ~~sixty~~ ten - ~~ignored~~ introduced 12. ~~Al-Nasawi~~ Musa al-Khawarizmi

Arabic numerals were the greatest contribution made by Arab thinkers to mathematics. The most important of these numerals was zero, which was used in the Arab world at least 250 years before it was known in the West. Before the invention of zero it was necessary to arrange all figures in columns to differentiate between tens, hundreds, thousands, etc. The word *algebra* comes from the Arabic *Al-Jabr*. Al-Khawarizmi was the author of *Hisab Al- JabrWal Muqabala*, an exceptional work on algebra which includes analytical solutions to linear and quadratic equations. This work, which was translated into Latin in 1145, introduced algebra into Europe. Better known as a poet and philosopher, Omar Khayyam, who lived from 1048 to 1133 CE, was also an astronomer and mathematician who wrote an excellent book on algebra. His work dealt mainly with geometric and algebraic solutions to equations.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What was the most important achievement of Arab mathematicians?
2. Why was the invention of zero very important?
3. How does the word algebra show that it is taken from Arabic origin?
4. What does **which** refer to ?
5. Who was Omar Khayyam?
6. What was Khayyam's book about?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

7. to show the difference between
8. the answer to a (mathematical) problem
9. needed for a purpose or reason

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

10. Arab mathematicians found out about zero from European mathematicians.
11. *Hisab Al-JabrWal Muqabala* was translated from Latin into Arabic.
12. Algebra was introduced to the Arabs through the writings of Omar Khayyam.

**الاجوبه**

1. Arabic numerals 2. Before its invention, it was necessary to arrange all figures in columns to differentiate between tens, hundreds, thousands, etc
3. It comes from the Arabic Al-Jabr. 4. *Hisab Al-JabrWal Muqabala*. 5. He was a poet, a philosopher, an astronomer and a mathematician. 6. It was about geometric and algebraic solutions to equations. 7. differentiate 8. solution 9. necessary
10. European mathematicians found out about zero from Arab mathematicians. 11. ~~Latin into Arabic~~ Arabic into Latin.
12. ~~Arabs~~ Europeans - ~~Omar Khayyam~~ Al-Khawarizmi



**Everest: The final challenge**

Until 1953, nobody had climbed Mount Everest, the highest mountain in the world. Then in 1953, the mountaineer Edmund Hillary and the Nepalese Tenzing Norgay succeeded in reaching the summit. In the next thirty years there were other Everest 'firsts', including the first solo climb and the first climb by a woman. All these people had taken bottles of oxygen to help them climb, but many mountaineers wanted to climb using their natural ability, without oxygen. Two of these were Reinhold Messner and Peter Habeler.

In 1975, they amazed people by climbing Gasherbrum, the 11th highest mountain in the world, without oxygen. When Messner and Habeler started planning to climb Everest without oxygen, other climbers called them foolish. They warned them that the oxygen levels at the top of Everest were so low that breathing would be difficult, and that the men would risk brain damage if they did this. However, Messner and Habeler did not listen and made their first attempts in April 1978. After two failures, they nearly gave up but decided to make a final attempt. At these very high altitudes, with so little oxygen in the air, everything the men did took much longer than normal. Every few metres, they fell down exhausted and had to rest. Eventually, at about 2 pm on May 8th 1978, Messner and Habeler became the first men to reach the summit of Everest without oxygen.

**Answer the following questions:**

1. Who was the first to get to the top of Mount Everest?
2. What was different about the mountaineers Messner and Habeler?
3. What advice did the other climbers give to Messner and Habeler?
4. Why is breathing difficult at the top of Everest?
5. What dangers might happen if someone climbs Everest without oxygen?
6. Why did they take longer time than normal?
7. When did they get to the top?

**Find words in the text which mean the following:**

8. the top of a mountain
9. very tired
10. said that something bad would happen

**Rewrite these sentences about the text to correct the information:**

11. The first woman climbed Everest before 1953.
12. Until the mid 1950s all mountaineers had used oxygen when they were climbing.
13. At the top of low mountains like Everest, the air doesn't have any oxygen in it.
14. Messner and Habeler took the advice they were given.
15. Messner and Habeler reached the top at the second attempt.

**الاجوبه**

1. Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay
2. They climbed without taking oxygen with them.
3. They advised them to take oxygen.
4. Because the oxygen levels at the top of Everest are so low.
5. Breathing would be difficult and they could risk brain damage.
6. With so little oxygen in the air, every few metres, they fell down exhausted and had to rest.
7. at about 2 pm on May 8th 1978.
8. summit
9. exhausted
10. warned
11. ~~before~~ after
12. ~~1950s~~ 1970s
13. ~~low~~ high - ~~any~~ much
14. ~~took~~ didn't listen to
15. ~~second~~ third

**Adding information (relative and -ing clauses)****إضافة معلومات ( عبارات الوصلية و عبارات ing )**

3- **Relative Clauses** عبارات الوصلية: نستخدم العبارات الوصلية بدلا من استخدام عدة جمل قصيرة حيث يمكننا إضافة معلومات إضافية لجمل معينة ( نحذف النقطة ونضع فاصله ونحذف الفاعل بالجمله الثانيه ونضع الضمير الوصلي المناسب )

She could beat adults in memory games. The memory games involved numbers.

– مثال:

She could beat adults in memory games, which involved numbers.



-4 **ing clauses** عبارات **ing**: نستخدم الأفعال المنتهية بـ ( ing ) لنختصر من جمل قصيرة تحتوي على ضمائر الوصل وذلك بحذف الضمير الوصلي والفاعل الذي بعده ( إن وجد ) وإضافة ( ing ) لمصدر الفعل مع حذف النقطة بين الجملتين ( إن وجدت ) ووضع فاصله بدلا منها

- نحذف عبارات مثل ( When he did this / When he finished the race / To do this )

She could beat adults in memory games, **which involved numbers**. →

- مثال:

She could beat adults in memory games **involving** numbers.

- ملاحظة: ضمائر الوصل تستخدم كالتالي :

- ( **who** ) الذي للأشخاص يأتي بعدها فعل ( فعل + **who** + شخص )

This is the man **who took** my wallet.

- ( **whom** ) الذي للأشخاص ( مفعول به ) يأتي بعدها فاعل ( فعل + فاعل + **whom** + شخص )

This is the man **whom I took** his wallet.

- ( **which** ) الذي للأشياء يأتي بعدها فعل او فاعل ( فاعل / فعل + **which** + شئ )

I watched the film **which was** exciting. - I watched the film **which you gave** me

- ( **whose** ) الذي له يأتي بعدها اسم ثم فعل ( فعل + اسم + **whose** )

The woman , **whose purse was stolen**, went to the police station.

- ( **where** ) حيث يأتي بعدها فاعل ثم فعل ( فعل + فاعل + **where** + مكان )

He is now a PhD student in India **where he is doing** high level research

- ( **when** ) عندما يأتي بعدها فاعل ثم فعل ( فعل + فاعل + **when** + زمان )

I knew him **when I was** a child.

- ( **that** ) الذي للأشخاص وللأشياء يأتي بعدها فعل او فاعل ( فعل / فاعل + **that** + شخص / شئ )

This is the man **that took** my wallet. - I watched the film **that was** exciting.

This is the man **that I took** his wallet. - I watched the film **that you gave** me.

#### **A: Rewrite the following sentences ( Use ing-clause)**

1. He is now a PHD student in Bangalore, where he is doing high-level research.
2. At the age of seven, my brother Amar played football for a local club. When he did this, he became the youngest professional player in Syria.
3. A few years later, he joined the men's team and he scored three goals in his first match.
4. He was the highest paid player in the team. He was earning as much as six players would earn.
5. A newspaper began printing stories which accused Amar of spending too much money on high living.
6. Amar denied these accusations. He explained that he spent his money on his family and that he gave much to charity.
7. He continued to play for his team, trusted in the support of his family and refused to let the newspaper stories bother him.
8. An Indian man correctly calculated the square root of a six-digit number. He took 1 minute 3.8 seconds.
9. An American holds the world record for sending a text message. He typed a text of 160 letters on his mobile phone in less than a minute.
10. A 38-year-old German set a unicycle speed record for 100 m. He travelled this distance in 12.11 seconds.
11. A young British man broke the record for the most books balanced on the head. To do this he used skills he had developed as a builder.
12. He actually succeeded in carrying 62 books. The books weighed 98.4 kg.



13. An Indian man broke the world record for motionlessness. He stood still for 20 hours 10 minutes and 6 seconds.
14. In his first marathon Hani did very well. He finished in 20th place.
15. He took three hours to complete the race. When he finished the race, he broke his own previous record.
16. Before the event, he had trained hard and often ran for five hours a day.
17. Hani is a postgraduate student at the University of Damascus who is studying law.
18. Hani agreed to run the marathon in December. He told his friends he wanted to collect money for a charity.
19. Hani succeeded in doing this. He collected over SYP 200,000.
20. Muhanad trained hard for the competition. He ran 3,000 metres every evening for six months.
21. He was careful about his diet, and ate only healthy food.
22. As a result he became slimmer and fitter. He lost 10 kg while he was training.
23. He managed to get plenty of rest. He slept for eight hours every night.
24. On the day of the race he felt very confident and got up at six o'clock in the morning.
25. Fortunately, he was second in the race. He came in a fifth of a second behind the winner.

**الحلول**

1. ... Bangalore, doing high... 2. ... club, becoming the ... 3. ... team, scoring three... 4. ... team, earning as much ...
5. ... stories accusing Ammar... 6. ... accusations, explaining that he ...
7. ... team, trusting in the support of his family and refusing to let the... 8. ... Number , taking 1 ... 9. ... message, typing a ...
10. ... 100 m, travelling this distance... 11. ... head, using skills... 12. ... 62 books, weighing 98.4 kg.
13. ... motionlessness, standing still for ... 14. ... well, finishing in... 15. ... Complete the race, breaking his own ...
16. ... hard, often running for... 17. ... Damascus, studying law. 18. ... December, telling his ... 19. ... this, collecting over ...
20. ... competition, running 3... 21. ... diet, eating only ... 22. ... fitter, losing 10... 23. ... Rest, sleeping for...
24. ... confident, getting up... 25. ... race, coming in a...

- إذا وجدت فاصله وبعدها فعل بدون فاعل نضيف ( ing ) الى الفعل

**B. C orrect the verbs in brackets:**

1. I left the office at midday, ..... ( plan ) to meet my friend Mazen for lunch.
2. I arrived at our usual meeting place and waited, ..... ( expect ) my friend to arrive at any minute.

**الحلول**

1. planning 2. expecting

**B. Correct the verbs in the brackets:**

1. He is now a PhD student in **Bangalore**, ( which - where ) he is doing high-level research.
2. He received coaching from **Kasparov** ( who - which ) is one of the greatest chess players and geniuses of all time.
3. At the age of nineteen **he was ranked number one in the world**, ( who - which ) made him the youngest player to be awarded this title.
4. A newspaper began printing **stories** ( who - which ) accused Amar of spending too much money.
5. **Burj Al-Arab**, ( who - which ) is one of the most expensive hotels in the world, stands in the sea.
6. **The Channel Tunnel**, ( who - which ) links Britain and France, is over 50 kilometres long.

**الحلول**

1. where 2. who 3. which 4. which 5. which 6. Which

**ازمنه متنوعه**

1. As we ..... ( walk ) up the mountain, we came across a small camp site.
2. When I was talking to my brother yesterday, your name ..... ( come up ) several times.
3. The police suspected a crime as there ..... ( be ) four similar fires in the previous month.
4. When it is completed, it ..... ( be ) the largest dam in the world.
5. Sport ..... ( increase ) greatly in popularity in **recent** years.
6. After ..... ( wait ) for nearly an hour, I decided that Mazen was not going to come.
7. Before Burj Al-Arab could be built, engineers ..... ( have to - make ) an artificial island.
8. The Panama Canal, which ..... ( join ) the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, opened to shipping in 1914.
9. Before it opened to shipping in 1914, ships..... ( have to / go round ) the bottom of South America.
10. Wherever I ..... ( go ) on holiday I like to visit places of historical interest.



11. I'd like to be an archaeologist when I ..... ( leave) university.  
 12. It was cloudy all morning, but in the afternoon the sun ..... ( come out ).  
 13. We .....( drive) home on the motorway yesterday evening when we came across a burning car.  
 14. At the top of high mountains the air ..... ( not have) much oxygen in it.  
 15. I was walking through town , when suddenly I ..... ( think ) about my friend.  
 16. ....(you / fill in) the application form for that job yet?

## الحلول

1. were walking 2. came up 3. had been 4. will be 5. has increased 6. waiting 7. had to make 8. joins 9. had to go round 10. go  
 11. leave 12. came out 13. were driving 14. doesn't have 15. thought 16. Have you filled in

.....  
**Complete the following dialogue by writing suitable questions or answers:**

<p>(1)1.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> Mozart was born in Austria, in 1756.            2.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> He began writing music before he was four years old.            3.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> He toured Europe.            4.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> he had to work hard to earn a living.</p>	<p>(2)1.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> I've been playing chess for ten years.            2.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> I started doing that when I was in primary school.            3.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> I've played two tournaments so far.            4.A: Why do you like chess?  <b>B:</b> .....</p>
<p>(3)1.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> The Channel Tunnel links Britain and France.            2.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> It is over 50 kilometres long.            3.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> It was completed in 1994.            4.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> There are two main tunnels.</p>	<p>(4)1.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> Hani did very well in his first marathon.            2.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> He finished in 20th place.            3.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> He took three hours to complete the race.            4.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> Yes, he broke his own previous record.</p>
<p>(5)1.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> Hani is studying law at the University of Damascus.            2.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> He agreed to run the marathon in December.            3.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> He wanted to collect money for a children's charity.            4.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> He collected over SYP 200,000.</p>	<p>(6)1.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> I left the office at midday.            2.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> Because I wanted to meet Mazen for lunch.            3.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> I arrived at our usual meeting place .            4.A: .....?  <b>B:</b> No, I didn't have lunch.</p>

## الحلول

- (1)1.A. When was Mozart born in Austria? / Where was Mozart born in 1756? 2.A. When did he begin writing music?  
 3.A. What / which countries did he tour? 4.A. Why did he have to work hard?  
 (2)1.A. How long have you been playing chess? 2.A. When did you start doing that? 3.A. How many tournaments have you played so far?  
 4.B. I like chess because it is exciting.  
 (3)1.A. What countries does the Channel Tunnel link? 2.A. How long is it? 3.A. When was it completed? 4.A. How many main tunnels are there?  
 (4)1.A. How did Hani do in his first marathon? / Who did very well in his first marathon? 2.A. Which place did he finish in?  
 3.A. (How many hours / How much time / How long) did he take to complete the race? 4.A. Did he break his own previous record?  
 (5)1.A. Where is Hani studying law? / What is Hani studying at the University of Damascus? 2.A. What did he agree to do?  
 3.A. Why did want to collect money? 4.A. How much money / How many SYPs did he collect?  
 (6)1.A. When did you leave the office? 2.A. Why did you leave the office? 3.A. Where did you arrive? 4.A. Did you have lunch?

**Complete the following sentences using clauses:**

- 1- When I leave school, ..... I'll look for a job.  
 2- I'm good at maths, but ..... I'm bad at English.  
 3- They raised a flag when ..... they reached the top.  
 4- The whole family was astonished when ..... he won the match.



- 5- Before they reached the summit, ..... they ran out of food.  
 6- When she said she was leaving, ..... we were sad.  
 7- The more you practise, ..... the more you will become skilled.  
 8- Wherever I go on holiday ..... I like to take photos.  
 9- When he finished the race, ..... he was exhausted.  
 10- I'd like to be an archaeologist ..... when I leave university.  
 11- Let me know if ..... you need help.  
 12- If you are good at mental arithmetic ..... you can do calculations in your head.  
 13- He learnt to play music when ..... he was five.

**Complete the following paragraph by filling in the gaps:**

(1)..... the age of twelve, Tathagat Avatar Tulsi (2)..... the world's youngest person to gain (3)..... Master's degree. He finished high school at the age of nine, gained a BSc at the age of ten and an MSc (4)..... he was only twelve. At eighteen, he is now a PhD student (5)..... Bangalore, India, doing high-level research. (6)..... amazing mathematical talent was noticed (7)..... his parents when he was only six.

الحلول

1.At 2.was 3.a 4. when 5.in 6.His 7.by

Magnus Carlsen (1)..... Norway is one of the best chess players in the world. (2)..... started playing chess with his father at the age of five (3)..... played his first tournament at the age of eight. (4)..... 2003, at the age of thirteen, he (5)..... awarded the title of Grandmaster. Chess became (6)..... passion and Magnus was allowed to take time off school (7)..... practice the game. He received coaching from Kasparov, one of (8)..... greatest chess players and geniuses of all time. At the age of nineteen he was ranked number one (9)..... the world, becoming the youngest player to be awarded this title.

الحلول

1.from 2.He 3.and 4.In 5. was 6.his 7.to 8.the 9.in

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart (1)..... one of the greatest musical geniuses of all time. (2)..... was born in Salzburg, Austria. (3)..... 1756 and began writing music before he was four years old. As (4)..... child prodigy he toured Europe, playing (5)..... own compositions on the violin (6)..... other instruments to astonished audiences (7)..... often included kings and queens. In common (8)..... many other child prodigies, Mozart lost some of his appeal (9)..... audiences when he became (10)..... adult. Despite his genius, he had to work hard throughout his short life to earn a living, and died very poor, (11)..... the age of thirty-five.

الحلول

1.was 2.He 3. in 4.a 5.his 6. and 7.which 8.with 9. to 10.an 11.at

Child prodigies are children (1)..... demonstrate talents at a very young age. Mathematical geniuses (2)..... often able to do complicated calculations (3)..... their heads in just a few seconds. This is particularly remarkable (4)..... the numbers they are dealing with have been selected (5)..... random. Musical geniuses, like Mozart, are often able (6)..... learn to play new pieces of music (7)..... a variety of instruments very quickly. Mozart was certainly (8)..... most talented composer of his time, (9)..... many people believe he was really (10)..... hard worker, not a genius. When he died (11)..... 1791, some people said that overwork was the cause (12)..... his death.

الحلول

1.who 2. are 3. in 4.when 5.at 6.to 7.on 8.the 9.but 10.a 11.in 12.of



I (1)..... writing to you to suggest that you consider Dr Mohammad Imad Droubi (2)..... your new Genius award. Dr Droubi is (3)..... incredibly gifted dentist and academic, (4)..... gives lectures to audiences all over the world. (5)..... is best known for inventing a replacement metal jaw, improving the quality (6)..... life of those with serious dental problems. His innovations in (7)..... field of dentistry have brought him international recognition. He (8)..... received numerous awards from international institutions including first place at the Arab World Inventors conference (9)..... 2009. I believe that these accolades justify (10)..... nomination for the new Genius Award.

الحلول

1.am 2.for 3.an 4.who 5.He 6.of 7.the 8.has 9.in 10.his

Burj Al-Arab, (1)..... is one of the most expensive hotels in the world, stands (2)..... the sea off the coast of Dubai. Before it could (3)..... built engineers had (4)..... make an artificial island. In order to do this, land had to be reclaimed (5)..... the sea.

الحلول

1.which 2.in 3.be 4.to 5.from

The Panama Canal, (1)..... joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, opened to shipping (2)..... 1914. Before this, ships had to go round (3)..... bottom of South America to get (4)..... one ocean to the other. This (5)..... one of the greatest and most difficult engineering jobs that (6)..... ever been attempted 5,600 workers died between 1904 (7)..... 1914 while the canal was (8)..... constructed. There had been (9)..... earlier attempt to build a canal in 1880 (10)..... it couldn't be finished because so many construction workers died (11)..... disease.

الحلول

1.which 2.in 3.the 4.from 5.was 6.had 7.and 8.being 9.an 10.but 11.of

A boy lives on the 12th floor of (1)..... block of flats. Every day, on his way to work, (2)..... gets into the lift and goes down (3)..... the ground floor. When he comes home (4)..... work, he gets into the lift, goes up to the 8th floor, then walks up the stairs to the 12<sup>th</sup> floor.

الحلول

1.a 2.he 3.to 4.from

A man (1)..... in a small town for the day, and needed (2)..... haircut. He noticed that there were only two barbers in town, and decided to apply logic to choosing (3)..... best one. Looking in their shops, he saw that the first barber was clean shaven (4)..... a nice haircut. In the other shop, the barber had a messy haircut.

الحلول

1.was 2.a 3.the 4.with

Ahmad had competed in six prestigious cycling competitions before, but this (1)..... the first time he had dominated the race. When he crossed (2)..... finish line beating all his rivals, he knew (3)..... was the start of (4)..... exceptional career. Whenever he participated, Ahmad risked injury (5)..... exhaustion, but his competitive nature helped him (6)..... succeed. (7)..... is an example to aspiring cyclists around the world.

الحلول

1.was 2.the 3.it 4.an 5.and 6.to 7.He

My younger sister (1)..... always had a talent for music. She started piano lessons (2)..... the age of three and her teacher (3)..... astonished by how quickly she learned to play well. "She is (4)..... most



outstanding pupil I have ever taught," she said. "As well as playing the piano brilliantly she also understands the theory (5)..... music".

الحلول

1. has 2.at 3.was 4.the 5.of

In ancient times, Arab mathematicians led (1)..... world in their subject. This article looks (2)..... the origins of two branches of mathematics: arithmetic (3)..... algebra. Musa al-Khawarizmi from Khawarizm, who lived from 780 (4)..... 850 CE, was one of the world's greatest mathematicians. He wrote (5)..... earliest Islamic works on arithmetic and algebra, (6)..... were the main authority on the subject for many years. He made Greek and Hindu mathematical knowledge comprehensible (7)..... people of his time and supported the use of Hindu numerals. He is particularly famous (8)..... being the author of the oldest Arabic work (9)..... arithmetic known as Kitabul Jama wat Tafriq.

الحلول

1.the 2.at 3.and 4.to 5.the 6.which 7.to 8.for 9.on

Another mathematician, Al-Nasawi, wrote Al-Mughni Fil Hissab Al-Hindi (1)..... which he explained fractions and other complex ideas in (2)..... modern way. He also introduced (3)..... decimal system in place of the sexagesimal system, (4)..... was based on the number sixty, rather (5)..... the number ten. A third scholar, Nasir-ud-din Toosi, wrote many valuable books, including Al-mutawassat, a concise explanation of arithmetic in Arabic and Persian. Arabic numerals (6)..... the greatest contribution made by Arab thinkers to mathematics. The most important (7)..... these numerals was zero, which was used in the Arab world (8)..... least 250 years before it was known in the West. Before the invention of zero (9)..... was necessary to arrange all figures in columns to differentiate (10)..... tens, hundreds, thousands, etc.

الحلول

1.in 2.a 3.the 4.which 5.than 6.were 7.of 8.at 9.it 10.between

The word algebra comes (1)..... the Arabic Al-Jabr. Al-Khawarizmi (2)..... the author of Hisab Al-Jabr Wal Muqabala, (3)..... exceptional work on algebra which includes analytical solutions to linear (4)..... quadratic equations. This work, (5)..... was translated into Latin in 1145, introduced algebra into Europe. Better known as a poet and philosopher, Omar Khayyam, who lived (6)..... 1048 to 1133 CE, was also an astronomer and mathematician (7)..... wrote an excellent book on algebra. His work dealt mainly (8)..... geometric and algebraic solutions to equations.

الحلول

1.from 2.was 3.an 4.and 5.which 6.from 7.who 8.with

My brother (1)..... talented in many different ways. He is (2)..... mathematical genius but also (3)..... great musical ability. The whole family was astonished when (4)..... won the first prize in a competition (5)..... young composers.

الحلول

1.is 2.a 3.has 4. he 5.for

My sister was never able (1)..... do paint or draw well (2)..... a new and very skilled teacher arrived (3)..... the school. Since then, my sister's progress has (4)..... amazing, and art has grown (5)..... popularity throughout the school.

الحلول

1.to 2.until 3.at 4.been 5.in



I left the office (1)..... midday, planning to meet my friend Mazen (2)..... lunch. I arrived at our usual meeting place and waited, expecting (3)..... friend to arrive at any minute. After about half (4)..... hour I began to worry, thinking that Mazen might have (5)..... involved in an accident. I tried ringing him several times, eventually leaving a message (6)..... his answering machine. After waiting for nearly an hour, (7)..... decided that Mazen was not going to come, (8)..... I went back to work. I sat down at my desk, feeling very hungry (9)..... I hadn't had any lunch. Then my phone rang. It (10)..... Mazen, apologizing for having missed lunch. My fears were correct. He (11)..... had a car accident and he was phoning (12)..... the hospital.

## الحلول

1.at 2.for 3.my 4.an 5.been 6.on 7.I 8.so 9.because 10.was 11.had 12.from

Until 1953, nobody(1)..... climbed Mount Everest, the highest mountain(2)..... the world. Then in 1953, the mountaineer Edmund Hillary(3)..... the Nepalese Tenzing Norgay succeeded (4).....reaching the summit. In the next thirty years there were other Everest 'firsts', including the first solo climb and the first climb(5)..... a woman. All these people had taken bottles of oxygen(6)..... help them climb, but many mountaineers wanted to climb using their natural ability, without oxygen. Two of these(7)..... Reinhold Messner and Peter Habeler. (8).....1975, they amazed people by climbing Gasherbrum, the 11(9).....highest mountain in the world, without oxygen. When Messner and Habeler started planning to climb Everest without oxygen, other climbers called (10).....foolish. They warned them that the oxygen levels(11)..... the top of Everest were so low that breathing would (12)..... difficult, and that the men would risk brain damage if they did this. However, Messner and Habeler did(13)..... listen and made their first attempts in April 1978. After two failures, they nearly gave up(14)..... decided to make a final attempt. At these very high altitudes, with so little oxygen in the air, everything the men did took much longer(15)..... normal. Every few metres, they fell down exhausted and had to rest. Eventually, at about 2 pm(16)..... May 8th, 1978 Messner and Habeler became the first men to reach the summit of Everest without oxygen.

## الحلول

1.had 2.in 3.and 4.in 5.by 6.to 7.were 8.In 9.the 10.them 11.at 12.be 13.not 14.but 15.than 16.on

1. Child prodigies demonstrate talents..... a very young age.
2. I enjoy listening..... all kinds of music.
3. Dr. Droubi is..... incredibly gifted dentist and academic.
4. Dr, Droubi is a dentist, ..... gives lectures to audiences all over the world.
5. The channel tunnel, ..... links Britain and France, is over 50 kilometers long
6. Burj Al-Arab, ..... is one of the most expensive hotels in the world, stands in the sea off the coast of Dubai.
7. The Panama Canal..... joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans, opened to shipping in 1914.
8. Hani is a postgraduate student..... the university of Damascus who is studying law.
9. My younger sister has always had..... talent for music. She started piano lessons at the age of three.
10. Samer was..... very talented Jazz trumpet player.
11. Hussam has..... amazing ability to multiply large numbers in his head.
12. Wherever I go..... holiday I like to visit places of historical interest.
13. I'd like to be..... archaeologist when I leave university.
14. The price of DVD players came..... by 50% last year.
15. If you are good..... mental arithmetic, it means you can do calculations in your head very quickly.
16. After the storm there were a lot of frightened children..... animals.
17. I've lost my glasses- let me know if you come..... them.
18. Over a thousand people sent in correct answers to the competition. A computer picked the names of the three winners..... random.
19. My sister and I look very alike- people often think I'm.....



**الحلول**

1.at 2.to 3.an 4.who 5.which 6.which 7.which 8.at 9.a 10.a 11.an 12.on 13.an 14.down 15.at 16.and 17.across  
18.at 19.her

**Translate into English:**

1. يجد العديد من الأطفال الحيوانات الصغيرة جذابة جدا
2. لقد ازدادت الرياضة في الشعبية بشكل كبير في السنوات الأخيرة
3. الأكثر أنت تتمرن الاكثر مهارة سوف تصبح
4. لقد فقدت الموسيقى التقليدية البعض من شعبيتها فيما بين الناس الشباب
5. انخفض سعر سواقات DVD بنسبة 50% العام الماضي
6. تسبب الزلزال بدمار فظيع لكل البلد
7. تتزايد الألعاب المائية شعبية كل عام
8. ليس كل شخصين متشابهين بشكل كامل. كل شخص هو فرد
9. أطفال المعجزات هم الأطفال الذين يثبتون مواهب في عمر مبكر

- 1- Many children find young animals very appealing.
- 2- Sport has increased greatly in popularity in recent years.
- 3-The more you practise, the more skillful you will become.
- 4- Traditional music has lost some of its popularity among young people.
- 5- The price of DVD players came down by 50% last year.
- 6- The earthquake caused terrible destruction across the country.
- 7- Water sports are increasing in popularity every year.
- 8- No two people are completely alike. Everyone is an individual.
- 9- Child prodigies are children who demonstrate talents at a very young age.

You are going to write a letter recommending a genius for an award.

(Student Book P: 99)

**A Genius**

Dear Sirs,

I am writing to you to suggest that you consider Tom Edison for your new genius award. He is a gifted scientist who changed night into day. He set up a laboratory at home and began his own experiments. The electric lamp is probably the most useful thing Edison invented. He worked hard and enjoyed his life working for the pleasure and happiness of other people. He also invented many important things. I believe that his inventions justify his nomination for the genius award.

Yours faithfully

Khaled



اكتب رسالة ترشح عبقريا من أجل جائزة. ( كتاب الطالب ص 99 )

## عبقري

السادة الأعزاء:

إنني أكتب لكم لأقترح أن تعتبروا توم أديسون لجائزة العبقري الجديدة. إنه عالم موهوب الذي غير الليل إلى نهار. جهز مخبرا في المنزل وبدأ تجاربه الخاصة. المصباح الكهربائي من المحتمل أنه الشيء الأكثر نفعا الذي اخترعه أديسون. لقد عمل بجد واستمتع بحياته وهو يعمل من أجل سعادة وهناء الناس الآخرين. كما اخترع أيضا العديد من الأشياء النافعة. أعتقد أن اختراعاته تبرر ترشيحه من أجل جائزة العبقري.

المخلص لكم

خالد

Write your own set of instructions for a simple activity. Use an idea of your own or one of these ideas:

How to make tea

(Activity Book P: 75)

How to send the same email to several people

How to transfer a photograph from a camera to a computer, and then print it

How to ride a bicycle

How to use a dictionary

### How to Make Tea

Tea is a very popular drink in the world. It is also popular in the Arabic world. I am writing to tell you about how we can make tea. First, we pour water in a kettle. We heat the water until it boils. Then we add tea to the water. We leave it five minutes and it is ready. We prepare the cups and put them in a tray. Finally, we can drink it and enjoy our time with our friends.

اكتب مجموعتك الخاصة من التعليمات لنشاط بسيط. استخدم فكرة خاصة بك أو واحدة من هذه الأفكار: ( كتاب النشاط ص 75 )

\* كيف تصنع الشاي

\* كيف ترسل نفس البريد الإلكتروني إلى اناس عديدين

\* كيف تنقل صورة من آلة تصوير إلى حاسوب و ثم تطبعها

\* كيف تتركب دراجة

\* كيف تستخدم قاموسا



## كيف تصنع الشاي

الشاي شراب شعبي جداً في العالم. إنه أيضاً شعبياً في العالم العربي. على أي حال، أنا أكتب لآخبرك عن كيف نصنع الشاي. أولاً، نصب الماء في الغلاية. نسخن الماء حتى تغلي. ثم نضيف الشاي إلى الماء. نتركها لمدة خمس دقائق وتصبح جاهزة. نحضر الأكواب ونضعهم في صينية. أخيراً، يمكننا أن نشربه ونستمتع بوقتنا مع أصدقائنا.

Write an essay in answer to the question below.

(Activity Book P: 79)

What do you think about people who risk their lives climbing mountains?

## Climbing the Mountains

Although climbing mountains is really dangerous, some people try to climb mountains regularly. They brave extreme conditions and face great danger to reach their goal. Some of them climb mountains for fun and others for fame. Not all people think that climbing is a good idea. However, some people think that climbing mountains foolishness because they may lose their lives and their families. In my opinion, climbing mountains is a very good adventure, but you should be careful about your life.

ما رأيك بالناس الذين يخاطرون بحياتهم في تسلق الجبال? (كتاب النشاط ص 79)

## تسلق الجبال

بالرغم من أن تسلق الجبال خطير حقا . إلا أن بعض الناس يحاولون تسلق الجبال بشكل منتظم. إنهم يتحدون ظروف قاسية ويواجهون خطراً عظيماً ليصلوا إلى هدفهم. بعضهم يتسلق الجبال من أجل التسلية وآخرون من أجل الشهرة. ليس كل الناس يعتقدون أن التسلق فكرة جيدة . على أي حال، بعض الناس يعتقدون أن تسلق الجبال هو حماقة لأنهم ربما يخسرون حياتهم أو عائلاتهم. برأيي، تسلق الجبال هو مغامرة جيدة ولكن يجب أن تكون حذراً من أجل حياتك.



مرادفات النصوص (علمي / أدبي)

<p>الجريمة الحاسوبية</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. the crime of stealing someone's personal details (identity theft)</li> <li>2. a bad programme which can damage computers (viruses)</li> <li>3. the crime of lying or cheating to get money (fraud)</li> <li>4. to discover who commits a crime (solve)</li> </ol>	<p>اتفاقية جنيف</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. very harshly (severely)</li> <li>2. people not in the army (civilians)</li> <li>3. used by a number of different countries (international)</li> <li>4. help (aid)</li> <li>5. a formal agreement (treaty)</li> <li>6. negative attitude towards people who are different (prejudice)</li> </ol>	<p>هجرة الحيوان</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. first (original)</li> <li>2. advance steadily (forge)</li> <li>3. very long (extensive)</li> <li>4. occurring often or repeatedly (recurrent)</li> <li>5. having mild temperatures (temperate)</li> <li>6. bring up children (raise)</li> <li>7. a living thing / animal (creature)</li> </ol>
<p>الورق</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. very small piece of paper, wood, cloth, etc. (fiber)</li> <li>2. wood after it has been crushed (pulp)</li> <li>3. a practice or product that can be used or re-used without causing damage to the environment (sustainable)</li> <li>4. material or fabric used to make clothes (cloth)</li> </ol>	<p>التصحر</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. dry powder made of very small pieces of earth (dust)</li> <li>2. to stay alive (survive)</li> <li>3. to destroy slowly (erode)</li> <li>4. weather conditions in an area over a period of time (climate)</li> <li>5. what plants need to grow in (soil)</li> <li>6. fire that spreads very quickly (wildfire)</li> <li>7. to put animals in a field so that they can eat the grass (graze)</li> <li>8. to use land for growing crops (cultivate)</li> </ol>	<p>الغاية المطرية</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. affecting the whole world (global)</li> <li>2. the eating or drinking of something (consumption)</li> <li>3. against the law (illegal)</li> <li>4. send goods outside a country for sale (export)</li> <li>5. very destructive (devastating)</li> <li>6. a piece of equipment for doing a particular job (tool)</li> </ol>
<p>النباتات تدافع عن نفسها</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. a sharp pointed part that grows on a plant, e.g. a rose (thorn)</li> <li>2. the main part or large stem of a tree (trunk)</li> <li>3. a small, hard part of a plant from which a new plant can grow (seed)</li> </ol>	<p>غزال الرمل</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. the death of a type of animal (extinction)</li> <li>2. without depth (shallow)</li> <li>3. come together, often in a large group (congregate)</li> <li>4. an animal that kills and eats other animals (predator)</li> <li>5. escape or avoid (evade)</li> </ol>	<p>مشروع عدن</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. unusual, foreign (exotic)</li> </ol> <p>الحيوانات في كل مكان</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. one half of the Earth – southern or northern (hemisphere)</li> <li>2. the place or conditions where animals live (environment)</li> <li>3. far from civilisation or populated areas (remote)</li> <li>4. bag or pocket of skin (pouch)</li> <li>5. type of landscape (terrain)</li> <li>6. change to be better suited to a situation (adapt)</li> <li>7. large area of flat land, usually without trees (plain)</li> <li>8. large block of ice that floats in the sea (iceberg)</li> </ol>



مرادفات النصوص (علمي / أدبي)

<p><b>حدائق الحيوان</b></p> <p>1 see / watch (observe) 2 placed / situated (located) 3 place where something ,an animal, is from (country of origin) 4 for / on the side of (in favour of) 5 argument against (objection) 6 examine and discuss (consider) 7 prevent from escaping (keep in captivity)</p>	<p><b>النوم</b></p> <p>1. not having any or enough of something (deprived) 2. easily feeling gloomy for no good reason (moody) 3. easily annoyed (irritated) 4. renew (recharge) 5. clear-headed / awake (alert) 6. not deep (shallow) 7. give all your attention to a subject (concentrate)</p>	<p><b>الخلاء السكاني</b></p> <p>1. something that happens or exists (phenomenon) 2. adjective to describe the countryside (not town) (rural) 3. making money (profitable) 4. empty because people have left (deserted) 5. having too many people (overcrowding) 6. someone who lives in a place (inhabitant) 7. transport, education and health (public services)</p>
<p><b>العواصم</b></p> <p>1. an organisation with an important role in the country (institution) 2. a particular part of an area (sector) 3. a small amount of something (fraction) 4. clearly defined (specific) 5. supervise or control (regulate) 6. the offices of the representative of a foreign country (embassy)</p>	<p><b>الصناعات اليدوية السورية</b></p> <p>1. an object of cultural or historical interest (artefact) 2. intricately decorated with complex patterns or constructions (ornate) 3. a period of prehistory when weapons and tools were commonly made of bronze (Bronze Age) 4. having a special ability or talent (skilled) 5. worker in a skilled trade usually making items by hand (artisan)</p>	<p><b>تسلق ايفيرست</b></p> <p>1. the gas we need to breathe (oxygen) 2. injury caused to the body by very cold temperatures (frostbite) 3. height (altitude) 4. Himalayan people famous for their skill as mountaineers (Sherpa) 5. very great or severe (extreme) 6. staying the same / not changing (constant)</p>
<p><b>سباق فرنسا للدراجات</b></p> <p>1. hoping or aiming for a certain thing (aspiring) 2. group containing the best / most skilled / most experienced (elite) 3. showing commitment to a cause (dedication) 4. a direct opponent in a particular field (rival) 5. occurring at the end of a series of events (eventual)</p>	<p><b>علماء الرياضيات العرب</b></p> <p>1. to show the differences between (differentiate) 2. possible to understand (comprehensible) 3. the answer to a mathematical problem (solution) 4. short and clear (concise) 5. a book or person that has reliable knowledge or information (authority)</p>	<p><b>الأنفاق الطرقية</b></p> <p>1. unbelievable (incredible) 2. cut down, shortened (reduce) 3. lorries and vans carrying things, not people (freight traffic) 4. what you can see from a place (view) 5. stop (someone) from going to sleep (keep awake)</p> <p><b>العباقرة الصغار</b></p> <p>1. the natural ability to do something well (talent) 2. name showing a person's status (title)</p>



## الأفعال الشاذة

الترجمة	المصدر Infinitive	الماضي Simple Past	اسم المفعول Past Participle
يكون	be ( am- is - are )	was – were	been
يصبح	become	became	become
يبدأ	begin	began	begun
يكسر	break	broke	broken
يحضر / يجلب	bring	brought	brought
يبني	build	built	built
يحرق	burn	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
يشترى	buy	bought	bought
يستطيع	can	could	-----
يمسك	catch	caught	caught
يختار	choose	chose	chosen
يأتي	come	came	come
يقطع	cut	cut	cut
يتعامل / يعامل	deal	dealt	dealt
يحفر	dig	dug	dug
يفعل / ينجز	do	did	done
يشرب	drink	drank	drunk
يقود	drive	drove	driven
يأكل	eat	ate	eaten
يهبط / يسقط	fall	fell	fallen
يطعم	feed	fed	fed
يشعر	feel	felt	felt
يجد	find	found	found
يطير	fly	flew	flown
ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten
يحصل / يصل	get	got	got
يعطي	give	gave	given
يذهب	go	went	gone / been
ينمو / يزرع	grow	grew	grown
يملك / يتناول	have	had	had
يسمع	hear	heard	heard
يضرب	hit	hit	hit
يؤذي	hurt	hurt	hurt
يحافظ / يحفظ	keep	kept	kept
يعرف	know	knew	known
يتعلم	learn	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
يقود / يؤذي	lead	led	led
يقفز	leap	leapt	leapt
يغادر / يترك	leave	left	left
يفقد / يضيع / يخسر	lose	lost	lost
يصنع / يجعل	make	made	made
يعني	mean	meant	meant
يقابل	meet	met	met



يدفع	pay	paid	paid
يضع	put	put	put
يقرأ	read	read	read
يرن	ring	rang	rung
يرتفع	rise	rose	risen
يركض	run	ran	run
يقول	say	said	said
يرى	see	saw	seen
يبيع	sell	sold	sold
يرسل	send	sent	sent
ينطلق	set off	set off	set off
يغنى	sing	sang	sung
يجلس	sit	sat	sat
ينام	sleep	slept	slept
يتكلم	speak	spoke	spoken
يقضي / ينفق	spend	spent	spent
يسكب	spill	spilt	spilt
يقف	stand	stood	stood
يسرق	steal	stole	stolen
يسبح	swim	swam	swum
ياخذ	take	took	taken
يعلم	teach	taught	taught
يخبر	tell	told	told
يعتقد / يفكر	think	thought	thought
يفهم	understand	understood	understood
يستيقظ / يوقظ	wake ( up)	woke ( up)	woken ( up )
يلبس	wear	wore	worn
سوف	will	would	-----
يفوز / يربح	win	won	won
يكتب	write	wrote	written

The End



